

**Tip:** If you prefer, you can feature a person or pet less frequently instead of removing them. See [Show a person less frequently or not at all](#).

When you use [iCloud Photos](#), People & Pets is kept up to date on all your devices.

## Find group photos and videos on iPhone

The Photos app recognizes groups of people and pets who often appear together in pictures and videos, and sorts them into group collections. For example, if you have many pictures of your family or a group of friends, Photos creates a collection for each of those groups.



### Find group photos and videos

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, then tap People & Pets.
3. Below Groups, swipe to view your groups or tap See All.
4. Select a group to view all the photos and videos in that group.

**Tip:** To add someone to the group, tap <NEW FILTER BUTTON TO COME>, tap View Options, then tap Other People.

To share the photos in the group, tap , then tap Share.

### Create a group collection

You can create a group collection with any combination of people and pets from the People & Pets collection.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, then tap People & Pets.
3. To the right of Groups, tap .
4. Select the people and pets you want in the group, then tap the checkmark at the top of the screen.
5. Tap the names of the group members (or enter a custom name for the group), then tap Create.

### Edit or delete a group collection

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, then tap People & Pets.
3. Below Groups, touch and hold the group you want to edit, then do any of the following:
  - *Rename the group:* Tap Edit Name and People, enter a new name, then tap Done.
  - *Remove someone from the group:* Tap Edit Name and People, then tap  at the top-left corner of their picture.
  - *Add someone to the group:* Tap Edit Name and People, then tap Add People & Pets. Select who you want to add, then tap the checkmark at the top of the screen.
  - *Edit the group photo:* Tap Edit Name and People, then tap the photo icon in the bottom-right corner of the current group photo. Select a new photo, then tap Done.
  - *Delete the group:* Tap Delete This Group.

## Change the order of group collections

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, tap People & Pets, then tap Groups.
3. Touch and hold a group, then drag it to a new position.

## Browse photos by location on iPhone

The Photos app creates collections of your photos and videos based on where they were taken. You can use the Map view to see photos taken in a specific location, look for photos taken nearby, and see collections of photos on a map.



## Browse photos and videos by location

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, then tap the Map collection below Pinned.

Only pictures and videos that have embedded location information (GPS data) are included.

**Tip:** Pinch the map to zoom in and out, or drag to see more locations.

## See where a photo or video was taken<sup>Draft</sup>

1. Go to the Photos app 📸 on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo, then swipe up or tap ⓘ.
3. Tap the map or address link to see more details.

**Tip:** To see more photos from this location, tap Show Nearby Photos.

To add or change the location or address where a photo was taken, see [Change the date, time, or location of a photo or video](#).

## Find recently saved photos on iPhone

You can find all the photos you've saved from other apps—like Messages, Safari, and Mail—in the Recently Saved collection. Photos and videos that were sent to you using AirDrop also appear here.

1. Go to the Photos app 📸 on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - Tap Collections, then tap the Recently Saved collection below Pinned.

**Tip:** You can also find the Recently Saved collection below Utilities along with the Recently Viewed and Recently Shared collections.

- Tap Library, tap <NEW FILTER ICON TO COME>, then tap Sort by Recently Added.

**Tip:** To see photos you saved today, tap Collections, then tap the Saved Today collection below Recent Days.

## Find your travel photos on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can quickly find photos and videos from your trips grouped into collections, based on location data from the photos.



1. Go to the Photos app 📸 on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, scroll down to Trips, then tap the trip collection you want to view.

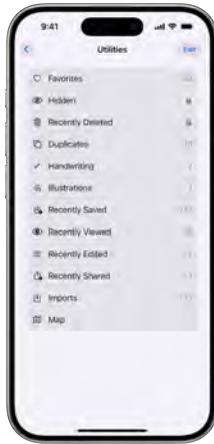
3. To find travel photos from an older <sup>Draft</sup> trip, tap Trips, then choose a year to browse.

## Find receipts, QR codes, recently edited photos, and more on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can find collections of photos and videos organized into different categories in Utilities. For example, you can revisit photos you recently edited, saved, viewed, or shared, or find photos based on their content—like documents, receipts, handwriting, illustrations, and QR codes.

### Find receipts, QR codes, and more in Utilities

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, scroll down, then tap Utilities.



3. Tap the collection you want to view.

*Note:* Some Utilities collections, like Hidden and Recently Deleted, are locked by default for your privacy. See [Lock and unlock the Recently Deleted and Hidden collections](#).

### Reorder the Utilities list

You can reorder the Utilities list to help you find the collections you access most often.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, scroll down, then tap Utilities.
3. Tap Edit, touch and hold the collection you want to move, then drag it to a new position.  
To undo your changes, tap Reset.
4. Tap Done.

### Find recovered items and save or delete them

If a photo or video wasn't saved properly and couldn't be added to your library, you may find a copy of it in Recovered.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, scroll down, then tap Utilities.

3. Tap Recovered, then tap the photo or video you want to recover.

4. Tap Permanently Delete or Restore to Library.

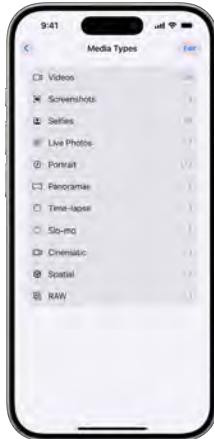
**Important:** When you delete a recovered photo or video, it's deleted permanently. You can't recover photos that you deleted from the Recovered collection in Utilities.

## Locate photos and videos by media type on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can find collections of photos and videos organized by media type. For example, browse all your Portrait mode photos or time-lapse videos in one place.

### Browse photos and videos by media type

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, scroll down, then tap Media Types.



3. Tap the type of photo or video you want to view.

### Reorder media types

You can reorder the list of media types to help you find the ones you access most often.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, scroll down, then tap Media Types.
3. Tap Edit, touch and hold the collection you want to move, then drag it to a new position.

To undo your changes, tap Reset.

4. Tap Done.

## Customize the Photos app on iPhone

You can remove, reorder, and pin collections to organize them the way you want.

### Hide memories, holidays, and other featured content

Draft  
You can hide memories or featured photos, and turn off holiday events. You can also reset memories and People & Pets suggestions that you earlier chose to feature less.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Hide featured content and memories:* Turn off Show Featured Content to prevent Photos from automatically generating featured photos and memories.
  - *Turn off holiday events:* Turn off Show Holiday Events to prevent Photos from creating memories and featured content about holidays.
  - *Reset memories:* Tap Reset Suggested Memories to bring back any memories you altered or featured less.
  - *Reset people and pets:* Tap Reset People & Pets Suggestions to bring back any people or pets you featured less.

## Turn off autoplay of videos and Live Photos

By default, videos and Live Photos automatically play when you open collections and albums. You can turn autoplay on or off.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
3. Turn off Auto-Play Motion and Loop Videos.

# Sort and filter the photo library on iPhone

To help you find the photos and videos you're looking for, you can change how items in the library are sorted, filter the library to show only particular items, and hide certain items.

## Sort the library

You can sort items in your photo library to appear by the date they were added or by the date they were taken.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap <NEW FILTER ICON TO COME>, then choose one of the following options:
  - *Sort by Recently Added:* Photos and videos you added most recently appear at the bottom of the library.
  - *Sort by Date Captured:* Photos and videos are sorted by the date they were taken, instead of the date they were added to the library.

## Filter the library

You can apply filters to your photo library to display only particular items—such as videos, favorites, or items not in an album—and temporarily hide everything else.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Library in the bottom-left corner.<sup>Draft</sup>
3. Tap <NEW FILTER ICON TO COME>, then tap Filter.
4. Tap the filter you want to apply.

**Tip:** You can apply multiple filters at the same time. For example, tap Photos and Edited to see only photos you've edited.

5. To remove the filters and return to the full library, tap All Items.

## Hide screenshots, items from your Mac, and items shared with you

By default, screenshots, photos and videos synced from your Mac, and photos and videos shared with you in the Messages app automatically appear in your photo library. You can hide these items to reduce clutter.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap <NEW FILTER ICON TO COME>, then tap View Options.
4. Tap Screenshots, From My Mac, or Shared with You to hide these items in your library. To stop hiding them, tap the option again.

## Back up and sync your photos with iCloud

You can use iCloud Photos to keep your photos and videos securely stored in iCloud. If you turn on iCloud Photos on all your devices, you can see the photos and videos you took on iPhone on any device. You can also access your iCloud photos and videos in a web browser.

When iCloud Photos is turned on, the photos and videos you take are uploaded automatically and stored in their original format at full resolution. Any changes you make to your photo collection on one device are reflected on your other devices, too.

**Note:** Make sure that you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#) on all your devices, and that your devices meet these minimum system requirements: iOS 8.3, iPadOS 13.1, macOS 10.10.3, or later, or a Windows device with iCloud for Windows 7.x or later.

To learn more, see [Set up iCloud Photos on all your devices](#).

### Turn on iCloud Photos

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap [your name], then tap iCloud.
3. Tap Photos, then turn on Sync this iPhone.

iCloud automatically uploads every photo and video you take to iCloud, so your photos are backed up and in sync, and you can access your library from any device, anytime.

### Check if your photos are backed up to iCloud

You can check that iCloud Photos is syncing your photos to iCloud, so that you have copies if something happens to your iPhone.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.<sup>Draft</sup>

3. In the top-right corner of the screen, you can see a preview of your syncing status. You may see any of the following:

- *Yellow badge*: iCloud syncing is paused. Tap your account icon to see the details.
- *Yellow warning icon*: Your iCloud storage is almost full. Tap your account icon to see the details.
- *Red exclamation mark*: Your iCloud storage is full. See [Save space](#) or [Get more iCloud storage](#).
- *Blue badge*: You have notifications from a shared library or shared album. Tap your account icon to see the details.
- *Partially filled blue circle around your account icon*: Photos are actively uploading to iCloud. Tap your account icon to see the details.
- *Partially filled gray outline around your account icon*: Uploads are paused. Tap your account icon to see the details.

4. Tap your account to see more details. The last time your iPhone synced with iCloud appears below the account profile.

## Save space on your iPhone

iCloud Photos can help you make the most of the storage space on your iPhone. When Optimize iPhone Storage is turned on, all your full-resolution photos and videos are stored in iCloud in their original formats, with storage-saving versions kept on your iPhone. Optimize iPhone Storage is turned on by default.

## Turn off Optimize Storage

1. Go to the [Settings](#) app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap iCloud.
3. Tap Photos, then tap Download and Keep Originals.

## Get more iCloud storage

If your uploaded photos and videos exceed your storage plan, you can upgrade to iCloud+ for more storage and additional features. See [Subscribe to iCloud+](#).

# Delete or hide photos and videos on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can delete photos and videos from your iPhone or hide them. You can also recover photos you recently deleted. Photos you delete and hide are saved in the Recently Deleted and Hidden collections, which you unlock using Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

When you [use iCloud photos](#), any photos you delete or hide are deleted or hidden on all your devices.

## Delete or hide a photo or video

1. Go to the [Photos](#) app on your iPhone.

## 2. While viewing a photo or video, do any of the following:

- *Delete:* Tap  to delete a photo from your iPhone and other devices where iCloud Photos is turned on and you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

Deleted photos and videos are kept in Recently Deleted for 30 days. During that time, you can recover or permanently remove them from all devices.

- *Hide:* Tap , then tap Hide.

Hidden photos are moved to the Hidden collection. You can't view them anywhere else.

To turn off the Hidden collection so it doesn't appear in the Photos app, see [Hide the Hidden collection from view](#).

## Delete or hide multiple photos and videos

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open your library or a collection.
3. Tap Select, then tap the photos and videos you want to delete or hide.
4. Do any of the following:
  - *Delete:* Tap  to delete the items from your iPhone and other devices where iCloud Photos is turned on and you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

Deleted photos and videos are kept in the Recently Deleted collection for 30 days. During that time, you can recover or permanently remove them from all devices.

- *Hide:* Tap , then tap Hide.

## Stop hiding photos and videos

You can stop hiding a photo or video you previously hid, so that it reappears in your photo library.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Swipe up, tap the Hidden collection (below Utilities), then tap View Album.
4. Tap the photo or video you want to stop hiding.
5. Tap , then tap Unhide.

## Recover or permanently delete deleted items

You can either recover or permanently delete in advance photos and videos you deleted within the past thirty days.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Swipe up, tap the Recently Deleted collection (below Utilities), then tap View Album.
4. Tap Select, then choose the photos and videos you want to recover or delete.
5. Tap , then tap Recover or Delete.

**Draft**  
Note: If the photos you're looking for don't appear in the Recently Deleted collection, they may be in the Recovered collection. See [Find recovered items and save or delete them](#).

## Lock and unlock the Recently Deleted and Hidden collections

The Recently Deleted and Hidden collections are locked by default. You can unlock these collections using Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode. To change the default setting from locked to unlocked, do the following:

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Photos.
3. Use Face ID, Use Touch ID, or Use Passcode.

## Hide the Hidden collection from view

By default, the Hidden collection is locked. You can add an extra layer of privacy by removing it from view.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Photos.
3. Turn off Show Hidden Album.

## Search for photos and videos on iPhone

When you tap Search  in the Photos app, you see suggestions of dates, people, and locations to help you find what you're looking for.

Tap the suggestions or type keywords into the search field—for example, a person's name, date, location, or object—to help you find a specific photo.



## Search for photos and videos

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  in the bottom-right corner.

3. Enter what you're searching for. For example:

- Date (month or year)
- Place (city or state)
- Business names (museums, for example)
- Category (beach or sunset, for example)
- Events (sports games or concerts, for example)
- A person identified in the People & Pets collection (see [Find and name people and pets](#))
- Text (an email address or phone number, for example)
- Caption (see [See photo and video information](#))

4. Tap <SEARCH ICON TO COME> or one of the suggestions.

5. Swipe up to browse the complete search results, or tap Collections to view collections that include your search query.

6. Tap ✕ to exit search.

**Tip:** Looking for something more specific? Refine your search with multiple keywords—keep adding keywords until you find the right photo. Search also suggests keywords to add to your search.

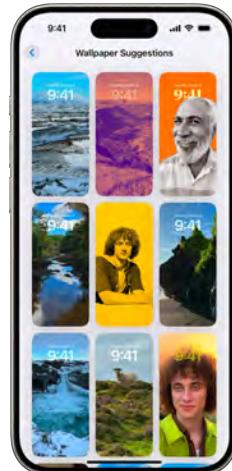
## Search by shared library participant

If you're a participant in an [iCloud Shared Photo Library](#), you can also search by the person who added the photo or video to the library.

1. Go to the Photos app 📸 on your iPhone.
2. Tap <SEARCH ICON TO COME>, then enter "Shared by."
3. Tap a suggested name.

## Get wallpaper suggestions in Photos on iPhone

You can get wallpaper suggestions for your Lock Screen or Home Screen that stylize photos of your favorite people and pets.



1. Go to the Photos app 📸 on your iPhone.

2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Swipe up, then tap a suggested wallpaper (below Wallpaper Suggestions).  
To customize the Lock Screen, including choosing colors, clock font, and more, see [Create a custom Lock Screen](#).

## Watch and personalize memories

### Play memories in Photos on iPhone

The Memories feature in the Photos app creates personalized collections of photos and videos that are set to music and play like a movie. Each memory features a significant person, pet, place, activity, or event from your photo library. You can create your own memories from your albums albums and collections.



Play a memory

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Below Memories, tap  in the bottom-right corner of a memory to play it.
4. As the memory plays, do any of the following:
  - *Pause:* Tap the screen, then tap .
  - *Go backward or forward:* Swipe left or right on the screen. Or tap the screen, then slide the frames at the bottom of the screen left or right.
  - *Mute:* Tap the screen, then tap <NEW ICON TO COME>.
  - *Close a memory:* Tap the screen, then tap .

### Create a memory from an album or collection

All the collections and albums you have in the Photos app can be viewed as memories that you can enjoy as generated, or edit them to make them more personal.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.

3. Tap an existing collection or album, then tap  to watch the photos and videos as a memory.

To make changes to the memory, see [Personalize your memories](#).

To create a memory from scratch, [create a photo album](#), then follow the steps above to watch it as a memory.

## Work with memories in Photos on iPhone

You can share memories and the photos and videos that appear in them with friends and family. You can also delete memories, mark certain memories as your favorite, and identify content in memories that you'd like to feature less.

### Share a memory

You can share a memory directly with friends and family, or play it with AirPlay to enjoy together.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Below Memories, tap  in the bottom-right corner of a memory to play it.
4. As the memory plays, tap  at the top of the screen, then do any of the following:
  - *Share a memory using AirDrop, Messages, or Mail:* Tap Share, then choose a sharing option.
  - *Play on a nearby AirPlay device:* Tap AirPlay, then choose an available device.

**Tip:** Before you tap AirPlay, tap Loop, so the memory automatically plays again.

### Share all the photos from a memory

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Touch and hold a memory, then tap Share Photos.

### Add a memory to Favorites

Identify your favorite memories to make them easier to find.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Touch and hold a memory, then tap Add to Favorite Memories.

To view your favorite memories, go to the Collections tab, tap Memories, then tap Favorites.

### Feature less of people, places, or days shown in a memory

You can identify themes in a memory that you'd like to be featured less (like a person, a place, or a specific day). These themes will appear less in your memories and featured photos in the Photos app.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Touch and hold a memory, then tap Feature Less.
4. Depending on the memory, select one of the following:
  - Feature This Day Less
  - Feature This Place Less
  - Feature a Person Less

## Delete a memory

1. Go to the Photos app 📸 on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Touch and hold a memory, then tap Delete.

# Personalize your memories in Photos on iPhone

You can edit your memory movies to make them even more personal. Try out Memory mixes, which let you apply different songs with a matching photographic look. You can also choose new songs, edit the title of a memory movie, change the length, and add, reorder, or remove photos. Apple Music subscribers can add songs from the millions of songs available in the Apple Music catalog.



## Add a Memory mix

Memory mixes are curated combinations of different songs, pacing, and styles that change the look and feel of a memory.

1. Go to the Photos app 📸 on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Below Memories, tap 🎵 in the bottom-right corner of a memory to play it.

If you don't see the memory you want to personalize, tap Memories to see your entire collection.
4. Tap the screen, then tap 🎵.
5. Swipe left to view different Memory mixes.
6. Tap the screen to apply a Memory mix.

## Change the Memory look

Draft

Use Memory looks to apply consistent ~~color~~<sup>Draft</sup> and style adjustments to all the photos in a memory.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Below Memories, tap  in the bottom-right corner of a memory to play it.  
If you don't see the memory you want to personalize, tap Memories to see your entire collection.
4. Tap the screen, then tap .
5. Tap , tap a look, then tap Done.

## Change the music

You can change a memory's music by choosing from memory soundtracks or suggested songs in Apple Music. Apple Music subscribers can also access their Apple Music library and view suggested songs based on musical preferences or the content of the memory.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Below Memories, tap  in the bottom-right corner of a memory to play it.  
If you don't see the memory you want to personalize, tap Memories to see your entire collection.
4. Tap the screen, then tap .
5. Tap , tap a song, then tap Done.

Apple Music subscribers can tap  to search for songs in the Apple Music library.

## Add or remove photos

You can choose the photos that appear in a memory—add or remove suggested featured photos, or choose photos and videos directly from your library.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Below Memories, tap  in the bottom-right corner of a memory to play it.  
If you don't see the memory you want to personalize, tap Memories to see your entire collection.
4. Tap the screen, then tap .
5. Tap Manage Photos, then do any of the following:
  - *Add a photo from your photo library:* Tap All, scroll through your library, select the photos you want to add, then tap <CHECK MARK ICON TO COME>.
  - *Remove photos:* Deselect a photo to remove it from the memory, then tap <CHECK MARK ICON TO COME>.
  - *Search for photos in your photo library:* Tap All, tap , then type the name of a person, place, or date. Tap a search result, select the photos you want to add, then tap <CHECK MARK ICON TO COME>.

## Edit the title, subtitle, and key photo<sup>Draft</sup>

You can edit the title or subtitle of a memory, or change the key photo that appears with the title of the memory.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Below Memories, tap  in the bottom-right corner of a memory to play it.  
If you don't see the memory you want to personalize, tap Memories to see your entire collection.
4. Tap the screen, then tap ...
5. Tap Edit Title, then do any of the following:
  - *Edit the memory title or subtitle:* Enter a new title or subtitle in the text fields.
  - *Change the key photo:* Tap the photo icon in the bottom-right corner of the current key photo, then select a new photo in the photo grid.
6. Tap Done.

## Reorder photos in a memory

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Below Memories, tap  in the bottom-right corner of a memory to play it.  
If you don't see the memory you want to personalize, tap Memories to see your entire collection.
4. Tap the screen, then tap <NEW FILM ICON TO COME>.
5. Touch and hold a photo, then drag it to a new position in the grid.
6. Tap < to return to the memory.

## Change the length of a memory

Depending on the number of photos in a memory, you can change the length of a memory to be short, medium, or long. Your choice automatically adjusts the number of photos included.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Below Memories, tap  in the bottom-right corner of a memory to play it.  
If you don't see the memory you want to personalize, tap Memories to see your entire collection.
4. Tap the screen, then tap ...
5. Tap Short, Medium, or Long.  
If you customized the length of the movie by adding or removing photos yourself, Custom is selected as the length.

# Make slideshows and videos on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can create a slideshow to view a collection of photos and videos that you choose from your library. Slideshows are automatically formatted and set to music. You can also combine individual photos into a video.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap Select, then tap each photo you want to include in the slideshow or video.
4. Tap , then tap Play as Slideshow or Save as Video.

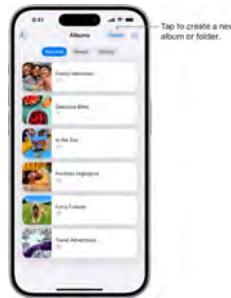
**Note:** Your slideshow is automatically saved as a memory. To view it later, go to the Memories section of Collections.

To change the slideshow music, theme, and more, see [Personalize your memories](#). To edit the video, see [Edit photos and videos](#).

## Use photo albums

### Create and work with photo albums on iPhone

Use albums in the Photos app to view and organize your photos and videos. You can also rename, rearrange, and delete albums and create folders to contain multiple albums.



If you use iCloud Photos, albums are stored in iCloud. They're up to date and accessible on devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. See [Back up and sync your photos with iCloud](#).

#### Create a new album

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap Albums, then tap .
4. Tap New Album, then name the album, add photos, and choose a key photo to represent the album.
5. Tap Create.

To create an album that you can collaborate on with other people, see [Create shared albums](#).

#### Reorder albums

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.

Draft

3. Tap Albums, tap  ..., then choose a  Sort option.

If you choose Sort by Custom Order, touch and hold an album, then drag it to a new position.

4. To show only albums, or only folders, tap  ..., tap Filter, then choose an option.

To change the format of the list, tap  ..., then select List View or Key Photo.

## Rename an album

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap Albums, then touch and hold the album you want to rename.
4. Tap Edit Title and Photos.
5. Enter the new name in the text field, then tap Done.

## Share all the photos in an album

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap Albums, then touch and hold the album you want to share.
4. Tap Share, then choose a sharing option such as AirDrop, Messages, or Mail.

## Delete an album

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap Albums, then touch and hold the album you want to delete.
4. Tap Delete Album.

*Note:* When you delete an album, the photos and videos within it remain in your photo library and any other albums they were added to.

## Organize albums in folders

You can create folders to organize your albums. After you create a folder, it appears in the Albums collection.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap Albums, then tap .
4. Tap New Folder, then name the folder and add albums to it.
5. Tap Create.

To remove an album from a folder, tap the folder to open it, touch and hold an album, then tap Remove from Folder.

# Add, delete, and find photos in albums on iPhone

You can add photos and videos to and ~~delete~~<sup>Draft</sup> them from the albums you create in the Photos app. You can also search within an album to quickly find specific photos and videos.

## Add photos to an existing album

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap Albums, then tap an album.
4. Tap  after the last photo in the album's photo grid.
5. Select the photos or videos you want to add to the album, then tap <CHECKMARK ICON TO COME>.

**Tip:** Tap <SEARCH icon to come> to find photos from a specific time or place.

You can also add individual photos and videos directly to an album. Tap the photo or video to view it in full screen, tap , then tap Add to Album.

## Remove photos from an album

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap Albums, then tap an album.
4. Touch and hold the photo you want to remove, then tap Remove from Album.

To remove multiple photos or videos from an album, tap Select, then select the items you want to remove. Tap , then tap Remove from Album.

## Search for photos in an album

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap Albums, then tap the album you want to search in.
4. Tap <SEARCH icon to come>, enter the person, object, or item you're looking for, then tap <SEARCH icon to come>.
5. Tap  to close the search results.

# Filter and sort photos and videos in albums on iPhone

You can filter and sort photos and videos in the albums you create in the Photos app. For example, you can filter an album to show only photos, only videos, or photos and videos you marked as favorites. You can also sort photos and videos in an album by newest to oldest, oldest to newest, or in a custom order.

## Filter photos and videos in an album

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap Albums, then open an album.

4. Tap <NEW FILTER ICON TO COME>, tap Filter, then choose an option.

To remove a filter from an album, tap the icon that replaced <NEW FILTER ICON TO COME> at the bottom of the screen, then tap Remove Filter.

## Sort photos and videos in an album

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap Albums, then open an album.
4. Tap <NEW FILTER ICON TO COME>, then choose a sort option.

If you choose Sort by Custom Order, touch and hold the photo or video thumbnail, then drag it into a new position.

# Share photos and videos

## Share photos and videos on iPhone

You can share photos and videos in Mail or Messages, or other apps you install. You can also use [AirDrop](#) to instantly share photos with anyone nearby on an iPhone, iPad, Mac, or Apple Vision Pro.

To learn about transferring photos and videos to an external storage device, see [Import and export photos and videos](#).

### Share photos and videos

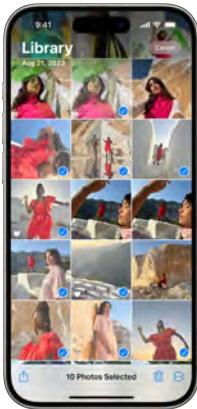
1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.

2. Do any of the following: Draft

- *Share a single photo or video:* Open the photo or video, tap , then choose a sharing option such as Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.



- *Share multiple photos or videos:* While viewing a screen with multiple thumbnails, tap Select, then tap the thumbnails of the photos and videos you want to share. Tap , then choose a sharing option such as Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.



- *Share all the photos in a collection:* While viewing a collection—like a collection from Recent Days, Memories, or Trips—tap , tap Share, then choose a sharing option such as Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.

You can also create a shared album so that you can collaborate on the album with just the people you choose. See [Create shared albums](#).

**Note:** The size limit of attachments is determined by your service provider. For devices or services that don't support Live Photos, a Live Photo is shared as a still photo.

### Adjust the information you share about a photo

Before you share a photo or video, you can adjust the format, file type, and information that gets shared with it.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.

2. Open a photo or video, tap  Draft, then do any of the following:
  - *Turn off location data:* Turn off Location.
  - *Adjust the file format:* Tap Automatic for the best file format for the destination, tap Current to prevent a file format conversion, or tap Most Compatible and files may convert to JPEG or MOV.
  - *Send as iCloud link:* Turn on iCloud Link to share a URL to view or download the photos or videos. iCloud links are available for 30 days.
  - *Send all photo data:* Turn on All Photos Data to share the original file with edit history and metadata; the recipient can view and modify the current version (available with AirDrop and iCloud links only).
3. Tap <CHECKMARK ICON TO COME>.

## Save or share a photo or video you receive

You can save photos shared with you from other apps.

Depending on the app, tap  next to the image, or touch and hold the photo or video, then tap .

You can view your saved photos and videos in your photo library, or see [Find recently saved photos](#).

*Note:* Photos and videos shared with you in the Messages app are automatically saved in your Photos library. To turn this feature off, go to Settings  > Apps > Messages > Shared with You, then turn off Photos.

## Share long videos on iPhone

Some long video files are too large to send in a standard text message. You can use AirDrop, iCloud, or Mail Drop to send long videos that you record with your iPhone camera.

### Send a video using AirDrop

The simplest way to send a large video to a nearby iPhone, iPad, Mac, or Apple Vision Pro is with AirDrop . AirDrop sends information using Wi-Fi and Bluetooth®, so before sending, make sure both you and the recipient have these controls turned on in [Control Center](#).

1. If the person you're sending the video to isn't in your contacts, have them do one of the following:
  - *On iPhone or iPad:* Go to Settings  > General > AirDrop, then tap Everyone for 10 Minutes.
  - *On a Mac:* Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, then click General in the sidebar. Click AirDrop & Handoff, then click the pop-up menu next to AirDrop and choose Everyone.
2. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
3. Tap the video you want to send, then tap .

If you want to send the video in its original format, including metadata, location, and any associated edit history or captions, tap Options, then turn on All Photos Data.

4. Tap AirDrop, then tap the contact Draft or device you want to share with.

After you share, the recipient receives an alert to accept or decline the AirDrop transfer.

## Send a video using an iCloud Link

An iCloud Link is a URL that you can use to send a large video with Messages or Mail.

To send an iCloud Link, make sure you have [iCloud Photos turned on](#). Then follow these steps:

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the video you want to send, then tap .
3. Tap Options, then tap Copy iCloud Link.
4. Go to Messages , Mail , or another communication app, then enter the recipient of the iCloud Link. Paste the iCloud Link into a message, and send it.

Recipients have 30 days to download a video sent with an iCloud Link.

## Send a video using Mail Drop

With Mail Drop, you can send a large video as an attachment in Mail.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the video you want to send, tap , then tap Mail.
3. Tap the To field, then enter the name or email of the recipient.

If you want to add a subject or message, tap the Subject field or email body.

4. Tap  to send.

Recipients have 30 days to download Mail Drop attachments.

# Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone

With the Shared Albums feature, you can create albums to share photos and videos with just the subscribers you choose—and they can add their own photos, videos, and comments for everyone to see. If you set up a shared album, you can also rename or delete it.

## Before you begin

Make sure you're signed in to your [Apple Account](#) on your iPhone and any other devices you want to use with Shared Albums.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, tap iCloud, then tap Photos
3. Turn on Shared Albums.

## Create a shared album

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.

3. Tap Albums, then tap Shared.      Draft
4. Tap +, then do the following:
  - *Add photos and videos to the album:* Tap Add Photos, select the items you want to add, then tap <CHECKMARK ICON TO COME>.
  - *Name the album:* Type a name in the Shared Album Name text field.
  - *Invite people to join:* Tap Add Participants, enter the name of a contact you want to add, or type the email address or phone number associated with the recipient's Apple Account, then tap Done. See [Invite or remove people](#).
5. Tap Create.

## Join a shared album

When you're invited to join a shared album, a notification appears on your iPhone screen.

Tap the notification, then tap Accept on the album in the Photos app.

If you don't join the shared album by tapping the notification, you can also do the following:

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap Albums, tap Activity, then tap Accept on the new album.

**Note:** The person who created the album receives a notification when someone accepts the invitation to join the shared album.

## Rename a shared album

The creator of a shared album can change its name.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap Albums, then tap Shared.
4. Touch and hold an album, then tap Shared Album Details.
5. Enter a new name in the text field, then tap Done.

## Delete or remove yourself from a shared album

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Touch and hold an album, then tap Delete Shared Album if you created the album, or tap Unsubscribe if you're a subscriber.

Photos that you saved or downloaded from a shared album to your photo library stay in your library even if the shared album is deleted, or the person who created the album stops sharing it. See [Save photos and videos from a shared album to your photo library](#).

# Add and remove people in a shared album in Photos on iPhone

If you're the creator of a shared album, Draft you can invite more participants to join the album. You can also remove participants from the album, manage album notifications, and turn posting for participants off and on. The creator of a shared album can also choose to let participants add additional participants to the album. If you have friends and family who don't use iCloud, you can share the album with them by sending an iCloud URL.

## Invite or remove people

The creator of a shared album can invite new participants to join the shared album.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap Albums, then tap Shared.
4. Touch and hold an album, tap Shared Album Details, then do any of the following:
  - *Invite someone:* Tap Add Participants, then enter the name of the contact you want to add, or type an email address or phone number.
  - *Remove someone:* Tap the name, then tap Remove Subscriber.
  - *Resend an invitation:* Tap the name, then tap Resend Invitation.
5. Tap Done.

## Share an album with people who don't use iCloud

The creator of a shared album can create a unique iCloud URL to share the album with people who don't use iCloud.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap Albums, then tap Shared.
4. Touch and hold an album, tap Shared Album Details, then turn on Public Website.
5. Tap Share Link, then choose how you want to share the iCloud URL—Mail or Messages, for example.

When Public Website is turned on, anyone with the URL can access the album.

## Manage posts and notifications

The creator of a shared album can manage participant posting and album activity notifications by turning those settings off and on.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap Albums, then tap Shared.
4. Touch and hold an album, tap Shared Album Details, then do any of the following:
  - *Only allow yourself to post photos and videos:* Turn off Participants Can Add Photos; tap again to turn participant posting back on.
  - *Turn off notifications:* Turn off Notifications to stop notifications when subscribers like, comment, or add photos and videos to the album; tap again to turn album notifications back on.

When participants post or comment in a shared album you're a part of, notifications about the activity appear in the Albums Activity tab.

## Add and delete photos and videos in a shared album on iPhone

You can add and delete photos and videos that you added to a shared album. You can also save photos and videos from a shared album to your photo library.

### Add photos and videos to a shared album

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap Albums, then tap Shared.
4. Touch and hold the album, then tap Add Photos.
5. Select photos and videos, then tap <CHECKMARK ICON TO COME>.

When you add new photos, the people you share the album with are automatically notified.

### Delete photos, videos, and comments from a shared album

Creators of a shared album can delete any photos, videos, or comments in the album. Participants can delete anything that they personally added. Anything that gets deleted is automatically deleted from the shared album on all your devices and the devices of all participants.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap Albums, tap Shared, then tap an album.
4. Touch and hold a photo or video, then tap Delete from Shared Album.

To delete a comment, touch and hold it, then tap Delete.

### Save photos and videos from a shared album to your photo library

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap Albums, tap Shared, then tap an album.
4. Touch and hold a photo or video thumbnail.  
To select multiple photos or videos, tap Select, then tap the items you want to save.
5. Tap Share, swipe up on the share menu, then tap Save Image or Save Video.

## Set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library on iPhone

With the iCloud Shared Photo Library feature, you can set up or join a shared library to share photos and videos with up to five friends or family members. You and those close to you can collaborate on the photo collection and enjoy more complete memories, all in one place. You can belong to one shared library at a time.



When you join a shared library, the photos and videos that you contribute move from your personal library to the shared library, and all members of the library can view, edit, and delete them. Shared library photos and videos are integrated seamlessly in the Photos app alongside your personal content, but you can also use a filter to quickly [switch between your personal and shared libraries](#).

**Note:** iOS 16.1, iPadOS 16.1, macOS 13, or later are the minimum system requirements to use iCloud Shared Photo Library. Photos and videos added to a shared library won't be available on devices with earlier versions of the software.

## Before you begin

Before you set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library, make sure you have iCloud Photos turned on.

Go to **Settings**  > [your name] > iCloud > Photos, then make sure Sync this iPhone is on.

**Note:** You don't need [Family Sharing](#) turned on to set up a shared library.

## Set up an iCloud Shared Photo Library

The person who sets up a shared library is the organizer.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
4. Tap Shared Library, then follow the onscreen instructions to add participants and move photos and videos into the shared library.

**Note:** Photos and videos you add to the shared library don't appear in your personal library; see [Switch between viewing your iCloud Shared Photo Library and personal library](#).

You can preview the photos and videos you add to the shared library and make changes before you invite participants using Messages or a web link.

## Join an iCloud Shared Photo Library

To join an iCloud Shared Photo Library, tap the invitation sent from the organizer, tap Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions. During setup, you can add [Draft](#)

photos and videos to the shared library **Draft** the same way as the organizer (see [Set up an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#)).

After you join a shared library, you can add photos and videos to it in several ways, and access the same content within it as the organizer and other participants. See [Add content to an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#).

## Add participants to an iCloud Shared Photo Library

The person who sets up an iCloud Shared Photo Library (the organizer) can add new participants to the shared library.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
4. Tap Manage, then tap Add Participants.

*Note:* A shared library can include up to six participants including the organizer; you can belong to one shared library at a time.

## Delete or leave an iCloud Shared Photo Library

If you're the organizer of an iCloud Shared Photo Library, you can delete it. If you aren't the organizer, you can leave the shared library.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
4. Tap Manage, then tap one of the following:
  - *Delete Shared Library:* When a shared library is deleted, participants who have been members of the shared library for more than 7 days can copy everything from the shared library into their own libraries. Participants who have been members for less than 7 days can copy only the content they contributed.
  - *Leave Shared Library:* When you leave a shared library, you can copy everything from the shared library into your own library, or just the content you contributed.

All content added to a shared library counts toward the iCloud storage space of the library organizer. See [Add storage space to your iCloud Shared Photo Library](#).

## Use iCloud Shared Photo Library on iPhone

After you [set up or join](#) an iCloud Shared Photo Library, you can share photos and videos with friends and family in the Photos app. You and up to five other participants can add photos and videos to the library, and any edits, comments, or other adjustments made to them are seen by everyone in real time. Content in a shared library is also added to everyone's memories, featured photos, and the Photos widget.

Photos and videos added to a shared library are separate from your personal library. You can easily switch between viewing the shared library, your personal library, or both in the Photos app.

## Switch between viewing your iCloud Shared Photo Library and

Draft

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap your account in the top-right corner, then do any of the following:
  - *View your Photos content and iCloud Shared Photo Library content:* Tap  Both Libraries.
  - *View only your personal Photos content:* Tap  Personal Library.
  - *View only iCloud Shared Photo Library content:* Tap  Shared Library.

Content that's part of the shared library has a badge  in the top-right corner of the thumbnail when you select the All Photos option at the top of the screen.

## Make edits and changes to content in an iCloud Shared Photo Library

When you make the following changes to photos and videos in an iCloud Shared Photo Library, all participants see the changes:

- Edits; see [Edit photos and videos](#).
- Favorites, captions, keywords, or date and time adjustments; see [See photo and video information](#).
- Deleted content; see [Delete or hide photos and videos](#).

*Note:* You receive notifications if content you added to the shared library is deleted. To turn off notifications, tap your account in the top-right corner of the screen in Photos, tap Shared Library, then turn off Deletion Notifications. If content you added is deleted, you can move it from Recently Deleted back to your personal library within 30 days.

## Move shared content from an iCloud Shared Photo Library to your personal library

Photos that are stored in your shared library have a badge  in their top-right corner. You can move photos and videos that you contributed to the shared library back to your personal library.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo or video, then tap  at the top of the screen.
3. Tap Move to Personal Library.

## Add storage space to your iCloud Shared Photo Library

The content in an iCloud Shared Photo Library is available to all participants, but the iCloud storage used to store the content counts against the library organizer's storage space.

If the shared library content exceeds the organizer's available storage space, the organizer can upgrade to iCloud+ or add additional storage to their existing iCloud+ subscription. See [Subscribe to iCloud+](#).

## Add content to an iCloud Shared Photo Library on iPhone

After you [set up or join](#) an iCloud Shared Photo Library in the Photos app, you can continue to add photos and videos in several ways:

- Manually move photos from your personal library
- Save photos and videos you take directly to the shared library from Camera
- Share photos you take when other members of the shared library are nearby
- Share photos and videos you take at home

*Note:* iOS 16.1, iPadOS 16.1, macOS 13, or later are the minimum system requirements to use iCloud Shared Photo Library. Photos and videos added to a shared library won't be available on devices with earlier versions of the software.

## Manually add photos and videos to an iCloud Shared Photo Library

You can add individual photos and videos from your personal library to the iCloud Shared Photo Library.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the photo or video you want to add to view it in full screen on your iPhone. Or, to add multiple photos and videos at the same time, tap Select, then tap the thumbnails you want to add.
3. Tap , then tap Move to Shared Library.



After content is moved to the shared library, it's no longer in your personal library and it's visible to all of the shared library participants. To move content from the shared library back to your personal library, follow the steps above, but tap Move to Personal Library instead of Move to Shared Library.

## Add photos and videos to an iCloud Shared Photo Library directly from Camera

After you [set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#), when you open Camera , a Shared Library button appears at the top of the screen to let you switch between saving photos and videos to your personal library and saving them to the shared library. By default, Camera saves to your personal library. To switch, tap  to save to the shared library; tap  to switch back to your personal library.

To turn the feature on or off after you complete the setup process, go to [Settings](#)  > Apps > Photos > Shared Library > Sharing from Camera, then turn Sharing from Camera on or off.

## Add photos and videos to an iCloud Shared Photo Library when participants are nearby

DraftWhen you [set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#), you can choose an option so that photos you take when you're near other participants of the shared library are automatically added to the shared library.

To allow iPhone to detect when participants of your shared library are nearby, participants need to be [signed in to their Apple Account](#) on their device, and have Bluetooth® turned on in Settings > Bluetooth.

To turn the feature on or off after you complete the setup process, do the following:

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
4. Tap Shared Library, then tap Sharing from Camera.
5. Tap Share Automatically.

## Automatically add photos and videos taken at home to an iCloud Shared Photo Library

When you [set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#), you can choose an option to automatically add photos and videos you take at home to the shared library.

To turn the feature on or off after you complete the setup process, do the following:

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
4. Tap Shared Library, then tap Sharing from Camera.
5. Turn Share When At Home on or off.

## Turn iCloud Shared Photo Library sharing suggestions on or off

Sharing suggestions recommends photos you might want to add to your iCloud Shared Photo Library, such as photos you took when participants of the shared library were nearby, or photos of people you indicated interest in during the setup process. iPhone sends a notification to review sharing suggestions. To turn suggestions on or off, follow these steps:

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
4. Tap Shared Library, then turn Shared Library Suggestions on or off.

If you want to get sharing suggestions for additional people, tap Add People, tap a person, then tap Add. The person doesn't have to be a member of the shared library.

For more information about accessing content in a shared library, see the Apple Support article [If you are missing photos after joining an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#).

# Edit photos and videos

# Edit photos and videos on iPhone

After you take a photo or video, use the tools in the Photos app to edit it on your iPhone. You can adjust the light and color, add a filter, and more.

When you use [iCloud Photos](#), any edits you make to your photos and videos are saved across all your devices.

## Adjust light and color

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo or video to open it, then tap .
3. Swipe left under the photo to view the lighting adjustments you can make—for example, Exposure, Brilliance, Highlights, and Shadows.
4. Tap the lighting setting you want to adjust, then drag the slider to make precise adjustments.

The level of adjustment you make for each lighting setting is indicated by the outline around the button, so you can see at a glance which lighting settings have been increased or decreased. Tap the lighting button to switch between the edited photo or video and the original so you can see the difference your edits made.



5. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.

**Tip:** Tap  to automatically enhance light and color in a photo or video.

## Edit the Photographic Style of a photo

After you [choose your default Photographic Style](#), you can edit the style or apply a new style to photos in your library. Available on iPhone 16 models (except iPhone 16e) and later.

**Note:** To edit Photographic Styles in the Photos app, Camera needs to capture photos with High Efficiency image capture. To turn on High Efficiency, go to Settings  > Camera > Formats, then tap High Efficiency.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo taken with a Photographic Style, then tap .

3. Make sure Styles is selected at the bottom of the screen, then do one of the following:

- *Choose a new style:* Swipe left or right on the style choices below the image.
- *Adjust the tone and color:* Tap , then drag your finger to simultaneously adjust the tone and color. Drag your finger on the slider below to adjust the intensity level. When you're done making adjustments, tap the image.

*Note:* As you make adjustments, the values for tone, color, and intensity are shown at the top of the screen. Tap the round arrow to reset these values.

4. Tap Done.

## Apply filter effects

On iPhone 16e, iPhone 15 models, or earlier, you can apply filter effects to change the tint of a photo.

*Note:* On iPhone 16 models and later, [use latest generation Photographic Styles](#) instead of filters to give your photos a customized look. Filter effects are available on these models if you haven't turned on Photographic Styles.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo or video, then tap .
3. Tap  to apply filter effects such as Vivid or Dramatic.

To remove a filter that was applied when you took the photo, tap Original.



4. Tap a filter, then drag the slider to adjust the effect.

To compare the edited photo to the original, tap the photo.

5. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.

## Copy and paste edits to multiple photos

You can copy the edits you made to one photo (or video) and paste them onto another photo, or a batch or photos, all at the same time.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the photo or video that contains the edits you want to copy.
3. Tap , then tap Copy Edits.

4. Review and turn off any edits you ~~Draft~~ don't want to copy, then tap Copy.
5. Tap < to return to your library.
6. Tap Select, then tap the thumbnails of the photos you want to paste the edits onto, or open a single photo or video.
7. Tap ..., then tap Paste Edits.

**Note:** Photos automatically adjusts the white balance and exposure of the edited photos to create a better match and make the photos look even more similar.

## Add stickers, text, and more to a photo

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo to open it.
3. Tap , then tap .
4. Tap  to add stickers, captions, text, shapes, or even your signature.
5. Tap  to save your edits.

## Set the background color of Edit mode

By default, the background of Edit mode matches the light or dark appearance of your iPhone. You can change the background color of Edit mode—for example, set it to always appear dark if you prefer to edit photos against a dark background.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo or video to open it, then tap .
3. Tap , tap Appearance, then do one of the following:
  - *Match Edit mode to the light or dark appearance of your iPhone:* Tap System.
  - *Make Edit mode always appear dark:* Tap Dark.
  - *Make Edit mode always appear light:* Tap Light.

## Crop, rotate, flip, or straighten photos and videos on iPhone

You can use the tools in the Photos app to crop, rotate, flip, straighten, or adjust the size of a photo or video.

When you use [iCloud Photos](#), any edits you make to your photos and videos are saved across all your devices.

### Crop, rotate, or flip a photo or video

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo or video to open it, then tap .

### 3. Tap , then do any of the following:

- *Crop manually:* Drag the rectangle corners to enclose the area you want to keep in the image, or pinch open or closed.  
  
*Note:* When you drag a corner, the crop tool keeps the original aspect ratio of the photo. To change the aspect ratio, tap the lock at the top-right corner of the photo to unlock the aspect ratio.
- *Crop to a standard preset ratio:* Tap , then choose an option such as Square, Wallpaper, 9:16, or 5:7.
- *Rotate:* Tap  to rotate the image 90 degrees.
- *Flip:* Tap  to flip the image horizontally.



### 4. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.

**Tip:** To quickly crop a photo while you're viewing it, pinch the photo to zoom in. When the photo appears as you want it cropped, tap Crop in the top-right corner of the screen. Make any further adjustments with the crop tools, then tap Done.

## Straighten a photo or video and adjust its perspective

You can straighten a photo or video, or tilt it vertically or horizontally.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo or video to open it, then tap .
3. Tap .
4. Swipe left under the photo to view editing options.
5. Tap the effect you want to edit, then drag the slider to make precise adjustments.

The level of adjustment you make is displayed by the slider. Tap the button to switch between the edited photo or video and the original.

6. Tap Done to save your edits.

**Tip:** To undo edits after you save, open the photo or video, tap , then tap Revert.

## Undo and revert photo edits on iPhone

While you edit a photo or video, you can **Undo** and **redo** changes. After saving, if you don't like how your changes look, you can revert back to the original. Draft

When you use [iCloud Photos](#), any edits you make to your photos and videos are saved across all your devices.

## Undo and redo as you edit

As you edit a photo or video, tap  and  at the top of the screen to undo and redo multiple edit steps.

**Tip:** You can tap the photo or video to compare the edited version to the original.

## Revert an edited photo or video

To undo edits after you save, you can revert to the original.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the edited photo or video, then tap .
3. Tap Revert to Original.

# Trim video length, adjust speed, and edit audio on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can trim a video you recorded on your iPhone to change where it starts and stops. You can also adjust the playback speed, and change the portion of a video that appears in slow motion when you record in Slo-mo mode.

When you capture a video on an iPhone 16 model or later, you can edit Spatial Audio in the Photos app.

## Trim a video

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a video, then tap .
3. Touch then drag either end of the frame viewer below the video to change the start and stop times, then tap Done.
4. Tap Save Video to save only the trimmed video, or Save Video as New Clip to save both versions of the video.



To undo edits after you save, open the video, tap , then tap Revert.

**Note:** A video saved as a new clip can't be reverted to the original. Draft

You can slow down videos that were captured at a high frame rate for a dramatic effect.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a video, tap , then tap Video.
3. Tap , then tap a playback speed.

*Note:* The playback options available depend on the format of the video you captured. The larger the format you capture, the more options are available.

## Change the slow-motion section of a video shot in Slo-mo mode

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a video shot in Slo-mo mode, then tap .
3. Drag the black vertical bars beneath the frame viewer to set where the video is played in slow motion.

## Edit Spatial Audio

When you record a video on an iPhone 16 model or later, it records multiple formats like Spatial Audio and Stereo to allow more audio customization. If you record video with Spatial Audio turned on, you can later edit the video sound—for example, reduce background noise to focus on the person speaking on camera.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a video, then tap .
3. Tap Audio Mix, then choose one of the following:
  - *Standard*: Play the original audio you recorded.
  - *In-Frame*: Reduce sounds and voices from sources not visible in the video frame.
  - *Studio*: Reduce background sounds and reverb, to make it sound more like you're recording in a professional studio.
  - *Cinematic*: Put all the voices onto a front-facing track and leave environmental noises in surround, like the audio in movies.
4. Drag the slider below the mix options to increase or decrease the effect and background noise levels.
5. Tap Done.

To learn more about Spatial Audio, see [Change sound recording options](#).

## Edit Cinematic mode videos on iPhone

On [supported models](#), Cinematic mode in Camera applies a depth-of-field effect that keeps the subject of your video sharp while creating a beautifully blurred foreground and background. After capturing the video, you can adjust or remove the Cinematic mode effects in the Photos app.



1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a video you recorded in Cinematic mode, then tap .
3. Tap Cinematic at the top of the screen, then tap Done.

To turn Cinematic mode back on, repeat these steps.

## Change the focus subject in a Cinematic mode video

Camera automatically identifies where to focus while you record in Cinematic mode and can automatically change focus if a new subject is identified. You can also change the focus subject manually.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a video you recorded in Cinematic mode, then tap .

White dots under the frame viewer indicate where Camera automatically changed the focus while recording. Yellow dots indicate where the focus was manually changed.

3. Play the video, or slide the white vertical bar in the frame viewer, to the point where you want to change the focus.
4. Tap a subject, outlined in yellow, to change the focus; double-tap to set automatic focus tracking on the subject.

A yellow dot appears under the frame viewer to indicate the focus was changed.

*Note:* You can also touch and hold the screen to lock the focus at a specific distance from the camera.

5. Repeat the steps above to change focus points throughout the video.

To remove a manual focus change, tap the yellow dot under the frame viewer, then tap .

6. Tap Done to save your changes.

Tap  to switch between automatic focus tracking and your manually selected focus points.

After you save your changes, you can revert a Cinematic mode video to the original if you don't like your edits. Open the video, tap , then tap Revert to Original.

## Adjust the depth of field in a Cinematic mode video

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a video you recorded in Cinematic mode, then tap .
3. Tap  at the top of the screen.

A slider appears below the video.

4. Drag the slider left or right to adjust the depth of field effect, then tap Done.

To undo edits after you save, open the video, tap , then tap Revert to Original.

## Export Cinematic mode videos to your Mac

You can use [AirDrop](#) to transfer Cinematic mode videos—with depth and focus metadata—from your iPhone to your Mac to edit in other apps.

Draft  
Note: To edit Cinematic mode videos recorded on an iPhone with iOS 16 or later, make sure your Mac is using macOS 13 or later.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the Cinematic mode video, then tap .
3. Tap Options at the top of the screen, turn on All Photos Data, then tap Done.
4. Tap AirDrop, then tap the device you want to share with (make sure the device you're sharing with has AirDrop turned on).

For information about editing Cinematic mode videos on your Mac using Photos, see [Edit a Cinematic mode video](#).

For information about editing Cinematic mode videos on your Mac using Final Cut Pro, iMovie, or Motion, see the Apple Support article [Edit Cinematic mode video in Final Cut Pro, iMovie, and Motion](#).

## Export Cinematic mode videos to an external storage device

You can export Cinematic mode videos directly to an external drive, a memory card, or other storage device.

*Note:* For photos and videos that have been edited, the unmodified original version will be exported.

1. Connect your iPhone to the storage device using the Lightning or USB-C connector.
2. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
3. Select the video you want to export.
4. Tap , then tap Export Unmodified Original.
5. Tap Browse, tap your storage device (below Locations), then tap <CHECKMARK ICON TO COME>.

## Edit Live Photos on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can edit Live Photos, change the key photo, and add fun effects like Bounce and Loop.

### Make Live Photo edits

In addition to the [photo editing tools](#), you can also change a Live Photo's key photo, trim its length, mute the sound, and turn a Live Photo into a still photo.



Draft

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a Live Photo, then tap .
3. Tap , then do any of the following:
  - *Set a key photo:* Move the white frame on the frame viewer, tap Make Key Photo, then tap Done.
  - *Trim a Live Photo:* Drag either end of the frame viewer to choose the frames the Live Photo plays.
  - *Make a still photo:* Tap the Live button at the top of the screen to turn off the Live feature. The Live Photo becomes a still of its key photo.
  - *Mute a Live Photo:* Tap  at the top of the screen. Tap it again to unmute.

*Note:* Live Photos taken on an iPhone 15 model or later with a portrait effect lose the portrait effect if you change the key photo.

## Add effects to a Live Photo

You can add effects to Live Photos to turn them into fun videos.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a Live Photo.
3. Tap Live in the top-left corner, then choose one of the following:
  - *Live:* Applies the Live video playback feature.
  - *Loop:* Repeats the action in a continuous looping video.
  - *Bounce:* Rewinds the action backward and forward.
  - *Long Exposure:* Simulates a DSLR-like long exposure effect by blurring motion.
  - *Live Off:* Turns off the Live video playback feature or applied effect.
  - *Portrait:* Applies the Portrait effect.
  - *Portrait off:* Turns off the Portrait effect.

## Turn a Live Photo into a video

You can turn a Live Photo into a short video to save or share—for example, to share with people not on Apple devices.

Draft

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a Live Photo.
3. Tap  in the top-right corner, then tap Save as Video.

## Edit Portrait mode photos on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can change and adjust the lighting effects, depth of field, and focus point of the photos you take in Portrait mode.



### Change the Portrait Lighting effect

You can apply, change, or remove the Portrait Lighting effects in portraits.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a Portrait mode photo to open it, then tap .
3. Tap Portrait at the bottom of the screen, then tap  at the top of the screen.

The Portrait Lighting effects appear at the bottom of the screen.

4. Touch , then slide your finger left or right to choose a lighting effect:
  - *Natural Light*: The face is in sharp focus against a blurred background.
  - *Studio Light*: The face is brightly lit, and the photo has an overall clean look.
  - *Contour Light*: The face has dramatic shadows with highlights and lowlights.
  - *Stage Light*: The face is spotlit against a deep black background.
  - *Stage Light Mono*: The effect is like Stage Light, but the photo is in classic black and white.
  - *High-Key Light Mono*: The effect creates a grayscale subject on a white background.

5. Drag the slider below the lighting effects left or right to adjust the intensity of the lighting effect.
6. Tap Done.

To undo edits after you save, tap , tap Revert, then tap Revert to Original.

### Blur the background in portraits

Draft

Use the Depth Control slider to adjust the level of background blur in your portraits. Draft



1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap any Portrait mode photo to view it in full screen, then tap .
3. Tap Portrait at the bottom of the screen, then tap  at the top of the screen.
4. Drag the Depth Control slider at the bottom of the screen to increase or decrease the background blur effect.  
A black dot marks the original depth value for the photo.
5. Tap Done.

## Change the focus point of a portrait

You can change the subject (or focus point) of a portrait using Focus Control. When you select a new subject, the background blur automatically adjusts so the new subject appears sharp and in focus. Make sure that the new subject isn't blurred or too far in the distance.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap any Portrait mode photo to view it in full screen, then tap .
3. Tap Portrait at the bottom of the screen, then tap a new subject or focus point in the photo.
4. Tap Done.

*Note:* Available on portraits taken on iPhone 13 models and later, with iOS 16 or later.

## Apply the portrait effect to photos taken in Photo mode

On [supported models](#), photos with a person, dog, or cat taken in Photo mode can become portraits in the Photos app.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap any photo taken in Photo mode to view it in full screen, then tap .
3. If portrait effects are available, tap Portrait at the bottom of the screen.
4. Use the Depth Control slider to increase or decrease the level of background blur in the portrait.
5. Tap Done.

To undo edits after you save, open the **photo**, tap  **Draft**, then tap **Revert**, then tap **Revert to Original**.

**Note:** When the portrait effect is applied to a Live Photo taken in Photo mode, the Live Photo effects aren't available. Tap **Live** to view the Live Photo or apply a Live Photo effect without the portrait effect applied.

## Remove the portrait effect

You can remove the portrait effect (background blur) from a photo taken in Portrait mode.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap any Portrait mode photo to view it in full screen, then tap .
3. Tap **Portrait** at the top of the screen to turn off the portrait effect; tap it again to turn it back on.
4. Tap **Done**.

# Control featured people and content in Photos on iPhone

You can set the Photos app to show certain people, days, and holidays less frequently or not at all in your memories, in featured photos, and in the Photos widget. You can also turn off memories and featured photos in the Photos app and the widget on your iPhone Home Screen.

## Show a person less frequently or not at all

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo of the person you want to show less often.
3. Tap , then tap **Don't Feature a Person**.  
If there's more than one person in the photo, tap the person you want to feature less, then tap **Next**.
4. Choose **Feature This Person Less** or **Never Feature This Person**.
5. Tap **Confirm**.

To feature someone again, go to **Settings**  > **Apps** > **Photos**, then tap **Reset People & Pets Suggestions**.

## Turn off holiday memories

You can turn off all memories that feature holiday events in your home country or region.

1. Go to the **Settings** app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap **Apps**, then tap **Photos**.
3. Turn off **Show Holiday Events**.

## Turn off Memories and Featured Photos

You can turn off Memories and Featured Photos in the Photos app and the Photos widget.

1. Go to the **Settings** app  on your iPhone.

**Draft**

2. Tap Apps, then tap Photos. Draft

3. Turn off Show Featured Content.

## Make stickers from your photos on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can make stickers from the subjects in your photos and animated stickers from the subjects in your Live Photos. Then use your stickers to decorate messages, photos, notes, and more.

### Turn a photo or Live Photo into a sticker

You can turn the main subject of a photo into a sticker.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo to open it in full screen.
3. Touch and hold the subject, then release.
4. Tap Add Sticker.

The sticker appears in your stickers menu, which you can access when you use the iPhone onscreen keyboard or Markup tools.

5. Tap Add Effect if you want to apply a visual effect such as Outline, Comic, or Puffy.



6. Tap  to close the sticker menu.

**Tip:** You can use stickers you've created to decorate a photo. See [Edit photos and videos](#).

### Delete a sticker

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo, then tap .
3. Tap , then tap .
4. Tap Add Sticker, touch and hold the sticker you want to delete, then tap Remove.

Your stickers sync with iCloud, so they're available on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, and Apple Vision Pro devices where you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#).

## Duplicate and copy photos and videos on

Draft

In the Photos app on iPhone, you can duplicate a photo or video while preserving the original version. You can also copy a photo and then paste it into another document such as an email, text message, or presentation.

## Duplicate a photo or video

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo or video, then tap .
3. Tap Duplicate.

A duplicate copy appears next to the original in your library.

## Copy a photo

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo, then tap .
3. Tap Copy, then paste the photo into another document.

## Copy multiple photos or videos

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap Select, then tap the thumbnails you want to copy.
4. Tap , then tap Copy.
5. Paste the copies into another document.

## Merge duplicate photos and videos on iPhone

The Photos app identifies duplicate photos and videos in your photo library in the Duplicates collection. You can merge duplicate photos and videos to save space and clean up your library.



1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.

3. Tap Utilities, then tap Duplicates. Draft
4. Tap Merge to combine a set of duplicates, then tap Merge [number] Items.

If you don't have any duplicate photos or videos in your library, the Duplicates collection doesn't appear.

## Import and export photos and videos on iPhone

You can import photos and videos directly to the Photos app from a digital camera, an SD memory card, or another iPhone or iPad that has a camera. You can also export unmodified versions of your photos and videos directly to an external drive, memory card, or other storage device that's connected to your iPhone.

### Import photos and videos to your iPhone

Import photos and videos saved on another device such as a digital camera or an external drive to the Photos app on your iPhone.

1. Insert the camera adapter or card reader into the Lightning or USB-C connector, or connect the device directly to your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
  - *Connect a camera:* Connect the adapter to the camera, then turn on the camera and make sure it's in transfer mode. For more information, see the documentation that came with the camera.
  - *Connect an external storage device or insert an SD memory card into the card reader:* Don't force the card into the slot on the reader; it fits only one way.
  - *Connect an iPhone or iPad:* Use the Lightning adapter or the USB-C cable that came with the device to connect it to the camera adapter. Turn on and unlock the device.
3. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
4. Tap Import.
5. Select the photos and videos you want to import, then select your import destination.
  - *Import all items:* Tap Import All.
  - *Import selected items:* Tap the items you want to import (a checkmark appears for each), tap Import, then tap Import Selected.
6. After the photos and videos have been imported, keep or delete them on the camera, card, iPhone, or iPad.
7. Disconnect the camera adapter or card reader.

### Export photos and videos to an external storage device

You can export photos and videos you took on your iPhone directly to an external drive, a memory card, or other storage device.

*Note:* For photos and videos that have been edited, the unmodified original version will be exported.

1. Connect your iPhone to the storage device using the Lightning or USB-C connector, or connect the device directly to your iPhone.

2. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone. Draft
3. Select the photos and videos you want to export.
4. Tap , then tap Export Unmodified Original.
5. Tap your storage device (below Locations), then tap Save.

Photos and videos in the Hidden album won't be transferred if the album is locked. To unlock the Hidden album, go to Settings  > Apps > Photos, then turn off Use Face ID, Use Touch ID, or Use Passcode.

## Print photos on iPhone to an AirPrint-enabled printer

Print your photos directly from the Photos app on your iPhone with any AirPrint-enabled device.

### Print a photo

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo, then tap .
3. Tap Print.

### Print multiple photos at once

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library or open a collection, then tap Select.
3. Select each photo you want to print, then tap .
4. Tap Print.

## Podcasts

### Get started with Podcasts on iPhone

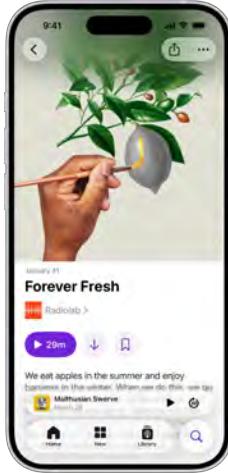
The Podcasts app  offers millions of shows on a variety of topics such as news, true crime, comedy, and more. You can listen online or download episodes so you can play them even when you're not connected to the internet.

### Find podcasts



You can use the Search feature to find categories, channels, shows, or episodes that match your interests. Tap or Search to browse categories or enter a word or phrase such as show name, person, or topic in the search field to find what you're looking for.

## Listen to podcasts



Tap to start playing a show or episode, then use the player to pause or resume playing, or skip ahead.

You can also tap the player to open the Now Playing tab, where you can access more options—change the playback speed, enhance dialogue to hear voices more clearly, and more.

## Follow a show



When you find a show you like, tap + to add it to your library. You can choose whether to automatically download new episodes of shows you follow and get notifications when new episodes are available.

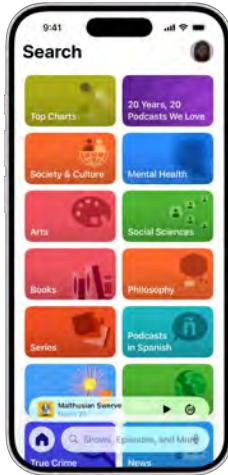
Want to learn more?

- [Find podcasts](#)
- [Listen to podcasts](#)
- [Follow your favorite podcasts](#)
- [Download, save, remove, and share podcasts](#)
- [Subscribe to podcasts](#)
- [View podcast transcripts](#)

## Find podcasts on iPhone

Use the Podcasts app to find shows about science, news, politics, comedy, and more. If you find a show you like, you can *follow* it to add it to your library. Then you can easily listen offline, get notified about new episodes, access followed shows on your other Apple devices and on [Apple Podcasts on the web](#), and more.

**Note:** Shows may offer paid subscriptions that give you access to exclusive shows and episodes, new releases, episodes without ads, and more. You can [subscribe to a show or channel](#) and manage your subscriptions. If you already subscribe to Apple Music, Apple News+, or an eligible third-party app, you can listen to its subscriber content in Podcasts. See [Listen to subscriber-only content](#).



1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Search by category, title, person, or topic:* Tap Search, then enter a word or phrase in the search field. Suggested search phrases appear as you type; you can tap one, or tap Search on the onscreen keyboard to view all results for the word or phrase you typed. Top search results appear below suggested search phrases—tap a show or channel in the list to go directly to it.
  - *Discover new shows:* Tap New to see new and trending shows, and the Apple editorial collections. You can also tap Search without typing anything; you see featured categories such as Top Charts.

**Tip:** To quickly see the top shows and episodes for a specific category, tap All Categories in the Top Charts screen, then tap a category.

- *Add shows by URL:* Tap Library, tap ..., then tap Follow a Show by URL. Enter the URL, then tap Follow.

*Note:* The URL must be for a valid podcast RSS feed.

## Get personalized recommendations

You can get personalized podcast recommendations based on your listening activity and your favorite categories and channels.

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *View recommended shows:* Scroll left or right in the You Might Like row.
  - *Refine your show recommendations:* Tap a show in the You Might Like row, tap ..., then tap Suggest Less.
  - *View suggested episodes based on your listening:* Scroll down to the More to Discover row, then scroll left or right.
  - *Opt out of personalized recommendations:* Tap your profile picture, tap your name, then turn off Personalized Recommendations.

*Note:* Your Personalized Recommendations setting also applies to the App Store, Apple Books, iTunes Store, Apple TV, and subscriptions from Apple.

Other recommendations are available based on categories you listen to and any subscriptions you already purchased.

## View shared podcasts

When a friend shares a show or episode with you in Messages, you can easily find it in Podcasts.

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then scroll down to the Shared with You section.

If you don't see Shared with You, check to make sure your friend is in your contacts, and that Podcasts is turned on in Settings  > Apps > Messages > Shared with You.

## Browse episodes within a specific podcast

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a show.
3. Scroll down to see recent episodes or tap See All (if available).

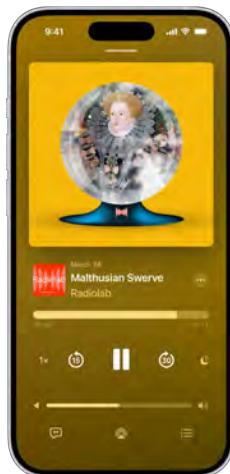
## Filter episodes

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a show.
3. Tap Episodes (or the current filter) above the list of episodes.
4. Choose an option, like Unplayed or Season 1.

*Note:* Some filter options, such as Unplayed, Downloaded, Saved, and Played, are only available for shows that you follow or shows with downloaded or saved episodes.

## Listen to podcasts on iPhone

In the Podcasts app, you can play an episode, see what's playing next, listen to an episode when you're offline, set a sleep timer, and use the playback controls.



## Play a podcast

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.
2. [Search or browse](#) to find an episode, then tap  for the episode.

**Tip:** To jump to a specific time, drag the slider below the episode information. (If the slider doesn't appear, tap the player near the bottom of the screen to open Now Playing.)

3. Optionally, tap the player at the bottom of the screen to open Now Playing, then do any of the following:

- *Change the playback speed:* Tap  $1\times$ , then select a speed.
- *Hear voices more clearly:* Tap  $1\times$ , then tap Enhance Dialogue.
- *Jump to a specific time:* Drag the slider above the player controls. (If the slider doesn't appear, tap the player at the bottom to open the Now Playing screen.)
- *Jump to a chapter:* While listening to an episode that has chapters, tap  $\checkmark$  next to the name of the current chapter, then tap the chapter you want to play.

**Tip:** You can set a custom playback speed and enhanced dialogue setting for any show you follow. Tap Library, tap Shows, select a show, then tap  $\cdots$ . Tap Settings, then scroll down to Speed & Audio Adjustments. Choose Custom for This Show, then select a playback speed or turn Enhance Dialogue on or off.

## Resume playing a previous podcast

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, scroll down to the Recently Played section, then tap  $\blacktriangleright$  below an episode title.

## Choose what to play next

You can add episodes to Playing Next, then listen to them later.

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.
2. [Find a podcast](#).
3. Tap  $\cdots$  for an episode, then tap Play Next or Add to Queue.
4. Tap the player near the bottom of the screen to open Now Playing, then tap  $\equiv$ .
5. In the Queue section, do any of the following:
  - *Play an episode:* Tap the episode. The next episode in the queue plays immediately after the previous episode finishes.
  - *Reorder episodes:* Drag  $\equiv$  to move an episode up or down in the list.
  - *Remove an episode from the queue:* Swipe left on the episode, then tap Remove.
  - *Remove all episodes from the queue:* Tap Clear.

If you listen to multiple episodes of a show in a row, additional episodes appear in the Continue Playing section of Now Playing. These episodes play after the ones you added to the Queue section, so you can easily pick up where you left off in a show. You can also tap an episode in Continue Playing to start listening right away.

## Set a sleep timer

You can set a sleep timer so that playback stops automatically after a specified period of time.

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the player near the bottom of the screen to open Now Playing.
3. Tap , then choose an option.

## Use the playback controls

Draft

Tap the player near the bottom of the screen to open Now Playing, then use any of the following controls.

Control	Description
	Play the current episode.
	Pause the current episode.
	Choose a faster or slower playback speed, and turn Enhance Dialogue on or off to adjust voice clarity.
	Jump back 15 seconds. To change the number of seconds you skip back, go to Settings > Apps > Podcasts, then tap Back.
	Jump forward 30 seconds. To change the number of seconds you skip forward, go to Settings > Apps > Podcasts, then tap Forward.
	Set a timer for podcasts to stop playing.
	View the transcript for an episode.
	Stream the audio to other devices.
	See what's next in your queue, or play more episodes from a show you recently listened to.
	Choose more actions such as sharing or downloading the episode.

## View podcast transcripts on iPhone

In the Podcasts app, you can view and search episode transcripts.

**Note:** Transcript availability may vary by language, and by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Follow and play shows in Apple Podcasts on iPhone and iPad](#).

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.

Draft

2. Do any of the following: Draft

- *While playing an episode:* Tap . (You may need to tap the player near the bottom of the screen to open Now Playing.)
- *While viewing episode information:* Scroll down to the Transcripts section. You can also tap ..., then tap View Transcript.
- *From the Up Next section:* Tap , then tap View Transcript.

You can read along with an episode as you play it. Tap a word to jump to that time in the episode. Tap Search in Now Playing (or tap in other tabs) to find a specific word or phrase. Optionally, tap  in the search field to specify whether the whole word or the capitalization needs to match in the search results.

## Follow your favorite podcasts on iPhone

When you find a show you like in the Podcasts app, follow it to add it to your library so you can get notified about new episodes, change the playback order, and more.

### Follow a podcast

When you follow a podcast, it's added to your library. You can access podcasts you follow on your other Apple devices, or on the [Apple Podcasts app](#).

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.

2. Do any of the following:

- *While viewing show information:* Tap Follow.  
You can also tap ..., then tap Follow.
- *While viewing episode information, or from Now Playing:* Tap ..., then tap Follow Show.

### Unfollow a podcast

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Library, then tap Shows.

3. Tap a show you follow, then tap .

You can also tap ..., then tap Unfollow.

### Get notifications for new episodes

Get notified when new episodes are available for podcasts you follow.

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Home.

3. Tap  or your picture.

4. Tap Notifications, then turn Notifications on or off for one or more shows.

## Rate or review podcasts on iPhone

You can rate and review a show, read reviews from other listeners, and delete a review you wrote if you later change your mind.

## Rate or review a show

Draft

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.
2. [Search or browse](#) for a show.
3. Tap the show you want to rate or review, then scroll down to Ratings & Reviews.
4. Do any of the following:
  - *Rate a show:* Tap a star to rate the show from 1 to 5.
  - *Review a show:* Tap Write a Review. Tap a star to rate the show, enter your review, then tap Submit.
  - *Edit a review:* Tap Write a Review, make any changes, then tap .

## Delete a rating or review

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home at the bottom of the screen, then tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap your name (you may need to sign in), then tap Ratings and Reviews.
4. Tap Edit, then tap .
5. Tap Done.

# Use the Podcasts widget on iPhone

You can add the Podcasts widget to your Home Screen to view and play episodes without opening the Podcasts app . You can add episodes from the Up Next queue, saved episodes, or episodes from a show you follow.

## Add a Podcasts widget to the Home Screen

1. Touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle.
2. Tap Edit at the top left, then tap Add Widget to open the widget gallery.
3. Scroll down, then tap Podcasts.
4. Swipe left and right to view the different widget sizes and layouts. When you see the option you like, tap Add Widget.

To move the widget on your Home Screen, touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle. Drag the widget to a new location, then tap Done.

To remove the widget from your Home Screen, touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle, tap  at the top left of the widget, then tap Remove.

# Select your favorite Podcasts categories and channels on iPhone

You can select your favorite categories and channels in the Podcasts app to get better show recommendations and access shows from your subscriptions.

## Select your favorite categories

You can add categories to your favorites to get better show recommendations and Draft

easy access to category pages. Your **favorite** categories appear at the top of the Categories list with a .

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, tap Categories, then tap Manage.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Add a category to your favorites:* Select one or more categories.
  - *Remove a category from your favorites:* Tap .

## Select your favorite channels

You can add channels to your favorites to make them easier to find in your library, and remove them if you change your mind. Your favorite channels appear at the top of the Channels list with a .

*Note:* Channels doesn't appear in the Library tab if you haven't subscribed to a channel, followed a show offered by a channel, or added a channel as a favorite.

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Channels.

You can also [search or browse](#) for a channel.

3. Do any of the following:
  - *Add a channel to your favorites:* Tap the channel, then tap .
  - *Remove a channel from your favorites:* Tap the channel, then tap .

# Organize your podcast library on iPhone

In the Podcasts app, you can organize the podcasts you follow, catch up on the latest episodes, and create your own stations.

## View your podcast library

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library at the bottom of the screen to see the following options:
  - *Shows:* Tap Followed to view shows you follow. If you downloaded or saved episodes from podcasts you don't follow, tap All to see them. You can tap any show to see its information or the episodes you downloaded or saved.
  - *Channels:* See channels you subscribe to, channels you added to your favorites, and channels that have shows you follow. You can tap a channel to browse all of its shows.
  - *Categories:* See categories you added to your favorites, along with categories for any shows you follow.
  - *Saved:* See episodes you saved.
  - *Downloaded:* See episodes you downloaded. You can listen to these episodes without an internet connection.
  - *Latest Episodes:* See the most recent episodes from each show you follow. To change how long episodes stay in this playlist, tap ...
  - *Stations:* If you created stations, each one is listed.

## Change the episode playback order<sup>Draft</sup>

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Shows.
3. Touch and hold a show, then tap Settings.
4. Choose an option under Episode Order.

When you play an episode from the show page, the remaining episodes play based on the order you choose.

## Limit the number of downloads from each podcast

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Shows.
3. Touch and hold a show, then tap Settings.
4. Tap Automatically Download, then choose an option.

## Mark an episode as played

Do any of the following:

- *While viewing show information:* Swipe right on an episode, then tap Played.
- *While viewing episode information:* Tap ..., then tap Mark as Played.

## Hide episodes you already played

You can change a show's settings to hide episodes you've already played.

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, tap Shows, then touch and hold a show.
3. Tap Settings, then turn on Hide Played Episodes.

To automatically hide played episodes for all shows you follow, go to Settings > Apps > Podcasts, then turn on Hide Played Episodes.

## Create your own station

Use stations (similar to a music playlist) to group shows you follow based on themes like news, comedy, or morning commute. Episodes from the podcasts you choose are automatically added to your station regularly.

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap ... near the top right.
3. Tap New Station, add a title, then tap Save.
4. Tap Choose Podcasts, then tap the shows you want to add to the station (or turn on Include All Podcasts).
5. Tap <, then tap Done.

**Tip:** You can adjust the number of episodes from each podcast that are added to your station. Tap the station, tap ..., then tap Station Settings. To use the same settings for all podcasts in a station, tap Episodes, then choose an option. To adjust the settings for a single show, tap the show in the Podcasts list, then choose an option.

## Download, save, remove<sup>Draft</sup>, and share podcasts

# Download, save, remove, and share podcast episodes on iPhone

In the Podcasts app, you can download, save, remove, and share podcast episodes.

## Download an episode

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *While viewing show information:* Swipe left on an episode, then tap .
  - You can also tap  below an episode, then tap Download Episode.
  - *While viewing episode information:* Tap .
  - You can also tap , then tap Download Episode.

## Save an episode

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *While viewing show information:* Swipe left on an episode, then tap .
  - You can also tap  below an episode in the list, then tap Save Episode.
  - *While viewing episode information:* Tap .
  - You can also tap , then tap Save Episode.

When you save an episode, it's automatically downloaded so you can listen to it offline. To turn off this option, go to Settings > Apps > Podcasts, then turn off Download When Saving.

## Remove a saved episode

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *From the library:* Tap Saved, then tap  near the episode name.
  - *While viewing show or episode information:* Tap  near the episode name.

You can also tap  near the episode name, then tap Unsave Episode.

## Remove a downloaded episode

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.

2. Do any of the following: Draft

- *From the library:* Tap Downloaded, then tap a show. Swipe left on an episode, then tap Remove Download.  
You can also tap ⓘ or … near the episode name, then tap Remove Download.
- *While viewing show information:* Tap ✖ next to the episode, then tap Downloaded. Tap ⓘ or ⓘ near the episode name, then tap Remove Download.
- *While viewing episode information:* Tap ⓘ or ⓘ, then tap Remove Download.

## Remove all downloaded episodes from a show

1. Go to the Podcasts app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Shows.
3. Touch and hold a show, then tap Remove Downloads.

## Remove all downloaded episodes

1. Go to the Podcasts app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Downloaded.
3. Tap …, then tap Remove All Downloads.

## Share a podcast show or episode

1. Go to the Podcasts app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Tap a show. If you want to share a specific episode, tap the episode.
3. Tap … near the top right, then tap Share Show or Share Episode.
4. Optionally, specify the starting time for a shared episode: tap From Start, then choose From [time].  
The shared episode starts from the point where you're listening when you tap Share.
5. Choose how to share the show or episode.

# Subscribe to a show or channel in Podcasts on iPhone

In the Podcasts app, subscribe to, change, cancel, and share your podcasts subscriptions. Paid subscriptions allow you to support the shows you love, and they often include premium extras, early access to new episodes, or ad-free listening.

*Note:* Not all subscriptions and channels are available in all countries, regions, or languages. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

## Subscribe to a show or channel

1. Go to the Podcasts app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Select the show or channel you want to subscribe to.

3. Tap the subscription button (if available).  
Draft

When you subscribe to a show, you automatically follow it. You can access shows you subscribe to or follow on your other Apple devices or on the [Apple Podcasts app](#). See [Follow your favorite podcasts](#). When you subscribe to a channel or follow one of its shows, the channel appears in the Channels section of your library.

## Change or cancel your subscriptions

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home.
3. Tap  or your picture, then tap Manage Subscriptions.
4. Tap a subscription to change or cancel it.

## Share Apple Podcasts subscriptions

When you subscribe to podcast channels, you can [use Family Sharing](#) to share your subscriptions with up to five other family members. Your family group members will automatically have access to the channels you subscribe to.

If you [join a family group](#) and a family group member subscribes to a show you already subscribe to, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

*Note:* To stop sharing a show subscription with a family group, you can cancel the subscription or [leave a Family Sharing group](#).

## Listen to subscriber-only content in Podcasts on iPhone

In the Podcasts app, you can listen to audio content from Apple Music, Apple News+, and eligible third-party subscription apps.

*Note:* Not all apps offer audio content that's available in Podcasts.

## Connect app subscriptions to Podcasts

Your eligible app subscriptions are automatically connected to Podcasts if you subscribed through the App Store and the app offers audio content in Podcasts.

If you subscribed using another method, do the following:

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPhone.
2. [Browse or search](#) for a channel with an eligible subscription.
3. On the Channel page, tap the Already a Subscriber link, then follow the instructions to connect your app subscription.

After an app subscription is connected, you can find the channel in your library. You can use Podcasts to play all subscriber-only shows and episodes.

## Change your download settings for Podcasts on iPhone

Draft  
Podcasts you follow are automatically downloaded to your Apple device. Episodes you've played are automatically deleted from your device. You can change these settings, and adjust other download options.

## Turn automatic downloads on or off

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Podcasts.
3. Tap Automatically Download, then tap an option.

**Tip:** To automatically download episodes from a particular podcast, go to the Podcasts app , tap Library, then tap Shows. Touch and hold the show, tap Settings, then tap Automatically Download to choose a download option.

## Remove downloaded podcasts after you listen to them

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Podcasts.
3. Turn on Remove Played Downloads.

To adjust this setting for a particular podcast you follow, tap Library, tap Shows, then touch and hold the show. Tap Settings, then turn on Remove Played Downloads.

## Turn off automatic syncing across Apple devices

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Podcasts.
3. Turn off Sync Library.

# Preview

## Get started with Preview on iPhone

Learn how to use the Preview app  to fill out and sign PDF forms, and to make changes to PDF documents and images. You can save files on your iPhone or in iCloud Drive, share them with others, or search for a specific PDF or image.

### Fill out PDF forms



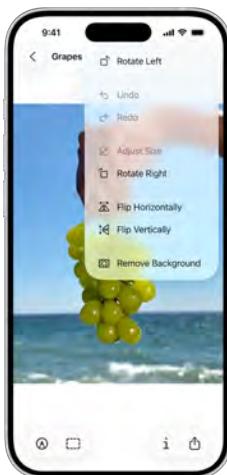
To fill out a PDF form in Preview, tap and select a field. Enter text, or tap a suggestion that appears above the onscreen keyboard. If the field is a signature field, you can use your finger to add a signature.

## Protect a PDF document with a password



You can lock a PDF with a password. Open a PDF, tap next to the filename, then tap Lock. Turn on Require Password, then enter a password in the Password and Verify fields.

## Remove the background from an image



If an image's background consists of areas that are mainly the same color, you can remove it. Tap  at the top of the screen, then choose Remove Background.

## Highlight, underline, or strike through text



You can highlight, underline, or strike through text in a PDF. Open a PDF, then select text. Tap Highlight, then tap a highlight color, the underline button, or the strike through button.

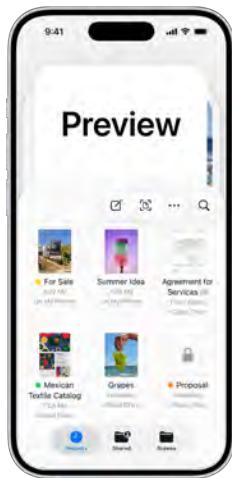
Want to learn more?

- [Fill out and sign PDF forms](#)
- [Lock PDFs](#)
- [Remove the background from an image](#)
- [Annotate a PDF](#)
- [Open and view PDFs and images](#)
- [Annotate an image](#)

## View PDFs and images

### Open and view PDFs and images in Preview on iPhone

You can use the Preview app to open and view PDF documents and images.



## Open a PDF or image

1. Go to the Preview app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following to find a file:
  - *Browse available files:* Tap Browse.
  - *View files you opened recently:* Tap Recents.
  - *View shared files:* Tap Shared.
  - *Choose a location to browse:* Tap Browse, tap <, then tap an option under Locations.
  - *Browse by tag:* Tap Browse, tap <, then tap an option under Tags.
3. Optionally, tap ..., then select how items appear (icons or list) or how items are sorted.
4. Tap a file to open it.

**Tip:** If someone emails you a PDF form to fill out, you can tap the attached file in the Mail app  to open the form in the Preview app. Fill out the form, tap , then tap Reply to [sender] to open a reply in the Mail app with the completed PDF attached. See [Reply to an email with a PDF attachment](#).

## View a PDF or image

1. Go to the Preview app  on your iPhone.
2. [Open the PDF or image](#) you want to view.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Zoom in or out:* Pinch two fingers open or closed on a page or image.
  - *Show thumbnails for a PDF:* Tap the page count. (If the page count doesn't appear, tap the screen.)
  - *Hide thumbnails for a PDF:* Pinch two fingers open on a page until the thumbnails disappear.
  - *Scroll pages in a PDF:* Swipe up or down. [View a PDF or image](#)
  - *Go to a specific page in a PDF:* Tap ..., then tap Go to Page. Enter a page number, then tap Go.

## View information about PDFs and images

Draft  
You can use the Preview app to get information about PDF documents and images, such as creation date, filename, and more. When location information is available for a photo, you can also view the latitude and longitude where the photo was taken.

1. Go to the Preview app  on your iPhone.
2. [Open a PDF or image](#).
3. Tap .

## Find text in a PDF in Preview on iPhone

1. Go to the Preview app  on your iPhone.
2. [Open a PDF](#) you want to search.
3. Tap .
4. Optionally, tap  in the search field and do any of the following:
  - *Exclude matches where the search text is part of another word:* Select Whole Word.
  - *Only include results that match the capitalization of the search text:* Select Match Case.
5. Enter a word or phrase in the search field.  
If you enter a phrase, Preview searches for that exact phrase.
6. Tap  or  to go to the next or previous search result.
7. Tap  to close the search results.

## Interact with text in an image in Preview on iPhone

You can use Live Text in the Preview app to copy or translate text within an image, make a call, open a website, or start an email.



1. Go to the Preview app  on your iPhone.

2. Open an image that shows text, then select the text. See [Select, cut, copy, and paste text](#).

3. Do any of the following:

- *Copy text:* Tap Copy. You can then paste the text into another document or app.
- *Look up the meaning of text:* Tap Look Up.
- *Translate text:* Tap Translate, then choose a language.

*Note:* Translation isn't available in all languages and may not be available in some countries or regions.
- *Search the web for the text:* Tap >, then tap Search Web.
- *Call or text a phone number:* Tap Call or Message. (You may need to tap > to see all options.)
- *Save a phone number or email address:* Tap >, then tap Add to Contacts.
- *Send an email or message to an email address:* Tap Email or Message. (You may need to tap > to see all options.)
- *Go to a website:* Tap Open Link. (You may need to tap > to see the option.)

## Edit PDFs

### Fill out and sign PDF forms in Preview on iPhone

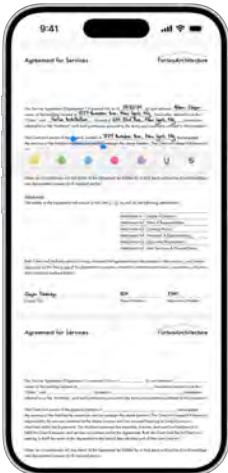
You can fill out and sign PDF forms in the Preview app.



1. Go to the Preview app 📱 on your iPhone.
2. Open a PDF form.
3. Tap 🖍.
4. Tap a field, then enter information (or tap the AutoFill suggestion above the onscreen keyboard to add that information).
5. To add a signature or a text form box, tap ⓘ.

# Annotate a PDF in Preview on iPhone

You can use the Preview app to annotate a PDF with stickers, signatures, shapes, or text, or to copy or edit text using the highlight, underline, or strike through option.



## Add a sticker, signature, shape, or text

1. Go to the Preview app  on your iPhone.
2. [Open a PDF](#).
3. Tap , tap  at the bottom of the screen, then choose an option.

To undo a change, double-tap with three fingers.

## Select and copy text

1. Go to the Preview app  on your iPhone.
2. [Open a PDF](#).
3. To select text, touch and hold the first word, then move the grab points.
4. To copy the selection, tap Copy.

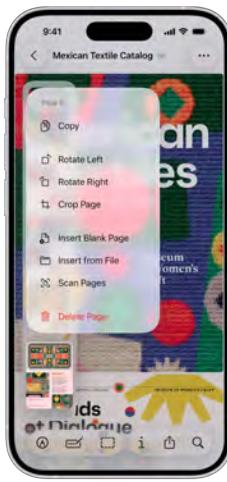
You can then paste the text into another document or app.

## Highlight, underline, or strike through text

1. Go to the Preview app  on your iPhone.
2. [Open a PDF](#).
3. [Select and copy text](#), then tap Highlight.
4. Choose a highlight color, or tap the underline or strike through button.

# Add, delete, move, or crop PDF pages in Preview on iPhone

You can add, delete, reorder, rotate, and crop pages in a PDF.



## Add or delete pages

1. Go to the Preview app  on your iPhone.
2. [Open a PDF](#).
3. Tap the page count to show thumbnails. (If the page count doesn't appear, pinch two fingers together or apart on the page.)
4. Touch and hold a thumbnail, then do any of the following:
  - *Insert a blank page:* Tap Insert Blank Page.
  - *Insert a PDF or image:* Tap Insert from File.
  - *Insert a scanned document:* Tap Scan Pages, scan the document, then tap Save. See [Scan text and documents](#)
  - *Delete the selected page:* Tap Delete Page.

## Move a page

1. Go to the Preview app  on your iPhone.
2. [Open a PDF](#).
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Move a page:* Touch and hold a thumbnail until menu options appear, then drag the thumbnail above or below another one. (If thumbnails aren't showing, tap the screen to show the page count, then tap the page count.)
  - *Rotate a page:* Tap ..., then tap Rotate Left or Rotate Right.

## Crop a page

1. Go to the Preview app  on your iPhone.
2. [Open a PDF](#).
3. Scroll to the page you want to crop, then tap .
4. Drag the blue handles to select an area, tap within the selected area, then tap Crop.

To undo a change, double-tap with three fingers.

## Edit images

# Crop, resize, or rotate an <sup>Draft</sup>image in Preview on iPhone

1. Go to the Preview app  on your iPhone.
2. [Open an image](#).
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Crop the image*: Tap . Drag the blue handles to select an area, tap within the selected area, then tap Crop.
  - *Rotate the image*: Tap .
  - *Adjust the image size*: Tap , then tap Adjust Size. Choose options, then tap Done.

**Tip:** To undo a change, double-tap with three fingers.

## Remove the background from an image in Preview on iPhone

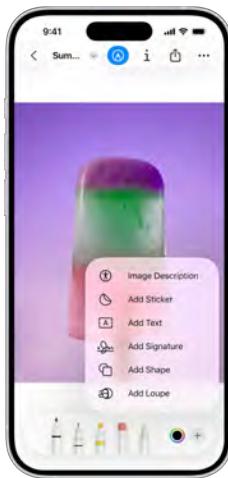
You can remove the background from an image you open in the Preview app.



1. Go to the Preview app  on your iPhone.
2. [Open an image](#).
3. Tap , then tap Remove Background.

## Annotate an image in Preview on iPhone

You can annotate an image with a description, sticker, text, signature, shape, or loupe.



1. Go to the Preview app  on your iPhone.
2. [Open an image](#).
3. Tap , tap , then choose an option.

## Manage PDFs or images

### Save, rename, or move PDFs and images in Preview on iPhone

1. Go to the Preview app  on your iPhone.
2. [Open a PDF or image](#).
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Save the file and return to the main menu:* Tap <.
  - *Rename the file:* Tap  next to the filename, then tap Rename. Enter a new filename, then tap Done on the onscreen keyboard.
  - *Move the file:* Tap  next to the filename, then tap Move. Tap  next to Preview, then select a new location.

### Copy PDFs and images in Preview on iPhone

You can make a duplicate of a PDF or image, or create a copy in another file format.

1. Go to the Preview app  on your iPhone.
2. [Open a PDF or image](#).
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Copy the PDF or image to the Clipboard:* Tap , then tap Copy.
  - *Create a duplicate:* Tap  next to the filename, then tap Duplicate.
  - *Create a copy of the PDF or image in a different format:* Tap  next to the filename, tap Export, then select a format. Optionally, slide the Size slider left or right to adjust the size of the exported file.

# Lock PDFs in Preview on iPhone

You can lock a PDF document with a password to prevent others from editing or deleting your work.



1. Go to the Preview app  on your iPhone.
2. [Open a PDF](#).

**Important:** Make a duplicate of the PDF before setting a password if you want to keep a copy that's not password-protected.

3. Tap  next to the filename, then tap Lock.
4. Turn on Require Password, then enter the same password in the Password and Verify fields.
5. Tap Done.

# Export or compress PDFs and images in Preview on iPhone

You can export a PDF or image as a HEIC, JPEG, JPEG-2000, PDF, PNG, or TIFF file. You can also compress the file.

1. Go to the Preview app  on your iPhone.
2. [Open a PDF or image](#).
3. Tap  next to the filename, then tap Export.
4. Select a file format.
5. Optionally, use the slider to adjust the file size.

# Reply to an email with a PDF attachment in Preview on iPhone

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. Open an email with a PDF attached, then tap the attachment to open it in the Preview app.

3. [Fill out or annotate](#) the PDF. Draft
4. Tap , then tap Reply to [sender].

A reply to the sender appears in your inbox in the Mail app, with the updated PDF attached.
5. Optionally, edit the subject or add additional text.
6. Tap .

## Scan text and documents in Preview on iPhone

You can scan text or a document to create a PDF.

1. Go to the Preview app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap .
3. Position the iPhone camera so the text or document appears on the screen.

iPhone automatically captures the page. To capture the scan yourself instead of automatically, tap Auto (the label changes to Manual), then tap the Shutter button.
4. Repeat the step above to scan additional pages.
5. Tap the thumbnails at the bottom of the screen to crop, rotate, or adjust the coloring of the scan.
6. Tap Save when you're finished scanning.

## Create an image in Preview on iPhone

When you create an image in the Preview app, you can start with a blank image or with pasted content that was copied to the Clipboard.

1. Go to the Preview app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then choose New Empty Image or New from Clipboard.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Add a sketch or drawing:* Tap , choose a drawing tool, then draw with your finger.
  - *Add a signature, shape, sticker, or text:* Tap , then choose an option.

## Share PDFs or images in Preview on iPhone

1. Go to the Preview app  on your iPhone.
2. [Open a PDF or image](#).
3. Tap , then choose whether to collaborate on the file or send a copy of it.

4. If you selected Collaborate, tap  next to "Only invited people can edit", then do one of the following:

- *Allow only invitees to view and edit the contents:* Tap "Only invited people," then tap "Can make changes."
- Turn "Allow others to invite" off if you don't want people you share the file with to invite others to view and edit it.
- *Allow only invitees to view the contents:* Tap "Only invited people," then tap "View only."
- *Allow anyone with the link to view and edit the contents:* Tap "Anyone with the link," then tap "Can make changes."
- *Allow anyone with the link to view the contents:* Tap "Anyone with the link," then tap "View only."

5. Tap .

6. Choose a sharing method, such as Mail or Messages.

## Print PDFs or images in Preview on iPhone

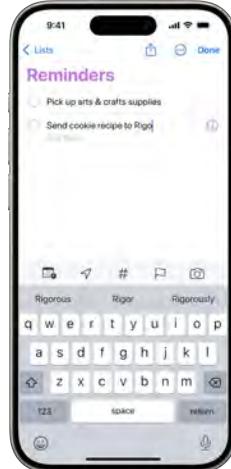
1. Go to the Preview app  on your iPhone.
2. [Open a PDF or image](#).
3. Tap  next to the filename, then tap Print.
4. Select a printer, then tap .

## Reminders

### Get started with Reminders on iPhone

The Reminders app  helps you remember anything you need to track. You can set reminders, make grocery lists, create checklists for projects, and organize tasks in to-do lists.

#### Set a reminder



Simply type, dictate, or ask Siri when you need to remember something.

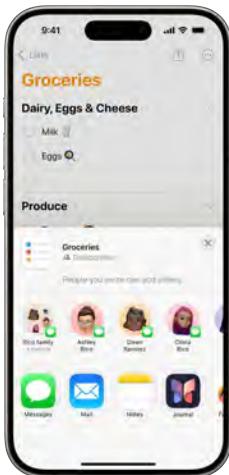
## Create a grocery list

Draft



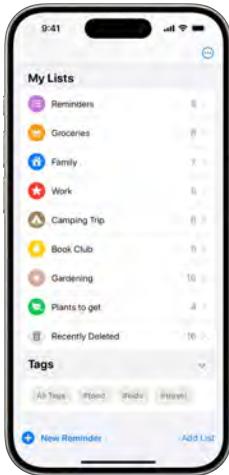
Make your shopping easier with a grocery list that automatically sorts items into categories. To convert a regular list into a grocery list, tap ..., tap Show List Info, tap List Type, then choose Groceries.

## Collaborate on a list



To invite people to work on a list, tap , then choose a sharing option.

## Organize your reminders



Draft

Draft  
You can create new lists to suit your needs, categorize with tags, and manage your reminders with Smart Lists.

Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders in iCloud](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Want to learn more?

- [Set reminders](#)
- [Make a grocery list](#)
- [Share and collaborate](#)
- [Use Smart Lists](#)

## Set reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can easily set reminders. Simply type or dictate in a list, ask Siri, or add a reminder from the Calendar app.



Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders in iCloud](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

### Set a reminder

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then enter a description.

### Create a quick reminder

To create quick reminders over any app or screen, do any of the following:

- Add  to [Control Center](#), then tap  in Control Center.
- On [supported models](#), assign Reminders to the [Action button](#), then press and hold the Action button.

### Ask Siri to set a reminder

[Ask Siri](#) something like: "Add artichokes to my groceries list." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

### Add a reminder in Calendar

See [Use Reminders in Calendar](#).

Draft

# Make a grocery list in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can create a grocery list to make shopping easier. Items are automatically sorted into categories such as Produce and Seafood. You can change how items are grouped, and the list remembers your preferences.



**Note:** All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders in iCloud](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

## Create a new grocery list

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap .
3. Enter a name for the list, tap List Type, then choose Groceries.
4. Choose a color and symbol for the list (optional).
5. Tap .

## Convert an existing list to a grocery list

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a list, then tap .
3. Tap Show List Info.
4. Tap List Type, then choose Groceries.
5. Tap .

## Add an item to your grocery list

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. In your grocery list, tap , then enter a description.
3. To enter more information, tap Add Note.
4. Tap  to edit the item details. For example, you can attach a photo, set a location-based reminder, or flag an important item.
5. Tap .

Items added to the list are automatically placed in categories. If you enter grocery items in a language different from the system language of your iPhone, you can [add an additional language in Settings](#). (Grocery categorization is available for [supported languages](#).)

## Add details in Reminders on iPhone

You can add details to your reminders such as notes, links, due dates, and photos.

**Note:** All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders in iCloud](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

### Add a note, URL, and other details to a reminder

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap an item.
3. Tap Add Note, then add more information.
4. Tap ⓘ to edit the item details. For example, you can set a date and time, set a location-based reminder, flag an important item, or attach a photo.

### Set when and where to be reminded

You can be reminded on a certain date, at a specific time or location, or when you're texting someone in Messages.

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap an item, then do any of the following:
  - *Schedule a date and time:* Tap , then choose an option.
  - **Tip:** Reminders with a due date appear as an all-day event in Calendar. See [Use Reminders in Calendar](#).
  - *Set a recurring reminder:* Tap ⓘ, enable Date or Time, tap Repeat, then choose the frequency.
  - *Get an early reminder before the scheduled date and time:* Tap ⓘ, tap Early Reminder, then choose when you want to be reminded. For example, "5 minutes before," "2 days before," or another choice.
  - *Add a location:* Tap , then choose where you want to be reminded—for example, when you arrive home or get into a car with a Bluetooth® connection to your iPhone.

**Note:** To receive location-based reminders, you must allow Reminders to use your precise location. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services. Turn on Location Services, tap Reminders, choose While Using the App, then turn on Precise Location.

- *Get a reminder in Messages:* Tap ⓘ, turn on When Messaging, then choose someone from your contacts list. The reminder appears the next time you chat with that person in Messages.

### Set a flag and priority

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap an item.

3. Do any of the following: Draft

- *Flag an important item:* Tap .
- *Set a priority:* Tap , tap Priority, then choose Low, Medium, or High.

## Add a photo or scan a document

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap an item, then tap .

3. Do any of the following:

- Take a new photo.
- Choose a photo from your photo library.
- Scan a document.
- Scan and insert text.

# Complete and remove items in Reminders on iPhone

In a Reminders list, you can check off items to hide them, or you can permanently delete items. With the Reminders widget, you can complete items from the iPhone Home Screen or Lock Screen.

## Mark an item as completed

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.

2. While viewing a list, tap the empty circle next to an item to mark the item as completed.

Completed items are hidden on your list.

To unhide completed items, tap , then tap Show Completed. To delete the completed items, tap Clear.

## Remove or delete an item

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.

2. While viewing a list, swipe left on an item, then tap .

If you change your mind, you can recover the deleted item—tap with three fingers or shake to undo.

**Tip:** You can recover or permanently delete items in the Recently Deleted list.

## Use the Reminders widget

With the Reminders widget, you can complete items from the Home Screen without opening the Reminders app .

1. On the iPhone Home Screen, [add the Reminders widget](#).

2. To change the list shown in the widget, touch and hold the widget, tap Edit Widget, then choose a list.

3. To complete an item, tap the item in the widget.

# Edit and organize a list Draft in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can organize a list with sections and subtasks. You can also view the sections as columns and easily move items to different columns.

**Note:** All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders in iCloud](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

## Edit a list

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. While viewing a list, tap ..., then do any of the following:
  - *Change the list name, type, color, or icon:* Tap Show List Info.
  - *Edit multiple items:* Tap Select Reminders or Select Items, then select the items you want to edit. You can also drag two fingers over the items. Use the buttons at the bottom of the screen to add a date and time, move, delete, assign, complete, tag, or flag the selected items.
  - *Sort items by due date, creation date, priority, or title:* (not available in all Smart Lists) Tap Sort By, then choose an option.  
When you sort or reorder a list, the new order is applied to the list on your other devices where you're using [updated reminders](#). If you sort or reorder a shared list, other participants also see the new order (if they use updated reminders).
  - *Remove the list:* Tap Delete List.

## Manually reorder or recategorize items in a list

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. While viewing a list, touch and hold an item you want to move, then drag it to a new location.

## Organize with sections

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. While viewing a list, do any of the following:
  - *Create a new section:* Tap ..., tap New Section, then enter a name.
  - *Collapse a section:* Tap ▼.
  - *Expand a section:* Tap ▷.
  - *Rename section:* Tap the section name, then enter a new name.
  - *Move a section:* Touch and hold the section, then drag it to a new position.  
*Note:* You can't move the Others section.
  - *Remove a section:* Swipe left on the section, then tap Delete.

## View the sections as columns

You can view the list in columns, making it easy to visualize and recategorize the items.



1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. While viewing a list, tap , then tap View as Columns.
3. To recategorize an item, drag it into a different column.

## Create subtasks

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. While viewing a list, swipe right on an item, then tap Indent. Or drag an item onto another item.

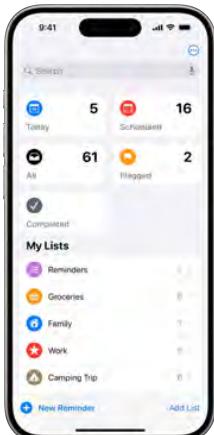
If you complete a main task, the subtasks are also completed. If you delete or move a main task, the subtasks are also deleted or moved.

## Search through all your lists in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can easily search through all your lists for items that contain specific text.

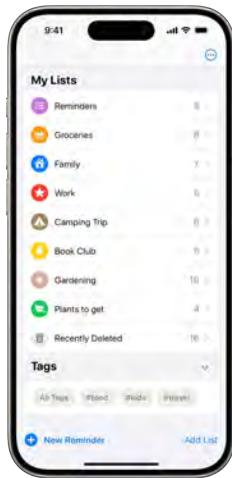
### Search for items in all your lists

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap .
3. In the search field, enter a word or phrase.



# Organize multiple lists in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can create new lists, organize the lists into groups, and pin lists for quick access.



**Note:** All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders in iCloud](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

## Make a new list

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap .
3. Enter a name, then choose a color and symbol for the list.
4. Tap List Type, then choose Standard, Groceries, or [Smart Lists](#).
5. Tap .

## Pin an important list above the other lists for easy access

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold a list, then tap Pin. You can also swipe right on the list, then tap .

You can have a maximum of nine pinned lists.

To change the position of a pinned list, tap , tap Edit Lists, drag  to a new position, then tap .

## Create a group of lists

You can organize your lists in groups such as work, school, or shopping.

To create a group, simply drag a list onto another list. You can also do the following:

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Edit Lists.
3. Tap Add Group, enter a name, select the lists to include in the group (optional), then tap .

## Edit and rearrange lists and groups<sup>Draft</sup>

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , tap Edit Lists, then do any of the following:
  - *Rearrange lists and groups:* Drag  a list or group to a new location. You can even move a list to a different group.
  - *Change the name and appearance of a list or group:* Tap .

## Delete a list or group

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. Swipe left on the list or group, then tap .

When you delete a group, you have the option to keep the lists.

Deleted lists or groups are moved to Recently Deleted. You can recover them within 30 days of deletion. After 30 days, they're permanently deleted.

# Tag items in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can use tags as a fast and flexible way to categorize and organize your reminders. You can add one or more tags to a reminder, such as #shopping and #work, and easily search and filter your reminders across lists using the Tag Browser or Smart Lists.

*Note:* All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

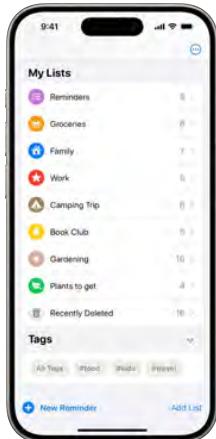
## Add tags

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. When you create or edit an item in a list, tap  and type a tag.

A tag can be only one word, but you can use dashes and underscores to combine words. You can add multiple tags to an item.

## View items with tags

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.

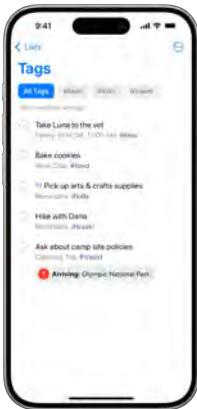


2. Below Tags at the bottom of the screen, do any of the following:

- *View items with specific tags:* Tap one or more tags, then choose to view items matching any or all of the selected tags.

**Tip:** To save this list as a Smart List, tap ..., then tap Create Smart List.

- *View all items with tags:* Tap All Tags.



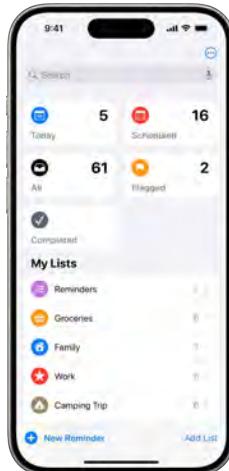
### Rename or delete a tag

1. Go to the Reminders app 📱 on your iPhone.
2. Tap Lists (in the top-left corner).
3. Below Tags at the bottom of the screen, touch and hold a tag, then tap Rename Tag or Delete Tag.

When you delete a tag, it's also removed from all Smart Lists that use it.

## Use Smart Lists in Reminders on iPhone

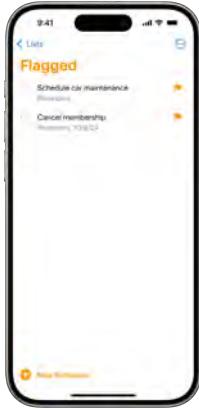
In the Reminders app, you can easily filter items across all your lists using Smart Lists. You can create custom Smart Lists to automatically include items filtered by tags, dates, times, locations, flags, and priority. You can choose more than one tag (such as #gardening and #errands) and combine them with other filters.



**Note:** All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders in iCloud](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

### Automatically organize items using the default Smart Lists

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Edit Lists.
3. Turn on or off the following Smart Lists:
  - *Today*: Items scheduled for today and overdue items
  - *Scheduled*: Items scheduled by date or time
  - *All*: All items across all your lists
  - *Flagged*: Items with a flag



- *Completed*: Items with a checkmark
- *Assigned to Me*: Items assigned to you in shared lists
- *Groceries*: Grocery items
- *Siri Suggestions*: Suggested items detected in Mail and Messages

## Make a custom Smart List

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap .
3. Enter a name for the list, tap List Type, then choose Smart List.
4. Tap Edit Filters, choose one or more filters, then choose to include items matching any or all of the selected filters. You can filter by tags, dates, locations, and more. Tap .
5. Choose a color and symbol for the list (optional).
6. Tap .

## Convert a list to a Smart List

When you convert a list, its items are moved to the top level of the default list and tagged with the name of the Smart List.

*Note*: You can't convert a shared list.

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. View the list you want to convert.
3. Tap , tap Show List Info, scroll to the bottom, then tap Convert to Smart List.

## Share lists and collaborate in Reminders on

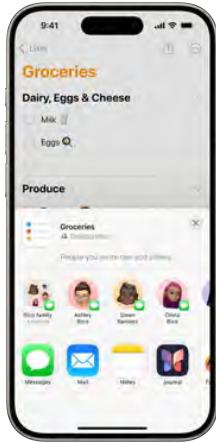
In the Reminders app, you can use iCloud to share to-do lists. You can collaborate and assign tasks to other people who also use iCloud.

**Note:** All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders in iCloud](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

## Collaborate on a list using iCloud

You can share a list and collaborate with people who use iCloud. People who accept the invitation can add and edit items, mark items as completed, and all the participants can see everyone's changes. Everyone you collaborate with must be [signed in to their Apple Account](#) and [have Reminders turned on in iCloud settings](#).

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. View the list you want to share, then tap .



3. By default, participants on the list can invite other people. To restrict sharing, tap "People you invite can add others," then turn off "Allow others to invite."
4. Choose how to send your invitation (for example, using Messages or Mail).

If you send the invitation in Messages, you [get activity updates in the Messages conversation](#) when someone makes changes in the shared list. Tap the updates to go to the shared list.

## Assign items in a shared list

You can assign a task to any person on the list, including yourself.

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. In the shared list, create or edit a reminder, then do either of the following:
  - Type @ followed by the person's name or choose a person from the menu above the keyboard.
  - Tap , then choose a person.

**Tip:** To quickly see all items assigned to you, [use the Assigned to Me Smart List](#).

## Turn notifications on or off for a shared list

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. In the shared list, tap , then tap Manage Shared List.

3. Below Notify When, turn on or off Draft of the following:

- *Adding Items*: Receive an alert when someone adds an item to the list.
- *Completing Items*: Receive an alert when someone completes an item on the list.

## Print a list in Reminders on iPhone

You can print a grocery list, checklist, to-do items, project tasks, and more.

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. View the list you want to print.
3. Tap ..., then tap Print.

## Work with templates in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can save a list as a template to reuse it for routines, packing lists, and more. Create a link to publish and share a template with others, or download templates that others have shared.

### Save a list as a template

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. When viewing a list, tap ..., then tap Save as Template.
3. Enter a name for the template.
4. Turn on or off Include Completed Reminders, then tap .

After you make a template from a list, any changes you make to that list don't affect the template.

### Make a new list from a template

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap ..., tap Templates, then tap the name of a template.
3. Enter a name for the list, then tap Create.

### Edit or delete a template

Any changes you make to a template don't affect lists previously created from the template.

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap ..., tap Templates, then tap  next to the template you want to manage.
3. Choose one of the following:
  - *Edit Template*: Add, edit, or delete any items in the template. You can also change the name, color, and icon for the template.
  - *Delete Template*: Remove the template.

### Share a template

When you share a template, Apple servers Draft have access so that anyone with the link can download a copy of the template on a device using iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or later. You can choose whether to keep any dates, tags, or locations in the shared template; images are removed.

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , tap Templates, then tap  next to the template you want to share.
3. Tap Share Template, then choose a method for sharing.

To manage a shared template, tap , tap Templates, tap , then tap Manage Link.

If you make changes to the template after sharing, you can update the shared version. Anyone who downloaded the previous version needs to download the template again to get the updates.

If you stop sharing a template, this doesn't affect anyone who has already downloaded the template.

## Add or remove accounts in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can use multiple accounts—such as iCloud, enterprise-managed iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, and Yahoo—and keep all your to-do lists in one place. Your reminders stay up to date on all your devices that use the same accounts.

**Note:** All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use updated reminders in iCloud. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

### Keep your reminders up to date on all your devices with iCloud

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap [your name].
3. Tap iCloud, tap See All, then turn on Reminders.

Your reminders stored in iCloud—and any changes you make to them—appear on your iPhone, iPad, Apple Watch, and Mac where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).

### Update your reminders stored in iCloud

If you've been using Reminders with iOS 12 or earlier, you may need to update your reminders stored in iCloud to use features such as attachments, flags, list colors and icons, and more.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap [your name].
3. Tap iCloud, tap See All, then make sure Reminders is turned on.
4. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPhone.
5. On the Welcome to Reminders screen, choose one of the following options:
  - *Update Now:* Begin the update process.
  - *Update Later:* A blue Update button appears above your lists; tap it when you're ready to update your reminders.

Draft  
Note: Updated reminders aren't backward compatible with the Reminders app in earlier versions of iOS and macOS. See the Apple Support article [Update the Reminders app in iOS 13 or later](#).

## Add other accounts

You can use the Reminders app to manage your to-do lists in other accounts, such as Microsoft Exchange and Yahoo.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Reminders.
3. Tap Reminders Accounts, then tap Add Account.
4. Do one of the following:
  - Choose an account provider, then enter your account information.
  - If your account provider isn't listed, tap Other, tap Add CalDAV Account, enter your account information, then turn on Reminders for that account.

## Remove an account

When you remove or delete an account, the reminders in that account no longer appear on your iPhone. The reminders remain in your internet account (for example, iCloud.com or Microsoft Exchange) and any other devices you had already set up.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Reminders.
3. Tap Reminders Accounts, then tap the account you want to remove.
4. Do one of the following:

- *Stop using Reminders on the account:* Turn off Reminders.

You can continue to use the account for other services, such as Calendar.

- *Stop using all services on the account:* Tap Sign Out (for an iCloud account) or Delete Account (for other accounts).

If you don't see Sign Out or Delete Account, your account may be managed by your organization. See an administrator for removal instructions.

# Change your Reminders settings on iPhone

You can customize your preferences for the Reminders app  in Settings. Choose the default list for new items, adjust notifications, and more.

## Customize your Reminders settings

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Reminders.

3. Adjust any of the following: Draft

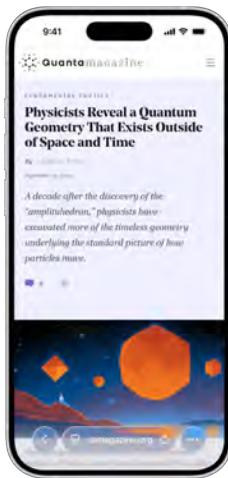
- *Accounts*: [Add or remove accounts in Reminders](#).
- *Location*: Control the [location information you share](#).
- *Siri*: Allow [Siri](#) to make suggestions across apps based on the way you use Reminders.
- *Search*: Allow suggestions and content from Reminders to appear in [Search](#) and [widgets](#).
- *Notifications*: [Change notification settings](#).
- *Language*: Choose your preferred languages (option appears when [multiple languages](#) are added).
- *Default List*: Choose the list for new reminders you create outside of a specific list, such as reminders you create using Siri.
- *Today Notification*: Set a time to see notifications for [all-day reminders](#) that have been assigned a date without a time.
- *Show as Overdue*: The scheduled date turns red for overdue [all-day reminders](#).
- *Time Zone*: Set the time zone used to display and create reminders.
- *Include Due Today*: The badge count includes [overdue items and items due today](#).
- *Mute Notifications*: Turn off notifications for [assigned reminders](#).
- *Show Suggestions*: If you type text that matches a previously completed reminder, that reminder appears as a suggestion.
- *Add Language*: Set an additional language that Reminders uses to automatically [place grocery items into categories](#).
- *Reset Categories*: Clears categorization learned as you manually moved items in grocery or auto-categorized lists; this applies to all your devices and grocery lists or auto-categorized lists you've shared. Existing items are not affected.

## Safari

### Get started with Safari on iPhone

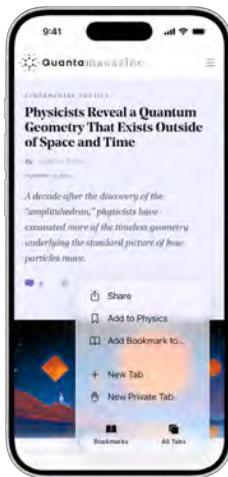
The Safari app  brings the internet to your iPhone. You can browse the web, bookmark websites to revisit later, keep your privacy, and much more.

#### Browse the web



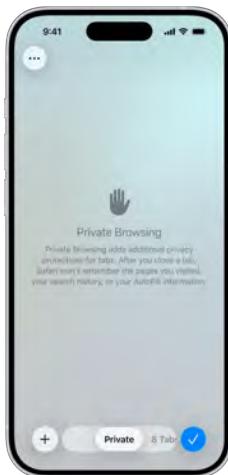
Surf the web or look for answers to specific questions. In the search field, enter the name or web address of a webpage, or type in a few words, a phrase, or a question.

## Bookmark a website



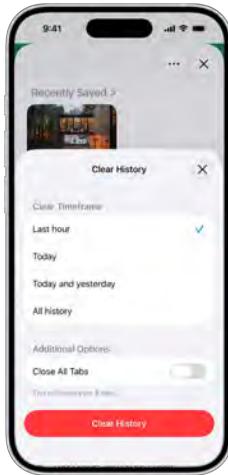
Save a website to revisit later. Tap , tap Share, then tap Add to Bookmarks.

## Browse privately



Keep your browsing activities to yourself. The tabs you open don't appear in History on iPhone or in the list of tabs on your other devices. Tap , tap All Tabs, then swipe right on the tab bar until Private appears.

## Remove cookies and clear your cache Draft



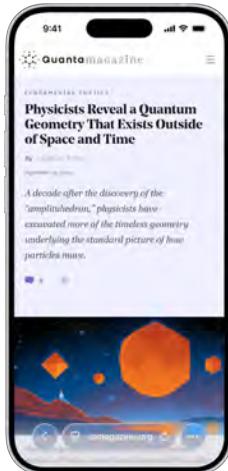
Remove cookies and clear the cache on your iPhone to remove permissions you granted to websites to use your location (or send you notifications) and to erase your browsing history. Tap ⓘ, tap Bookmarks, tap ⓘ, then tap Clear.

Want to learn more?

- [Browse the web](#)
- [Bookmark a website](#)
- [Browse the web privately](#)
- [Clear your cache and cookies](#)
- [Customize your Safari settings](#)
- [Save pages to a Reading List](#)

## Browse the web using Safari on iPhone

You can browse the web, view websites, preview website links, translate webpages, and add the Safari app back to your Home Screen if it gets removed. Sign in to iCloud with the same [Apple Account](#) on multiple devices to keep your open tabs, bookmarks, history, and Reading List up to date across all your devices.



Go to a webpage

1. Go to the Safari app ⓘ on your iPhone.

2. Enter the name or web address (URL) of the webpage in the search field.

## View websites with Safari

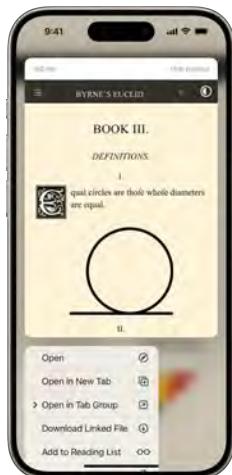
1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Get back to the top:* Double-tap the top edge of the screen to quickly return to the top of a long page.
  - *See more of the page:* Turn iPhone to landscape orientation.
  - *Refresh the page:* Pull down from the top of the page.
  - *Share links:* At the bottom of the page, tap , then tap Share.

## Preview website links

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold a link in Safari to see a preview of the link without opening the page.

To open the link, tap the preview, or choose Open.

To close the preview and stay on the current page, tap anywhere outside the preview.



## Translate a webpage or image

When you view a webpage or image that's in another language, you can use Safari to translate the text (not available in all languages or regions).

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap (if translation is available).

## Add Safari back to your Home Screen

If you don't see Safari on your Home Screen, you can find it in App Library and add it back.

1. On the Home Screen, swipe left until you see the App Library.
2. Enter "Safari" in the search field.
3. Touch and hold , then tap Add to Home Screen.

# Search for websites in Safari on iPhone

Draft

Draft  
Enter a URL or a search term to find websites or specific information.



## Search the web

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Enter a search term, phrase, or URL in the search field.
3. Tap a search suggestion, or tap Go on the keyboard.

If you don't want to see suggested search terms, go to Settings  > Apps > Safari, then turn off Search Engine Suggestions.

## See your favorite websites while you search

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Tap Start Page Favorites, then select the folder with the favorites you want to see.

## Search a webpage

You can find a specific word or phrase on a webpage.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap .
3. Enter the word or phrase in the search field.
4. Tap  to jump to other mentions.

## Choose a search engine

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Tap Search Engine, then choose a search engine.

## Search for objects in your photos

With Visual Look Up, you can identify and learn about popular landmarks, plants, pets, and more that appear in your photos and videos. See [Use Visual Look Up to identify objects in your photos and videos](#).

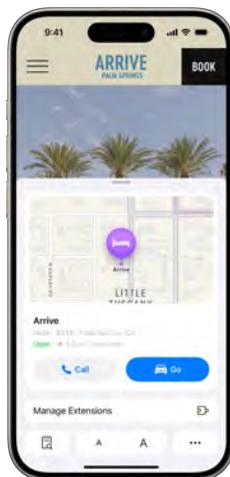


**Tip:** You can use the same feature to scan text and search online. See [Use Live Text](#).

## See a webpage's highlights in Safari on iPhone

You can learn more about the current webpage by looking at Highlights. Highlights share helpful information, such as directions, summaries, and links to additional details about people, music, movies, and TV shows.

Note: Highlights aren't available in all countries or regions.



1. Go to the Safari app ⓘ on your iPhone.

2. Open a webpage.

If Highlights are available for the webpage, ⓘ replaces ⓘ on the left side of the search field.

3. Tap ⓘ.

## Customize your Safari settings on iPhone

Draft  
You can customize your start page, change the text size on websites, and change display and privacy settings. Sign in to iCloud with the same [Apple Account](#) on multiple devices to keep your open tabs, bookmarks, browsing history, and Reading List up to date across all your Apple devices.

## Customize your start page

When you open a new tab, you begin on your start page. You can customize your start page with new background images and options.



1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap New Tab.
3. Scroll to the bottom of the page, then tap Edit.
4. Choose the options you want to appear on your start page:
  - *Use Start Page on All Devices*: Use these settings on all your Apple devices where you have Use Start Page on All Devices turned on and you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#) using [two-factor authentication](#).
  - *Favorites*: Display shortcuts to your favorite bookmarked websites. See [Bookmark a favorite website](#).
  - *Suggestions*: See websites you visit most, websites shared in other apps (such as Calendar and Maps), and links shared with you in Messages, Mail, and more. See [Find links shared with you](#).
  - *Privacy Report*: Stay updated on how many trackers and websites Safari blocked from tracking you. See [View the Privacy Report](#).
  - *Reading List*: Show webpages currently in your Reading List. See [Add the current webpage to your Reading List](#).
  - *Recently Closed Tabs*: Go back to tabs you previously closed.
  - *iCloud Tabs*: Show open tabs from other Apple devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account and Safari is turned on in iCloud settings or preferences. See [Organize your tabs with Tab Groups](#).
  - *Background Image*: Choose the image you want to appear in the background each time you open a new start page in this Tab Group. To use a photo as your background, tap .

## Customize the Page menu

You can add your favorite Page and Tab Actions to the Page menu .

Draft

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.  
Draft
2. Tap  on the left side of the search field, then tap .
3. Tap Edit, then tap  to add Page or Tab Actions to the Page menu.  
Tap  to remove an action.
4. Tap , then tap  again.

## Change the text size for a website on Safari

Use the Page Settings button to increase or decrease the text size.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  on the left side of the search field.
3. Tap the large A to increase the font size or the small A to decrease it.

## Change the display controls for a website on Safari

You can hide the search field, switch to Reader, and more.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then do any of the following:
  - *Hide the search field:* Tap , then tap Hide Toolbar (tap the bottom of the screen to get it back).
  - *See a streamlined view of the webpage:* Tap Show Reader (if available).  
To return to the normal view, tap , then tap Hide Reader.
  - *See what the webpage looks like on a desktop computer:* Tap , then tap Request Desktop Website (if available).

You can also adjust Safari settings in Accessibility settings. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Per-App Settings. Tap Add App, tap Safari, then tap Safari to adjust the settings.

## Choose where to save downloads

When you download a file in Safari, you can choose whether to save it to iCloud or on your iPhone.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Tap Downloads, then choose one of the following:
  - *iCloud Drive:* Select this option to save downloads to the Downloads folder in iCloud Drive. This allows you to access the downloaded file on any iPhone, iPad, or Mac where you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#).
  - *On My iPhone:* Select this option to save downloads to the Downloads folder on your iPhone.
  - *Other:* Select this option to save downloads in a location other than a Downloads folder.

## Share website passwords with a group

You can create a group of trusted contacts **Draft** and share a set of passwords. Passwords stay up to date for everyone in the group, and you can remove someone at any time.

See [Share passwords or passkeys with people you trust](#).

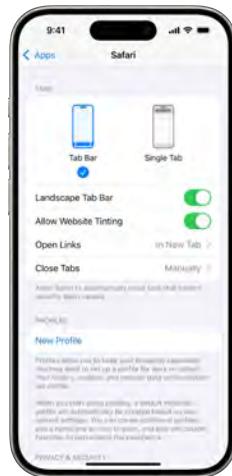
## Adjust privacy settings for Safari

You can choose what privacy settings you want across Safari, and create individual exceptions for websites. See [Browse privately](#).

# Change the layout in Safari on iPhone

You can choose the tab bar layout that works best for you.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Taps Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Scroll down to Tabs, then choose one of the following:
  - *Compact*: Select this option to compress the tab bar, show it below webpages, and show additional controls on both sides of the tab bar.
  - *Bottom*: Select this option to expand the tab bar, show it below webpages, and show additional controls at the bottom of the screen.
  - *Top*: Select this option to expand the tab bar, show it above webpages, and show additional controls at the bottom of the screen.



# Create multiple Safari profiles on iPhone

You can create multiple Safari profiles—like Work and Personal—and use them to separate your internet browsing into different themes. Each profile has separate favorites, histories, tabs, and Tab Groups. You can add, edit, or remove a profile at any time.



## Create a profile

The profiles you create on iPhone also appear in Safari settings on any iPhone, iPad, or Mac where you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#).

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Tap New Profile, then tap Name.
4. Enter a name for this profile, then choose an icon and color.
5. Below Settings, tap Favorites to choose a bookmarks folder.

If you have multiple folders of bookmarks, this option selects the folder of bookmarked websites that are recommended as you enter an address, search, or create a new tab. For example, if you have a folder of bookmarks related to work, you can create a work profile and use this field to ensure that those websites are suggested as you type in the address field.

6. Tap Open New Tabs and choose the page you want new tabs to open to.
7. Tap .

## Use profiles in Safari

You can easily browse the internet with a profile, or move between profiles.

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap All Tabs.
3. Tap  in the upper-left corner.
4. Tap Profile, then select the profile you want to use.

**Note:** You can access your saved bookmarks and passwords in iCloud keychain from any profile.



1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Tap the profile you want to edit.

## Choose which extensions to use with a profile

You can install extensions to customize the way your browser works on iPhone. See [Get extensions to customize Safari](#).

If you have extensions installed on your iPhone, you can customize which extensions you want to use with each profile.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Tap Extensions, then tap an extension.
4. Turn on the profiles you want to use with this extension (below Allow Extension In).

## Remove a profile

You can delete a profile at any time. This action also erases the favorites, history, and Tab Groups associated with the profile, and closes all websites open in the profile.

**Important:** This action can't be undone.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap a profile.
3. Tap Delete Profile, then tap Delete to confirm.

# Use Tab Groups

## Open and close tabs in Safari on iPhone

Use tabs to help you navigate between multiple open webpages.

*Note:* If you're using the Single Tab layout, the menus and other items may look different from what's described in this guide. See [Change the layout of Safari](#).

### Open a link in a new tab

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the link, then tap Open in New Tab.

To stay on the current webpage when you open new links in a separate tab, go to Settings  > Apps > Safari > Open Links, then tap In Background.

### View a tab's history

You can see which webpages you previously visited in this tab.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold < or >.

## Close tabs

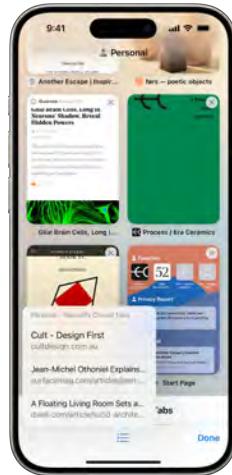
Draft

1. Go to the Safari app 📱 on your iPhone.
2. Tap ⓘ, then tap All Tabs.
3. Tap ✖️ in the upper-right corner of a tab to close it.

**Tip:** To close all tabs in this Tab Group at the same time, touch and hold ⓘ, then tap Close All [number of] Tabs.

## Open a recently closed tab

1. Go to the Safari app 📱 on your iPhone.
2. Tap ⓘ, then tap All Tabs.
3. Touch and hold +, then choose from the list of recently closed tabs.



## Organize your tabs with Tab Groups in Safari on iPhone

You can create Tab Groups to keep tabs organized and make them easier to find again later.



## Create a new Tab Group

1. Go to the Safari app 📱 on your iPhone.
2. Tap ⓘ, then tap All Tabs.

Draft

3. Touch and hold a tab, tap Move Tab, then tap New Tab Group.

4. Enter a name, then tap .

**Tip:** To move between your Tab Groups, tap the tab groups in the bottom center of the screen.

## Reorder tabs in a Tab Group

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap , then tap All Tabs to view the open tabs in that Tab Group.

3. Tap  in the upper-left corner, tap Arrange Tabs By, then choose an option.

Or touch and hold the tab, then drag it to a new position.

## Rename a Tab Group

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap , then tap All Tabs to view the open tabs in that Tab Group.

3. Tap  in the upper-left corner, then tap Rename Tab Group.

4. Enter a name, then tap .

## Pin a tab at the top of a Tab Group

You can customize your Tab Groups with pinned tabs in each group. The pinned tab stays at the top of the Tab Group.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap , then tap All Tabs to view the open tabs in that Tab Group.

3. Touch and hold the tab you want to pin, then tap Pin Tab.

## Move a tab to another Tab Group

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap , then tap All Tabs to view the open tabs in that Tab Group.

3. Touch and hold a tab, then tap Move Tab.

4. Choose one of the Tab Groups you created previously, or create a new group.

# View your Safari tabs from another Apple device on iPhone

You can view the tabs that are open on your other Apple devices and keep tabs and Tab Groups updated across devices. You must be signed in to iCloud with the same [Apple Account](#) on all your devices to manage Safari tabs across your devices.

## View tabs that are open on your other Apple devices

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap , then tap All Tabs.

3. Tap **+**, then scroll to see the tabs **Draft** open on your other devices at the bottom of the start page.

To close a tab on another Apple device, touch and hold the link, then choose Close.

**Note:** To view tabs open on your other devices, you must have iCloud Tabs turned on for your start page. See [Customize your start page](#).

## Keep tabs and Tab Groups updated across your devices

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap [your name], then tap iCloud.
3. Tap See All, then make sure Safari is turned on.

**Note:** To also see tabs open on your Mac, you must have Safari turned on in iCloud settings on your Mac, be signed in to the same [Apple Account](#), and use [two-factor authentication](#).

# Share Tab Groups and collaborate in Safari on iPhone

You can share a Tab Group and collaborate with people who use iCloud. You can add and remove people from the Tab Group at any time, and even start a message conversation, phone call, or FaceTime call without leaving Safari. Collaborators can add and remove tabs from the Tab Group, and everyone sees updates in real time.

Everyone you collaborate with must be signed in to their [Apple Account](#), have [Safari turned on in iCloud settings](#), and have [two-factor authentication](#) turned on.

## Share a Tab Group

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Share.
3. Tap Messages, then choose the person or group you want to share it with.

You get activity updates in the Messages conversation when someone makes changes in the Shared Tab Group. Tap the updates to go to the Shared Tab Group.

## Add and remove people from a shared Tab Group

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the top-right corner.
3. Tap Manage Shared Tab Group, then do any of the following:
  - *Remove someone:* Tap a name, then tap Remove Access.
  - *Add someone:* Tap Share With More People, then invite them.
  - *Stop Sharing with everyone:* Tap Stop Sharing.

## Start a Messages, audio, or video conversation from Safari

You can start a conversation—using Messages, FaceTime audio, or FaceTime video—with everyone that shares the Tab Group, without leaving Safari.

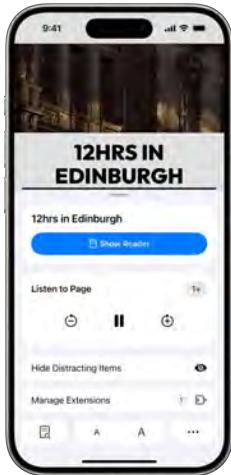
1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.

**Draft**

2. In Safari, tap  then tap message,  or video to start the conversation.

## Listen to a webpage in Safari on iPhone

You can have supported webpages read aloud in the Safari app.



### Listen to a webpage

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the page you want to listen to.
3. Tap , then tap Listen to Page.

### Pause listening

While listening to a webpage, tap , then tap .

To start listening again, tap , then tap .

## Bookmark a website in Safari on iPhone

You can bookmark a website, add a website to Favorites, or add a website icon to the Home Screen to easily revisit it later.

### Bookmark a favorite website

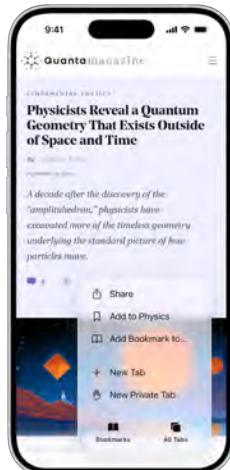
1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the webpage you want to bookmark.
3. Tap , tap Share, then tap Add to Bookmarks.

### View and organize your bookmarks

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Bookmarks.

Recently saved bookmarks, favorites, and reading list items appear at the top of the screen. The newest is on the left, and you can scroll through the others. Touch and hold a bookmark to copy, open, edit, or delete.

- *Create a new folder:* Tap ⓘ, tap New Folder, enter a name, then tap Save.
- *Move a bookmark into a folder:* Touch and hold the bookmark, tap Edit, tap below Location, tap a folder, then tap Save.
- *Delete bookmarks:* Touch and hold the bookmark, then tap Delete.
- *Rename bookmarks:* Touch and hold the bookmark, tap Edit, enter a new name, then tap Save.
- *Reorder bookmarks:* Tap ⓘ, tap Select Bookmarks, touch and hold ≡, then drag the bookmark to a new location.



## See your Mac bookmarks on iPhone

1. Go to the Settings app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Tap [your name], then tap iCloud.
3. Tap See All, then make sure Safari is turned on.

**Note:** You must also have Safari turned on in iCloud settings on your Mac and be signed in to the same [Apple Account](#). See [Set up iCloud for the Safari app on all your devices](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

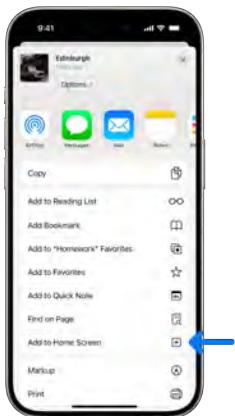
## Add a website icon to your Home Screen

You can add a website icon to your iPhone Home Screen for quick access.

1. Go to the Safari app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Go to the website you want to add to your Home Screen.
3. Tap ⓘ, then tap Share.
4. Scroll down the list of options, then tap Add to Home Screen.

If you don't see Add to Home Screen, you can add it. Scroll down to the bottom of the list, tap Edit Actions, then tap ⓘ Add to Home Screen.

The icon appears only on the device where you add it.



Note: Some websites may ask for permission to send you notifications. You can change your notification settings at any time. See [Change notification settings](#).

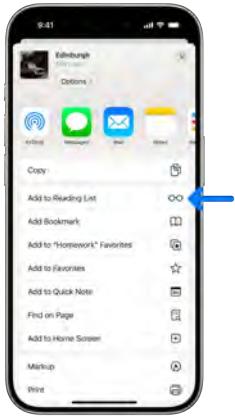
## Save webpages to read later in Safari on iPhone

Save interesting items in your Reading List so you can revisit them later. You can even save the items in your Reading List and read them when you're not connected to the internet.

### Add the current webpage to your Reading List

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Share.
3. Tap Add to Reading List.

**Tip:** To add a linked webpage without opening it, touch and hold the link, then tap Add to Reading List.



### View your Reading List

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Bookmarks.

Recently saved bookmarks, favorites, and reading list items appear at the top of the screen. The newest is on the left, and you can scroll through the others. Touch and hold a reading list item to copy, open, mark as read, or delete.

3. Tap .

To delete an item from your Reading List, swipe left on the item.

## Automatically save all Reading List Draft items to iCloud for offline reading

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Turn on Automatically Save Offline (below Reading List).

## Find links shared with you in Safari on iPhone

You can easily find and organize web links that friends share with you in Messages conversations. Links shared with you are added to the Safari start page (the page that first appears when you open a new Safari window) below Suggestions. You can keep those links on your start page, remove them, or organize related links into Tab Groups. (Safari must be turned on in Settings  > Apps > Messages > Shared with You, and your friend must be in your contacts.)

### See links from friends in Safari

To find links shared with you, you can display them on your Safari start page. Then, every time you open a new page, you see them listed there.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap New Tab.

Links shared with you appear below Suggestions. If you don't see a Suggestions section, scroll down, tap Edit, then turn on Suggestions. If you don't see links shared with you, turn on Shared with You below Show In Suggestions.

To change where Suggestions appears on your start page, drag .

**Tip:** You can continue the conversation without leaving Safari. Tap the button below the link preview to open the Messages conversation where the link was shared.

### Remove a link from the Shared with You section

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. While viewing your shared links, touch and hold the preview image of a link.
3. Tap Remove Link.

### Organize shared links in a Tab Group

You can group related shared web links into Tab Groups to make them easier to find.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the preview image of the link you want to move, then tap Open in Tab Group.
3. Tap New Tab Group to create one, or add the link to a Tab Group you already have.

To learn more about Shared with You, see [Share content in Messages](#).

## Download a PDF from Safari to your iPhone

You can save a PDF from Safari to read later or share with others.

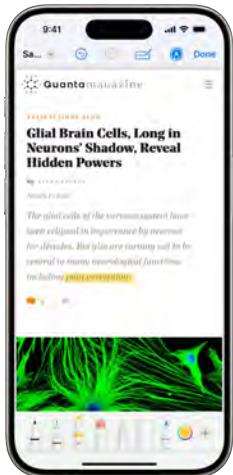


1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Go to the PDF.
3. Tap , then tap Save to Files.
4. Enter a name for the file, then tap .

To choose where your PDFs are saved, see [Choose where to save downloads](#).

## Annotate and save a webpage as a PDF in Safari on iPhone

You can mark up a webpage, highlight your favorite parts, draw and write notes, and share your document as a PDF with others.



1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Go to a webpage, tap , then tap Share.
3. Tap Markup , then use the tools to annotate the webpage.
4. Tap , then tap Save File To.
5. Enter a name for the file, then tap .

## Fill in personal information in Safari on iPhone

With your personal information saved on <sup>Draft</sup>iPhone, you can automatically fill in contact information, and user names and passwords.

You can also automatically [fill in payment information](#).

## Set up AutoFill

You can save your personal information on your iPhone to speed up filling in online forms.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Tap AutoFill, then turn on Use Contact Info.
4. Tap My Info, then choose your contact card.

The contact information from that card is entered when you tap AutoFill on webpages in Safari.

## Fill in your contact information automatically

You can quickly add your personal information to online forms using AutoFill.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. In a form on a website that supports AutoFill, tap a blank field.
3. Tap AutoFill Contact above the keyboard, then select a contact.
4. Tap any field to make changes.

**Note:** You can use AutoFill to enter another person's information from your contact list. For example, if you're purchasing a gift and shipping it to a friend, you can use AutoFill to enter their address. Tap AutoFill Contact, tap Other Contact, then choose their contact card.

## Fill in your passwords automatically

When you sign up for services on websites and in apps, you can let iPhone create and save strong passwords for many of your accounts. See [Automatically fill in strong passwords](#).

**Important:** Never enter a password on sites with a "Not Secure" warning. See the Apple Support article [If you see a "Not Secure" warning while browsing with Safari](#).

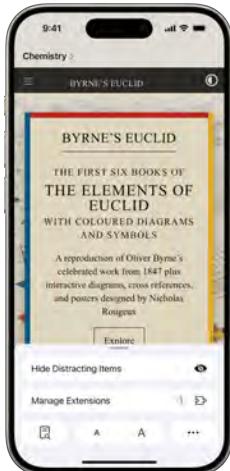
## Turn off AutoFill

You can turn off AutoFill for your contact information and for passwords. This is helpful in situations where you don't want your contact information to be readily available—for example, if you share a device with others.

- *Turn off AutoFill for your contact information:* Go to Settings  > Apps > Safari > AutoFill, then turn off Use Contact Info.
- *Turn off AutoFill for passwords:* Go to Settings  > General > AutoFill & Passwords, then turn off AutoFill Passwords and Passkeys.

## Get extensions to customize Safari on iPhone

Draft  
You can install extensions to customize the way your browser works. For example, extensions can help you find coupons when shopping, block content on websites, give you access to features from other apps, and more.



## Add Safari extensions

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Manage Extensions.
3. Search for extensions, scan Suggestions, or tap Browse Extensions to look in the App Store.
4. When you find one you want, tap the price, or if the app is free, tap Get, then follow the onscreen instructions.

**Note:** Extensions you install for Safari on iPhone that are also available on other platforms will appear in Safari settings on any iPhone, iPad, or Mac where you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#), to make them easier to find and download.

## Change Safari extension settings

You can use an extension to customize the way your browser works. You can turn Safari extensions on or off at any time.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Tap Extensions, then tap an extension.
4. Turn on Allow Extension.

If you have Safari profiles set up, turn on the extension for each profile you want to use it with.

**Important:** Check the extensions you have installed and make sure you're familiar with what they do.

## Change Safari extension settings for an individual website

You can turn an extension on or off for an individual website without changing your overall Safari settings.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  on the left side of the search field, then tap an extension and choose your settings for the website.

## Remove a Safari extension

1. Swipe down on the Home Screen, Draft then search for the extension you want to remove.
2. Touch and hold the extension icon, tap "Delete app," then follow the onscreen instructions.

## Hide distractions

### Hide distractions when browsing webpages in Safari on iPhone

Use Distraction Control to hide menus and other diversions on a webpage.



1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. On a website, tap , then tap Hide Distracting Items.
3. Tap an item you want to hide from the webpage, then tap Hide.  
Hide as many items as you want.

4. Tap .

To unhide, tap , tap Show Hidden Items, then tap Show to confirm.

### Hide distractions when reading articles in Safari on iPhone

Use Reader to hide navigation menus and other distracting items. Longer pages include a summary and table of contents.



## Show Reader

Reader formats a webpage to show just the relevant text and images.

1. Go to the Safari app 🌐 on your iPhone.
2. On a supported website, tap ⓘ, then tap Show Reader.

To return to the full page, tap ⓘ, then tap Hide Reader.

## Automatically use Reader for a website

1. Go to the Safari app 🌐 on your iPhone.
2. On a supported website, tap ⓘ, then tap ⓘ.
3. Turn on Use Reader Automatically.

To automatically use Reader for all websites that support it, go to Settings ⓘ > Apps > Safari > Reader, then turn on All Websites.

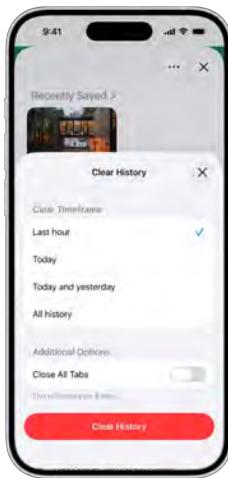
## Block pop-ups in Safari on iPhone

1. Go to the Settings app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Turn on Block Pop-ups.

## Clear your cache and cookies on iPhone

You can erase your browsing history and data to clear the cache on your iPhone. This action removes the history of websites you visited and recent searches from your iPhone. This process also removes the cookies and permissions you granted to websites to use your location or send you notifications.

*Note:* Clearing your browsing history in Safari doesn't clear any browsing histories kept independently by websites you visited, or your browsing history in other apps.



1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Bookmarks.
3. Tap .
4. Tap , then tap Clear.
5. Below Clear Timeframe, choose how much of your browsing history to clear.  
*Note: If you have Safari profiles set up, select a profile to clear only the history of that profile, or select All Profiles.*
6. Tap Clear History.

## Enable cookies on iPhone

You can enable cookies. Some websites use cookies to keep track of your activity, such as your settings. Enabling cookies allows websites that require cookies to work normally.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Tap Advanced, then turn off Block All Cookies.

## Privacy and security

### Hide recent searches in Safari on iPhone

You can hide the recent searches that appear when the search field is empty in the Safari app .

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Below Search, turn off Show Recent Searches.

### Browse the web privately in Safari on iPhone

Draft  
You can view the Privacy Report and adjust settings in the Safari app to keep your browsing activities private, and help protect yourself from malicious websites.

## Visit sites privately

You can use Private Browsing to open private tabs that don't appear in History on iPhone or in the list of tabs on your other devices. Tabs in Private Browsing aren't shared with your other Apple devices, even if you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#).

If you have a passcode set on your iPhone, Private Browsing locks when it's not in use. Private Browsing may not lock immediately.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap All Tabs.
3. Swipe right on the tab bar at the bottom of the screen until Private Browsing opens, then tap .

To exit Private Browsing, tap , tap All Tabs, then swipe left to open a Tab Group from the menu at the bottom of your screen. The websites you have open in Private Browsing stay open, and Private Browsing locks.

To allow Private Browsing to be locked, go to Settings  > Apps > Safari, then turn on Require Passcode to Unlock Private Browsing, Require Face ID to Unlock Private Browsing ([supported models](#)), or Require Touch ID to Unlock Private Browsing ([supported models](#)).

**Note:** Any Safari extensions you have installed that have access to browsing data are automatically turned off in Private Browsing. To turn on an extension in Private Browsing, see [Change Safari extension settings](#).

## Choose a search engine for Private Browsing

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Turn off Also Use in Private Browsing.
4. Tap Private Search Engine, then choose a search engine.

## View the Privacy Report

Safari helps prevent trackers from following you across websites and viewing your IP address. You can review the Privacy Report to see a summary of trackers that have been encountered and prevented by Intelligent Tracking Prevention on the current webpage you're visiting. You can also review and adjust Safari settings to keep your browsing activities private from others who use the same device, and help protect yourself from malicious websites.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap .
3. Tap Privacy Report .

## Use iCloud Private Relay to browse the web with more privacy

When you [subscribe to iCloud+](#), you can use iCloud Private Relay to help prevent websites and network providers from creating a detailed profile about you. When iCloud Private Relay is turned on, the traffic leaving your iPhone is encrypted and sent through two separate internet relays. This prevents websites from seeing your IP address and exact location while it prevents network providers from collecting your browsing activity in Safari.

See [Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay](#) to learn how to:

- Turn iCloud Private Relay completely on or off for your iPhone.
- Turn iCloud Private Relay on or off for a specific Wi-Fi or cellular network.
- Turn iCloud Private Relay off temporarily.
- Set the specificity of your IP address location.

Note: iCloud Private Relay isn't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

## Temporarily allow a website to see your IP address

If a website relies on IP filtering, monitoring, or rate-limiting, it might require your IP address to be visible. You can turn off iCloud Private Relay temporarily for that website only.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. On the website, tap  on the left side of the search field, then tap .
3. Tap Show IP Address.

Your IP address remains visible to that website until you leave the website or close its Safari tab. iCloud Private Relay remains on for other websites.

To turn off or pause iCloud Private Relay for all websites, see [Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay](#).

## Control privacy and security settings for Safari

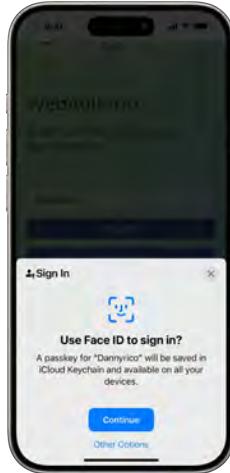
1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Turn any of the following on or off:
  - *Prevent Cross-Site Tracking*: Safari limits third-party cookies and data by default. Turn this option off to allow cross-site tracking.
  - *Hide IP address*: Safari automatically protects your IP address from known trackers. For eligible iCloud+ subscribers, your IP address is protected from trackers and websites as you browse in Safari. If this option is off, your IP address isn't hidden.
  - *Fraudulent Website Warning*: Safari displays a warning if you're visiting a suspected phishing website. Turn this option off if you don't want to be warned about fraudulent websites.
  - *Camera*: Choose whether Safari websites can use your camera without asking you first. Tap Camera, then choose Ask, Deny, or Allow.
  - *Microphone*: Choose whether Safari websites can use your microphone without asking you first. Tap Microphone, then choose Ask, Deny, or Allow.
  - *Location*: Choose whether Safari websites can use your location without asking you first. Tap Location, then choose Ask, Deny, or Allow.

To set exceptions for a specific website, open the website in the Safari app, tap , then tap , then tap the setting you want to change below Website Settings For.

## Sign in with passkeys in Safari on iPhone

Draft

In the Safari app  Draft, you can use Face ID [\(supported models\)](#) or Touch ID [\(supported models\)](#) to securely sign in to supporting websites. See [Use passkeys to sign in to websites and apps](#).



## Use Hide My Email in Safari on iPhone

When you [subscribe to iCloud+](#), you can use Hide My Email to keep your personal email address private. With Hide My Email, you can generate unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal email account, so you don't have to share your real email address when filling out forms on the web or signing up for newsletters.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. When you're asked for your email address on a website, tap the email field.
3. Tap Hide My Email above the keyboard.

The Hide My Email screen suggests a new, randomly generated Hide My Email address.

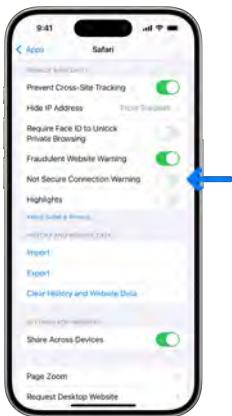
4. If you don't want to use the suggested address, tap  to get a new randomly generated email address.
5. Tap Continue.

You can delete the Hide My Email address at any time. See [Create and manage Hide My Email in Settings](#).

## Get a warning when you visit websites that use HTTP on iPhone

Websites use HTTP or HTTPS to transmit information to and from Safari; HTTP doesn't provide a secure connection.

You can choose to receive a warning when you visit websites that use HTTP.



1. Go to the Settings app 🛡 on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Below Privacy & Security, turn on Not Secure Connection Warning.

## Digital certificates and encrypted websites in Safari on iPhone

A certificate, also known as a “digital certificate” or a “public key certificate,” is a file that helps keep web communications secure.

Certificates are issued by trusted organizations, such as VeriSign, Inc. or RSA Security, Inc. When you visit an encrypted website—for example, to do online banking—Safari checks if the site’s certificate is legitimate. If it’s not, Safari warns you.

An encrypted website and Safari work together to encrypt information you exchange with the site. The key used for the encryption is contained in the site’s security certificate. This protects your sign-in information, credit card numbers, addresses, and other secure data.

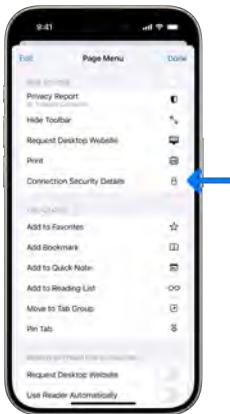
If you need to connect to a website that requires a personal certificate, you’re provided with a certificate and instructions for installing it. After it’s installed, you gain authenticated access to the website automatically. If you’re unable to access it, contact the website administrator.

**Important:** If a website doesn’t use the HTTPS protocol, have a digital identity certificate, or encrypt information, the words “Not Secure” appear in the search field. Don’t enter personal or financial information on a website that isn’t encrypted. The website you’re visiting might not be the website you want, and information you enter is vulnerable to theft. Instead, go back to the webpage where you signed in and check for a link to another version of the site that’s encrypted—for example, “Use our secure site.” If available, use it, even if you don’t expect to view or provide private information.

Encryption ensures that your connection to a website is secure, but encryption doesn’t guarantee the website is trustworthy. Always verify the address in the Safari toolbar to confirm it’s correct. Some fraudulent websites masquerade as trusted websites by changing one or two letters of the website address.

## Check whether a website is encrypted in Safari on iPhone

Draft  
Review connection security details to determine whether a website is encrypted. Encrypted websites mask the data you exchange with them, so that only you and they can see it. It's important to use encrypted websites to prevent anyone from "eavesdropping" on you.



1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Go to the website, tap  on the left side of the search field, then tap .
3. Tap Connection Security Details.

## Import and export

### Import data from another browser into Safari on iPhone

You can import data into Safari that you exported from another browser. Browser data can include bookmarks, history, extensions, credit cards, and passwords.



1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Below History and Website Data, tap Import.
4. Tap Choose File, then choose a file (or a .zip file of files) to import.

Individual files might be available for each piece of browsing data, such as bookmarks or history.

5. Tap Import to Safari.

Draft

You'll see a description of the browser data you imported.

*Note:* Any passwords you import go into the Passwords app.

6. Tap Done.

**WARNING:** For security, delete the file or folder you imported. It may include unencrypted data and could be visible to anyone who can access it.

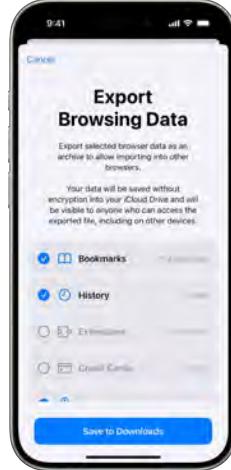
## Export Safari data to another browser on iPhone

You can export selected data from Safari, and then import that data into another browser.

Data you can export from Safari includes:

- Bookmarks
- History
- Extensions
- Credit cards
- Passwords

**WARNING:** Your exported data is not encrypted and is visible to anyone who can access the file. After you import the data into another browser, delete the file you exported.



1. Go to the Settings app 🛡 on your iPhone.

2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.

3. Below History and Website Data, tap Export.

4. Select the data to export.

If you created profiles for your browsing in Safari, choose the profile you want to export data from, or choose All Profiles.

Each profile has its own history and extensions data. The data for bookmarks, credit cards, and passwords is the same across all profiles.

5. Tap Save to Downloads.

6. Tap Done.

Draft

## Shortcuts

### Use Shortcuts to automate tasks on iPhone

The Shortcuts app Draft lets you automate tasks you do often with just a tap or by asking Siri. Create shortcuts to get directions to the next event in your Calendar, move text from one app to another, and more. Choose ready-made shortcuts from the Gallery or build your own using different apps to run multiple steps in a task.



To learn more, see the [Shortcuts User Guide](#).

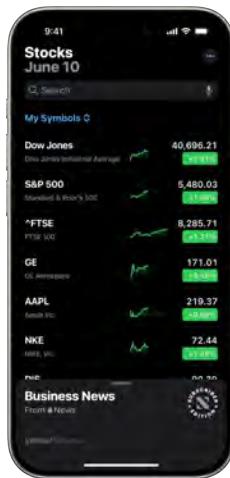
## Stocks

### Check stocks on iPhone

In the Stocks app, you can view interactive charts with historical data for a variety of time spans, performance details, and related news stories about ticker symbols in your watchlist or search results.

You can track market activity and view the performance of stocks you follow or search for. As you follow ticker symbols, the My Symbols watchlist appears in the sidebar of the Stocks app, and you can customize what it displays.

Ask Siri something like, "How are the markets doing?" [Learn how to use Siri](#).



## Check stocks

1. Go to the Stocks app  on your iPhone.
2. To check a stock that isn't listed, enter its symbol or name in the search field at the top of the screen, then do any of the following:
  - Tap the symbol in the search results.
  - Tap  to add it to My Symbols or [another watchlist](#).
3. To see more details, do any of the following:
  - *View the performance over time:* Tap an option from the time range selections at the top of the chart. Below the chart, view additional stock details like 52-week high and low, Beta, EPS, and average trading volume.
  - **Tip:** Touch and hold a symbol in your watchlist to see a quick view of its performance.
  - *View the value for a specific date or time:* Touch and hold the chart with one finger.
  - *View the difference in value over time:* Touch and hold the chart with two fingers.
  - *Read news:* Swipe up to see additional news stories, then tap a story. See [Read a story](#).

## View your watchlists on all your devices

You can view your watchlists on any iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).

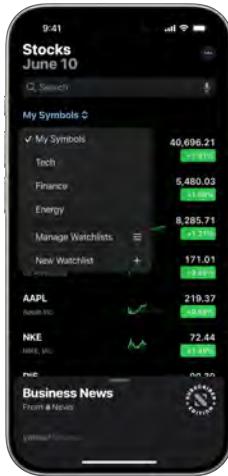
- *On your iPhone or iPad:* Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud, tap See All (next to Saved to iCloud), then turn on Stocks.
- *On a Mac with macOS 13 or later:* Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, click your name at the top of the sidebar, click iCloud, then turn on Stocks.

## Share a symbol

1. Go to the Stocks app  on your iPhone.
2. Swipe left on a symbol in your watchlist, tap , then choose a sharing option, such as Messages or Mail.

# Customize watchlists in Stocks on iPhone

The My Symbols watchlist displays all the stocks you choose to follow. You can also create custom watchlists to organize the stocks you follow—for example, grouping them in categories like entertainment or sustainability. Once created, you can switch between watchlists, make edits and updates, or delete them as needed.



## Create a new watchlist

1. Go to the Stocks app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap New Watchlist.
3. Name the watchlist, then tap Save.
4. In the search field, enter a ticker symbol or the name of a company, fund, or index.
5. Tap  next to it in the sidebar.

Each symbol you add to a custom watchlist is also added to the My Symbols watchlist.

**Tip:** To quickly add a symbol that's in one watchlist to another watchlist, touch and hold it, tap Add to Watchlist, select the lists you want to add it to, then tap .

## Switch between watchlists

1. Go to the Stocks app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  next to My Symbols or the name of the current watchlist you're viewing.
3. Tap the name of the watchlist you want to see.

## Remove symbols from a watchlist

1. Go to the Stocks app  on your iPhone.
2. Swipe left on the symbol, then tap .

**Note:** If you delete a symbol from the My Symbols watchlist, that symbol is also deleted from your other watchlists. When you remove a symbol from a watchlist you created, that symbol remains in the My Symbols watchlist.

## Sort or rearrange symbols in a watchlist

1. Go to the Stocks app  on your iPhone.
2. Select the watchlist you want to sort, then tap .

3. Tap Sort Watchlist By, tap Price Change, Percentage Change, Market Cap, Symbol, or Name, then tap Ascending or Descending.

To undo sorting and rearrange manually, touch and hold a symbol, then drag to place it elsewhere in the list. To return to this order after automatically sorting, tap Sort Watchlist By, then tap Manual.

## Change the value displayed in a watchlist

You can change the value displayed below each symbol's price in a watchlist.

1. Go to the Stocks app  on your iPhone.
2. Select the watchlist you want to change, then tap .
3. Tap Watchlist Shows, then tap one of the following options:
  - Price Change
  - Percentage Change
  - Market Cap
4. To view the currency the stocks trade in, tap Show Currency.

## Delete, reorder, and rename watchlists

1. Go to the Stocks app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the name of the watchlist that's showing, tap Manage Watchlists, then do any of the following:
  - *Delete a watchlist:* Tap  next to the watchlist name, tap , then tap Delete Watchlist.
  - *Reorder your list of watchlists:* Touch and hold , then drag the watchlist to a new position.
  - *Rename a watchlist:* Tap , type a new name, then tap Save.
3. Tap .

## Read or listen to business news in Stocks on iPhone

In the Stocks app, you can read and listen to business news that's driving the market. In countries where Apple News is available, you also see stories selected by the Apple News editors and stories from Apple News+.

To learn more about Apple News+, see [Subscribe to Apple News+](#).

*Note:* Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

## Read a story

1. Go to the Stocks app  on your iPhone.
2. Swipe up on Business News or Top Stories to view stories, or tap a symbol in your watchlist to browse related stories.

3. Tap a story to read it. While viewing <sup>Draft</sup> a story, you have these options:

- *Return to your newsfeed in Stocks:* Tap ⌂ or Done in the top-left corner.
- *See more stories from the publication in Apple News:* Tap the publisher logo at the top of the screen.
- *Save the story to Apple News:* Tap ☰ at the top of the screen.

*Note:* In order to save stories to Apple News, make sure you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#), then go to [Settings](#) ⓘ > [your name] > iCloud, tap See All next to Saved to iCloud, then turn on News.

- *Change the text size:* Do one of the following, depending on your location:
  - Tap AA, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story.
  - Tap ⓘ, tap Text Size, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story.
- *Share the story:* Tap ☰, then choose a sharing option, such as [Messages](#) or [Mail](#).



*Note:* If you tap an Apple News+ story and you're not an Apple News+ subscriber, tap the subscribe or free trial button, then follow the onscreen instructions. To learn more about Apple News+, see [Subscribe to Apple News+](#).

Stories from publications you have blocked in Apple News don't appear in the newsfeed. See [See news stories chosen just for you](#).

## Listen to audio stories

Some news stories include an audio version that you can listen to in the Stocks app or listen to later in the News app (not available in all countries or regions).

1. Go to the Stocks app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. To listen to the audio version of a story, tap Play Now. Or, tap the story to read it, then tap Play Now at the top of the story.
3. Use the mini player at the bottom of the screen to pause the story or jump back 15 seconds. To open the full-screen player, tap the mini player.
4. To return to the mini player, swipe down to minimize the full-screen player.
5. To close the mini player, tap ⓘ.

## Add an audio story from Stocks to your News queue

<sup>Draft</sup>

If you [subscribe to Apple News+](#), you can add an audio story from Stocks to your Up Next queue in News. Draft

1. Make sure you're signed in to your [Apple Account](#).
2. Go to Settings > [your name] > iCloud, tap See All next to Saved to iCloud, then turn on News.
3. Go to the Stocks app on your iPhone.
4. Do either of the following:
  - *Add from a Stocks newsfeed:* Touch and hold the story, tap Play Later in News, then choose Play Next or Play Last.
  - *Add from the story:* Open the story, then touch and hold Play Now at the top of the story. Tap Play Later in News, then choose Play Next or Play Last.

## Clear recommendations

The Stocks app recommends stories based on what you read in the past. You can clear this information.

1. Go to the Stocks app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Clear Recommendations Data.

*Note:* Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

## Add earnings reports to your calendar in Stocks on iPhone

You can see when a company has an upcoming earnings report and add it as an event in the Calendar app.

### Add an earnings report event to your calendar

If a stock has an upcoming earnings report, you can add it in the Calendar app.

1. Go to the Stocks app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a ticker symbol in your watchlist, or use the search field to search for a symbol.
3. If an earnings report is upcoming, tap Add to Calendar, then tap Add.

The earnings report is saved as an all-day event in the Calendar app. Calendar sends you an event reminder on the day of the earnings report.

### Delete an earnings report event from your calendar

1. Go to the Stocks app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the ticker symbol in your watchlist or use the search field to search for the symbol.
3. Tap Edit, then tap Delete Event.

## Use a Stocks widget on your iPhone

Use a widget to check stocks at a glance on your iPhone Home Screen. You can choose the size of the widget and the amount of information the widget displays.

## Add a Stocks widget to your Home Screen

1. Touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle.
2. Tap  at the top of the screen to open the widget gallery.
3. Swipe up to find Stocks, then tap it.
4. Swipe left and right to view the different widget types (Watchlist and Symbol) and sizes. When you see the option you want, tap Add Widget, then tap Done.

To move the widget on your Home Screen, touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle. Drag the widget to a new location, then tap Done.

## Change the widget display

After you add a Stocks widget to your Home Screen, you can change its appearance and the information it displays.

1. Touch and hold the Stocks widget on your Home Screen.
2. Tap Edit Widget.
3. Depending on the type of widget you chose, Watchlist or Symbol, you can make the following changes:
  - *Change the widget symbol:* Tap the current symbol, then tap the new symbol you want from the watchlist. Or use the search field to search for a new symbol.
  - *Change the widget watchlist:* Tap the name of the current watchlist, then tap the watchlist you want to display.
  - *Change when news stories appear:* Tap In Off Hours, then choose an option.
  - *Show the watchlist name:* Turn on Show Watchlist Name.
  - *Show more symbols or additional symbol information:* Turn on Show More Details.

**Tip:** You can add more than one Stocks widget to your Home Screen—and choose a different size for each—so you can quickly see updates for different symbols or watchlists.

Stocks widgets are also available for the iPhone Lock Screen. See [Create a custom Lock Screen](#).

## Tips

### Use the Tips app on iPhone

View collections of tips in the Tips app that help you get the most from your iPhone. You can also get notifications every once in a while so you can keep learning new things over time.



## Get tips

In the Tips app, you can learn how to personalize your Lock Screen, how to schedule a text message to send later, how to mute calls with your AirPods, and much more. New tips are added regularly.

To start learning, go to the Tips app , tap a collection, then tap a tip.

## Get notified when new tips arrive

1. Go to Settings  > Notifications.
2. Tap Tips below Notification Style, then turn on Allow Notifications.
3. Choose options for the style of notifications you want to receive, how they should appear, and more.

## Save tips

You can add tips to your personal Saved tips collection, so you can quickly find them later.

1. Go to the Tips app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a tip, then tap  to add it to your saved collection. Tap again to remove the tip from your saved collection.

To view all the tips you saved, tap  twice, then tap "Saved tips."

## Share a tip

You can share a tip with a friend over Messages and Mail, or AirDrop it to someone nearby. You can also add tips to documents like Notes and Freeform boards.

1. Go to the Tips app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a tip, tap , then choose a share option such as Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.

## Learn more about your other Apple devices

If you have other Apple devices—like an Apple Watch, AirPods, or a HomePod—you can read about them in the Tips app.

1. Go to the Tips app  on your iPhone.
2. Scroll to the bottom of the Tips app, then tap the user guide you want to browse.

# Translate text, voice, and conversations on iPhone

You can translate text, voice, and conversations into any supported language. You can also download languages to translate entirely on a device, even without an internet connection.



**Note:** Translation is available for supported languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

## Translate text or your voice

1. Go to the Translate app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the language you want to translate your selected text to.  
To swap languages, tap .
3. Tap one of the following:
  - *Translate text:* Tap "Enter text," type a phrase (or paste text), then tap Next in the keyboard.  
You can also tap Done in the top-left corner of the screen.
  - *Translate your voice:* Tap , then say a phrase.

**Note:** Words are translated as you type or speak.

4. When the translation is shown, do any of the following:

- *Play the audio translation:* Tap .

**Tip:** Touch and hold  to adjust the playback speed.

- *Show the translation to someone else:* Tap .
- *Save the translation as a favorite:* Tap .
- *Look up a word in the dictionary:* Tap .
- *Copy the translation:* Tap .

**Tip:** To view your recent history, swipe the translation down.

To delete a translation, swipe left, then tap .

## View your favorite translations

Draft



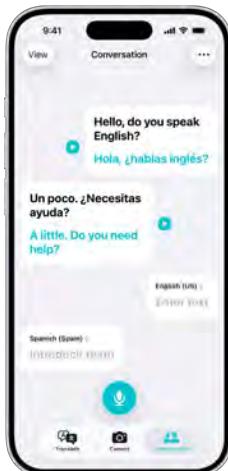
1. Go to the Translate app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Favorites, then scroll to view translations you've favorited and words and phrases you've recently translated.

To remove a translation from your favorites, swipe left, then tap .

**Note:** You can see your favorite translations in the Translate app on your iPhone, iPad, or Apple Watch where you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#).

## Translate a conversation

iPhone shows the translated text bubbles from both sides of the conversation. Conversations work for downloaded languages when you don't have an internet connection or when On-Device Mode is turned on.



1. Go to the Translate app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Conversation.
3. Tap one of the following:
  - *Type text:* Tap "Enter text," type a phrase (or paste text), then tap Done.
  - *Use your voice:* Tap , then say a phrase.

**Note:** Words are translated as you type or speak.

4. Tap  to hear the audio translation.

To hear audio translations automatically, tap , then tap Play Translations.  
Draft

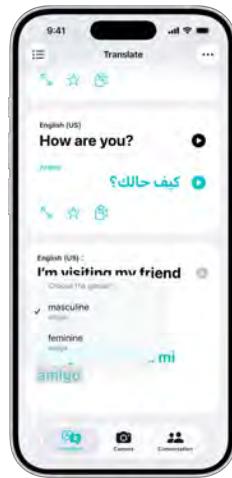
**Tip:** You can translate a conversation without tapping the microphone button before each person speaks. Tap  Draft, tap Auto Translate, then tap  to start the conversation. iPhone automatically detects when you start speaking and when you stop.

When chatting face to face, tap View in the top left, then tap Face to Face so that each person can see the conversation from their own side.

## Review words with multiple meanings

When translating a word that has several meanings, you can choose the one you want. You can also select feminine or masculine translations for words that have grammatical gender variations.

**Note:** When gender hasn't been specified, translations automatically default to the gender-neutral form of a word.



1. Go to the Translate app  on your iPhone.
2. Translate a word or phrase, then tap Next in the keyboard.
3. When available, do any of the following:
  - *Choose a different meaning:* When available, tap the light-colored word to select the intended meaning.
  - *Choose grammatical gender translations:* When available, tap the light-colored word to select a feminine or masculine translation.

To turn off grammatical gender translations, tap , then tap Show Grammatical Gender.

## Download languages for offline translation or On-Device Mode

Download languages to translate when you don't have an internet connection or when On-Device Mode is turned on.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Translate.
2. Do any of the following:
  - Tap Downloaded Languages, then tap  next to the languages you want to download.
  - Turn On-Device Mode on.

# Translate text in apps on iPhone

On iPhone, you can translate text in apps such as Camera, Photos, Safari, Messages, Mail, supported third-party apps, and more. Draft

Note: Translation is available for supported languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

## Translate text in apps

You can select any text to translate in apps such as Safari, Messages, Mail, supported third-party apps, and more. When you enter text on your iPhone, you can even replace what you wrote with a translation.

1. Go to an app like Safari, Message, or Mail on your iPhone.
2. Select the text you want to translate, then tap Translate.

If you don't see Translate, tap > to see more options.
3. Tap the language you want to translate your selected text to.
4. Below the text translation, choose any of the following:
  - *Replace with Translation*: Replace your original text with the translation (available only when translating editable text).
  - *Copy Translation*: Copy the translated text.
  - *Add to Favorites*: Add the translation to a list of favorites.
  - *Open in Translate*: Do more with the translation in the Translate app.
  - *Download Languages*: Download languages for offline translation.
  - *Listen to Original Text*: Tap more, then tap ⓘ to listen to the original text.
  - *Listen to Translated Text*: Tap ⓘ to listen to the translated text.

## Translate text in photos

When you view a photo that includes text, tap ⓘ, touch and hold the text you want to translate, then tap Translate.

If you don't see Translate, tap > to see more options.

## Translate text in the Camera app

You can use the Camera app to translate text around you—like a recipe, for example.

1. Go to the Camera app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Position iPhone so that the text appears on the screen.
3. When the yellow frame appears around detected text, tap ⓘ.
4. Select the text you want to translate, then tap Translate.

If you don't see Translate, tap > to see more options.

# Translate text with the camera view in the Translate app on iPhone

On iPhone, you can use the camera view in the Translate app to translate text around you—for example, a restaurant menu or street signs. You can also translate text in photos from your photo library.



**Note:** Translation is available for supported languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

## Translate text using the camera view

1. Go to the Translate app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Camera, then choose the language you want to translate your selected text into.
3. Position iPhone so the rear camera can translate text around you.

**Note:** As you move the rear camera, text is translated in real time.
4. Tap  to pause the view.

You can zoom in to get a closer look at the overlaid translations.
5. Tap an overlaid translation to show the translation card, then do any of the following:
  - *Copy Translation:* Copy the translated text.
  - *Add to Favorites:* Add the translation to a list of favorites.
  - *Listen to Original Text:* Tap more, then tap  to listen to the original text.
  - *Listen to Translated Text:* Tap  to listen to the translated text.
6. When you're finished, tap .

## Translate text in photos from your photo library

1. Go to the Translate app  on iPhone.
2. Tap Camera, then choose the language you want to translate your selected text into.
3. Tap , then select a photo that contains text from your photo library.
4. When you're finished, tap .

## Share and save a translated image

1. Go to the Translate app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Camera, then do one of the following:

- *Use the camera view:* Tap ○.
- *Use a photo from your photo library:* Tap 📸, then tap a photo.

3. Tap ✎, then do any of the following:

- *Share the translation:* Choose a share option.
- *Save the translation as an image:* Tap Save Image.

## TV

# Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or an Apple TV channel on iPhone

In the Apple TV app, you can subscribe to Apple TV+, [MLS Season Pass](#), and [Apple TV channels](#). A subscription gives you access to content on demand on [iPhone](#), [iPad](#), [Mac](#), [Apple TV](#), [Apple Vision Pro](#), and [supported smart TVs and streaming devices](#). You can also download content to watch offline on iPhone, iPad, and Mac.

You can choose to bundle your Apple TV+ subscription with other Apple services by subscribing to Apple One. See the Apple Support article [Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One](#).

*Note:* Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, and Apple One aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

## Subscribe to Apple TV+

Apple TV+ is a subscription streaming service featuring Apple Originals—award-winning series, compelling dramas, groundbreaking documentaries, kids' entertainment, comedies, and more—with new items added every month.

1. Go to the Apple TV app 📺 on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apple TV+, then tap the subscription button.
3. Review the free trial (if eligible) and subscription details, then follow the onscreen instructions.

## Subscribe to MLS Season Pass

MLS Season Pass is a subscription streaming service featuring every match of the Major League Soccer season, all in one place, with consistent match times, and no blackouts.

1. Go to the Apple TV app 📺 on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search, then tap MLS Season Pass.
3. Tap the subscription button.
4. Review the subscription details, tap a subscription option, then follow the onscreen instructions.

## Subscribe to Apple TV channels and apps

You can subscribe to Apple TV channels to get the shows you want, without downloading any apps.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Store, then scroll down to the Add Channels & Apps row.
3. Swipe left to browse, then tap an item.
4. Tap the subscription button, review the free trial (if eligible) and subscription details, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To disconnect supported streaming apps, tap your picture or initials at the top right, tap Connected Apps, then tap the button next to the streaming app to disconnect it.

## Change or cancel your subscriptions to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or Apple TV channels

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap Manage Subscriptions.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions to change or cancel your subscription.

## Share Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, and Apple TV channels with family members

When you subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, or Apple One, you can [use Family Sharing](#) to share your subscriptions with up to five other family members. Your family group members don't need to do anything—a shared subscription is available to them the first time they open the Apple TV app after your subscription begins.

If you [join a family group](#) that subscribes to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, or Apple One, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

*Note:* To stop sharing your subscription with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, [leave or remove a member from a Family Sharing group](#), or (if you're the family group organizer), stop using Family Sharing.

Subscriptions required for Apple TV+ (which in some countries and regions includes Friday Night Baseball, Sunday Night Soccer, or both) and MLS Season Pass (which includes Sunday Night Soccer). MLS Season Pass, Sunday Night Soccer, and Friday Night Baseball require iOS 16.2 or later. Not all features and content are available in all countries or regions.

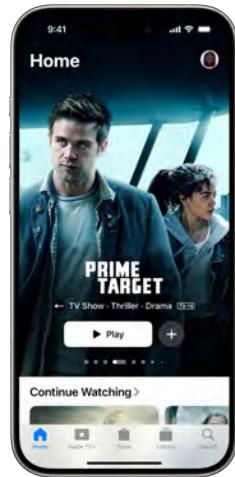
## Start watching and control playback in the Apple TV app on iPhone

In the Apple TV app, you can stream TV shows, movies, sports, and more. You can also download movies and episodes of a TV show. You can also download a full season of a TV show.

Content from Apple TV+ and Apple TV channels plays in the Apple TV app, while content from other providers plays in their video app. Use the playback controls to play or pause what you're watching, skip backward or forward, and more.

When you watch with your friends using SharePlay, the playback controls are shared by everyone on the FaceTime call. To learn more about using SharePlay in the Apple TV app, see [Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime](#).

## Play a TV show or movie

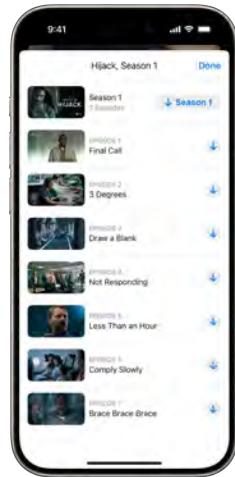


[Stream \*Prime Target\* on the Apple TV app with a subscription](#)

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - Swipe left or right at the top of the screen to browse featured items, then tap the Play button (if available).
  - Tap Home, then tap an item in the [Continue Watching](#) row to immediately pick up where you left off.
  - Scroll down to view more rows, then tap an item you want to watch. When the page for that item opens, tap the Play button (if available) or tap a specific episode or trailer you want to watch.

**Tip:** Tap a row title to view all items in a category or view more information about a collection.

## Download content



[Stream \*Hijack\* on the Apple TV app with a subscription](#)

In the Apple TV app, you can download movies and episodes of a TV show. You can also download a full season of a TV show.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPhone.

Draft

2. Tap an item to see its details. Draft
3. Do any of the following (not all options are available for all titles):
  - *Download movies:* Tap ⓘ in the top-right corner.
  - *Download an episode of a TV show:* Tap ⓘ in the top-right corner, tap a season, then tap ⓘ next to the episode you want to download.
  - *Download a full season of a TV show:* Tap ⓘ in the top-right corner, tap a season, then tap the season button above the list of episodes.

You can find the downloaded item [in your library](#) and watch it even when iPhone isn't connected to the internet.

## Use the playback controls

During playback, tap the screen to show the controls.



[Stream \*Hijack\* on the Apple TV app with a subscription](#)

Control	Description
	Play
	Pause
	Skip backward 10 seconds; touch and hold to rewind
	Skip forward 10 seconds; touch and hold to fast-forward
	Change the playback speed
	Change the audio track and <a href="#">enhance dialogue</a>
	Display subtitles and closed captions
	Share an episode, movie, trailer, or sporting event
	Stream the video to other devices
	Start Picture in Picture—you can continue to watch the video while you use another app
	Stop playback

When the audio is muted, subtitles automatically appear. And if you skip backward 10 seconds, subtitles appear. To turn off subtitles, tap , then tap Off.

## Change audio options during playback

1. During playback, tap the screen to show the playback controls.
2. Tap , then tap Enhance Dialogue.
3. Tap one of the following:
  - *Enhance More*: Makes dialogue very prominent in the mix.
  - *Enhance*: Makes dialogue more prominent in the mix.
  - *Off*: Turns Enhance Dialogue off.

## Get information about shows, characters, actors, and music

During playback, you can get more information about the movie or TV show you're watching or go directly to Continue Watching.

With InSight, you can get information in real time about actors, characters, and music currently onscreen while you're watching an Apple TV+ movie or TV show (Apple TV+ subscription required). You can tap an actor to view their background and filmography page, or quickly view a song that's playing in the background and add it to an Apple Music playlist (Apple Music subscription required).

1. During playback, tap the screen to show the playback controls.
2. Tap any of the following options:
  - *Info*: See more information about what you're watching.
  - *InSight*: Tap an actor or character to see more info. If music information appears, tap the song to add it to a playlist in the Music app  (Apple TV+ and Apple Music subscriptions required).
  - *Continue Watching*: Go directly to Continue Watching, then tap an item to start watching it.
  - *Live Sports*: View live and upcoming sports events.

Subscriptions required for Apple TV+ (which in some countries and regions includes Friday Night Baseball, Sunday Night Soccer, or both) and MLS Season Pass (which includes Sunday Night Soccer). MLS Season Pass, Sunday Night Soccer, and Friday Night Baseball require iOS 16.2 or later. Not all features and content are available in all countries or regions.

## Find shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone

You can use the Search tab in the Apple TV app to look for TV shows and movies by specific categories like title, sport, and cast. The Apple TV+ tab gives you easy access to Apple TV+, a subscription streaming service featuring Apple Originals—award-winning films, series, compelling dramas, groundbreaking documentaries, kids' entertainment, comedies, and more.

*Note:* The availability of Apple Media Services varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).



[Stream \*Severance\* on the Apple TV app with a subscription](#)

## Browse Apple TV+

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apple TV+, then do either of the following:
  - Swipe left at the top of the screen to browse featured items.
  - Scroll down to see new releases, curated collections, and personalized recommendations, then swipe left or right to view available options.

**Tip:** Tap a row title to view all items in a category or view more information about a collection.

You can also tap the Home, Store, and Library tabs to see content specific to those categories.

## Search for specific shows, movies, and more

When you're looking for something specific—like a show or actor—use the Search tab.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then either tap a category, or tap the search field to see previous searches or enter a new search.

**Tip:** When you want to search, simply describe what you're looking for using natural language—for example, "Popular dramas with a twist."

Subscriptions required for Apple TV+ (which in some countries and regions includes Friday Night Baseball, Sunday Night Soccer, or both) and MLS Season Pass (which includes Sunday Night Soccer). MLS Season Pass, Sunday Night Soccer, and Friday Night Baseball require iOS 16.2 or later. Not all features and content are available in all countries or regions.

## Personalize the Home tab in the Apple TV app on iPhone

The Home tab brings your favorite shows, movies, channels, and sports together in one place. Pick up where you left off with Continue Watching, or discover Apple TV channels and streaming apps—personalized just for you.

Draft  
Note: The availability of Apple Media Services varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

## Pick up where you left off in the Continue Watching row

The Continue Watching row displays content you've already started to watch or plan to watch. Shows and movies appear in the order you're most likely to want to watch them. For example, when a TV episode finishes, the next episode automatically appears in Continue Watching. When a live sports event for a team you follow is in progress, it appears first in the Continue Watching list if it's available to watch in the Apple TV app.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, swipe through the Continue Watching row, then tap an item.

If the item is available for you to watch, it begins playing immediately.

Note: The Continue Watching row on the Home tab displays movies, TV shows, and live sports events from any app or channel you connected to the Apple TV app. For more information on connecting apps and channels, see [Discover channels and apps](#).

## Add or remove an item in your Watchlist

You can add movies and TV shows that you want to save for later to your Watchlist. Movies and TV shows in your Watchlist appear in the Continue Watching and Watchlist rows.

Note: When you add sports events, they appear in the Continue Watching and Watchlist rows when they're live.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Add an item to your Watchlist:* Touch and hold the item, then tap Add to Watchlist.
  - *Remove an item from your Watchlist:* Touch and hold the item in the Continue Watching or Watchlist row, then tap Remove from Watchlist.
  - *Resume watching on another device:* You can see your Watchlist in the Apple TV app on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, Apple Vision Pro, or supported smart TV where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).

Items added to your Watchlist appear in the Continue Watching row and the Watchlist row on the Home tab.

## Discover channels and apps

The Apple TV app recommends new content or the next episode in a series you watch from a connected app (supported streaming apps only).

1. Go to Apple TV app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, scroll down to the Channels & Apps row, then swipe left to browse either of the following:
  - *Channels & Apps:* Directly access all the channels you subscribe to or apps you connected to the Apple TV app.
  - *More to Explore:* Find new channels or apps to subscribe to or watch.
3. Tap an item to open it.

Your channels and apps appear in the **Channels & Apps** row in the Home tab across all your devices where you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#).

For a list of video apps available with the Apple TV app, see the Apple Support article [Availability of supported apps in the Apple TV app](#).

## Buy, rent, or pre-order items in the Apple TV app on iPhone

You can buy, rent, or pre-order TV shows and movies in the Apple TV app. Once you find something you want to watch, you can purchase it, rent it (if it's a movie), or choose how to watch it (if it's available on multiple channels and apps).

**Note:** The availability of Apple Media Services varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

### Browse movies and TV shows in the Store tab

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Store, then do either of the following:
  - Swipe left or right at the top of the screen to browse featured items.
  - Scroll down to see top charts, new releases, great deals, and more, then swipe left or right to view available options.
3. Tap an item to see previews, ratings, descriptions, and viewing information.

**Tip:** Tap a row title to view all items in a category or view more information about a collection.

### Buy, rent, or pre-order items

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Store, then tap an item to see its details.
3. Choose any of the following options (not all options are available for all titles):
  - *Buy:* Purchased items are added to your library.
  - *Rent:* When you rent a movie, you have 30 days to start watching it. After you start watching the movie, you can play it as many times as you want for 48 hours, after which the rental period ends. When the rental period ends, the movie is deleted.
  - *Pre-order:* When the pre-ordered item becomes available, your payment method is billed, and you receive an email notification. If you turned on automatic downloads, the item is automatically downloaded to your iPhone.
4. Confirm your selection, then complete the payment or pre-order.

You can [find your purchases and rentals in your library](#) and play them in the Apple TV app.

When you purchase access to movies, TV shows, music, music videos, ebooks, audiobooks, or ringtones from Apple, you also have the option to permanently download these items to a compatible iPhone, iPad, Mac, or PC. Apple cannot revoke your downloaded content, and you can always access your downloaded content without an internet connection.

# Watch sports

## Watch sports in the Apple TV app on iPhone

The Sports row gives you access to a wide array of live and scheduled sports events, including access to [subscription-only](#) features such as Friday Night Baseball and Sunday Night Soccer included with an Apple TV+ subscription, or Major League Soccer with MLS Season Pass.

You can see live games with up-to-the-minute scores, browse upcoming games, and access pregame and postgame shows.

### Browse sports

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, scroll down, then tap Sports.
3. Do either of the following:
  - Swipe left at the top of the screen to browse featured events.  
Tap an event to get more information, or tap Add to Watchlist to [add it to your Watchlist](#).
  - Scroll down to a category row, then swipe left or right to view available options.

**Tip:** Tap a row title to view all items in a category or view more information about a collection.

### Watch live sports

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, scroll down, then tap Sports.
3. To start watching, tap a sports event in progress, then tap Watch Live to tune in to the live broadcast, or Start Over to watch from the beginning.

If you haven't subscribed to the channel or app, tap Open In, then follow the onscreen instructions.

*Note:* Sports events [added to your Watchlist](#) appear in the Continue Watching row when they're live.

If you want to receive live updates for a game on the Lock Screen, tap Follow Live. See [Access features from the Lock Screen](#).

Select games may also show the current score and play-by-play updates on the game page.

To hide the scores of live games, go to Settings  > Apps > TV, then turn off Show Sports Scores.

Subscriptions required for Apple TV+ (which in some countries and regions includes Friday Night Baseball, Sunday Night Soccer, or both) and MLS Season Pass (which includes Sunday Night Soccer). MLS Season Pass, Sunday Night Soccer, and Friday Night Baseball require iOS 16.2 or later. Not all features and content are available in all countries or regions.

# Follow teams with My Sports in the Apple TV app on iPhone

You can add your favorite teams to My Sports to see their games in Continue Watching and [receive notifications](#) when they're about to play.

When you turn on syncing for My Sports, the teams you follow in Apple TV are automatically followed in Apple News, Apple Sports, and other supported apps. If you already set up My Sports in the News app, the teams you follow appear in the Apple TV app.

If you have an iPhone, iPad, or Mac [signed in to the same Apple Account](#), you can also see the teams you're following with My Sports in the Apple TV app and in the News app on those devices.

*Note:* My Sports isn't available in all countries or regions.

## Follow your favorite teams

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, scroll down, then tap Sports.
3. Scroll down, then tap Follow Your Teams.
4. Tap Turn On to sync your teams across Apple News, Apple TV, and other supported apps.
5. Tap a sports league (MLS, MLB, or NBA, for example), then tap  next to a team to follow it.
6. When you're finished, tap .

## Manage My Sports

You can follow and unfollow teams after you set up My Sports.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, scroll down, then tap Sports.
3. Scroll down, tap Manage My Sports at the bottom of the screen, then do any of the following:
  - *Follow teams:* Tap a league, tap  next to a team you want to follow, then tap Done.
  - *Unfollow teams:* Tap  next to a team you want to unfollow, tap Unfollow, then tap .

# Watch MLS in the Apple TV app on iPhone

MLS in the Apple TV app gives you access to Major League Soccer events when you subscribe to MLS Season Pass.

You can also follow your favorite MLS clubs using My Sports (not available in all countries or regions), catch up on key plays during a live game, and watch on-demand content—including MLS club profiles, player profiles, league and club highlights from the last season, and more.

**Note:** Some MLS games may be available to watch on a promotional basis, but full access to all games, shows, and features requires an [MLS Season Pass subscription](#). MLS Season Pass isn't available in all countries or regions.

## Watch Major League Soccer with MLS Season Pass

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap MLS Season Pass.
3. Do either of the following:
  - *Explore featured matches:* Swipe left or right at the top of the screen.
  - *Browse available matches, league standings, and more:* Scroll down to a category row, then swipe left or right to view available options.

**Tip:** Tap a row title to view all items in a category or view more information about a collection.

4. To start watching, tap an event or match.

If a match is in progress, tap Watch Live to tune in to the live broadcast, or Start Over to watch from the beginning.

**Note:** Sports events [added to your Watchlist](#) appear in the Continue Watching row when they're live.

To hide the scores of live games, go to the Settings app , tap Apps, tap TV, then turn off Show Sports Scores.

## Follow your favorite MLS clubs

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap MLS Season Pass.
3. Scroll down, then tap Browse All Clubs.
4. Touch and hold a club, then tap Follow Team.

**Note:** Clubs you follow appear at the front of the Browse All Clubs row

You can also follow MLS clubs with My Sports. See [Follow teams with My Sports](#).

**Note:** When you follow a club, their matches automatically appear in Continue Watching.

## Catch up with Key Plays

When you start watching a live match in progress, you can catch up to the action by watching all the key plays you missed. You can also browse and watch key plays at any time during the match.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap MLS Season Pass.

3. Do either of the following: Draft

- *Catch up to a match in progress:* Tap a match, then tap Catch Up.
- *Go to key plays during a match:* While watching a match, tap the screen to show the playback controls, tap Key Plays, then select a key play from the collection row.

Key plays start playing in order from the beginning of the match if you're catching up, or from the key play you select from the Key Play menu.

4. While watching key plays, you can do either of the following:

- *Browse the collection:* Swipe left or right.
- *Return to the match:* Tap Jump to Live in the lower-left corner of the screen, or to resume playback from the last spot you were watching, tap <.

Subscriptions required for Apple TV+ (which in some countries and regions includes Friday Night Baseball, Sunday Night Soccer, or both) and MLS Season Pass (which includes Sunday Night Soccer). MLS Season Pass, Sunday Night Soccer, and Friday Night Baseball require iOS 16.2 or later. Not all features and content are available in all countries or regions.

## Manage your library in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Your library contains shows and movies you purchased, rented, and downloaded. If you [use Family Sharing](#), you can also view purchases made by family members.

### Browse your library

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then do any of the following:
  - *Browse recently purchased items:* Tap Recent Purchases.
  - *Browse movies:* Tap Movies. To browse content available in 4K, tap 4K HDR.
  - *Browse rented items:* Tap Rentals.
  - *Browse downloaded items:* Tap Downloaded.
  - *Browse content in your library by genre:* Tap Genres.

### Watch purchases, rentals, and downloaded content

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, tap Purchases, Downloaded, or Rentals, then tap an item to see its details.
3. To start watching, tap the Play button.

*Note:* For rentals, the time remaining in the rental period is shown.

To watch the item later when iPhone isn't connected to the internet, Tap  in the top-right corner.

### Share purchases made by family members

Draft

If you [use Family Sharing](#), you and your Draft family members can share purchases in the Apple TV app.

Tap Library, tap Family Sharing, then choose a family member.

## Remove a downloaded item

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Downloaded.
3. Swipe left on the item you want to remove, then tap Delete.

Removing an item from iPhone doesn't delete it from your purchases in iCloud. You can download the item to iPhone again later.

Not all features and content are available in all countries or regions.

## Add your TV provider to the Apple TV app on iPhone

You can add your cable or satellite service to the Apple TV app and watch shows and movies on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, Apple Vision Pro, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices.

Note: Support for this feature may vary depending on your TV provider.

### Add your cable or satellite service to the Apple TV app

Single sign-on provides immediate access to all the supported video apps in your subscription package.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, then tap TV Provider.
3. Choose your TV provider, then sign in with your provider credentials.

If your TV provider isn't listed, sign in directly from the app you want to use.

## Change the Apple TV app settings on iPhone

You can adjust streaming and download settings for the Apple TV app. You can also change how the Apple TV app uses your viewing history to provide personalized recommendations and choose what appears in the Apple TV app, including live sports scores and items in Continue Watching.

### Change streaming and download options

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap TV.
3. Choose streaming options:
  - *Use Cellular Data:* Turn off to limit streaming to Wi-Fi connections.
  - *Wi-Fi:* Choose High Quality or Data Saver.

High Quality requires a faster internet connection and uses more data.

◦ *Use Cellular Data:* Turn off to limit downloads to Wi-Fi connections.

◦ *Wi-Fi:* Choose High Quality or Fast Downloads.

High Quality results in slower downloads and uses more data.

◦ *Languages:* Choose a language. Each added audio language increases the download size. To remove a language, swipe left on the language you want to remove, then tap Delete.

The default language is the primary language for your country or region. If you turned on Audio Descriptions in Accessibility Settings, audio descriptions are also downloaded.

## Change how your viewing history is used

By default, what you watch on your iPhone affects your personalized recommendations and Watchlist on all your devices where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).

You can do any of the following:

- *Clear your viewing history:* Go to the Apple TV app , tap Home, tap your picture or initials at the top right, then tap Clear Play History.
- *Turn off personalization features based on your viewing history:* Go to the Settings app , tap Apps, then tap TV, then turn off Use Play History.

## Change autoplay settings

By default, when you finish watching an episode of a TV show, the next episode automatically plays. And when you finish a series, movie, or sporting event, recommended content automatically plays. You can change these settings.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Automatically play the next episode:* Turn Play Next Episode on or off.
  - *Automatically play content recommended for you after you finish a series, movie, or sporting event:* Turn Play a Recommendation on or off.

## Change your device preferences

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap TV.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Show or hide live sports scores:* Turn off Show Sports Scores.
  - *Use your viewing history for personalized recommendations and Continue Watching:* Turn on Use Play History.

Not all features and content are available in all countries or regions.

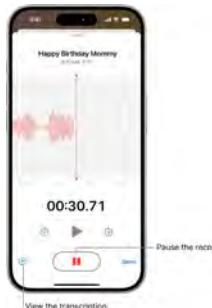
# Voice Memos

# Make a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

You can use iPhone as a portable recording device to record personal notes, classroom lectures, musical ideas, and more. You can also fine-tune your recordings with editing tools like trim, replace, and resume.

Record voice memos using the built-in microphone, a supported headset, or an external microphone.

When Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings or iCloud preferences, your recordings [appear and update automatically](#) on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).



## Make a basic recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

*Note:* To make it easier to find and open the Voice Memos app, you can [move it from the Utilities folder to the Home Screen](#).

2. Tap (●) to begin recording.

To adjust the recording level, move the microphone closer to or farther from what you're recording.

3. Tap (●) to stop recording.

Your recording is saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if [Location Services is turned on](#) in Settings (i) > Privacy & Security. To change the name, tap the recording, then tap the name and type a new one.

To fine-tune your recording, see [Edit or delete a recording](#).

*Note:* For your privacy, when you use Voice Memos to make recordings, an orange dot appears at the top of your screen to indicate your microphone is in use.

## Filter out background sounds

In Voice Memos, you can choose to include or exclude background sounds in your recording.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. [Open Control Center](#).
3. Tap Voice Memos at the top of Control Center.
4. To filter out background sounds in your recording, select Voice Isolation .
5. To include the background sounds, select Wide Spectrum.

*Note:* Wide Spectrum isn't available on all models.

## Record stereo, mono, or Spatial Audio

**Note:** Stereo recording isn't available on all devices. Draft

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Voice Memos.
3. Tap Recording Mode, then choose one of the following:
  - **Stereo:** Separates audio playback between the left and right ears.
  - **Mono:** Audio playback is the same in both ears.
  - **Spatial Audio:** Audio playback is immersive from all directions on iPhone.

When Stereo Recording is selected, Voice Memos records using multiple microphones on your iPhone and with right and left audio channels. If you listen to the recording through headphones, you hear different sounds from different microphones; however, the waveform display still looks the same.

## Use the advanced recording features

You can make a recording in parts, pausing and resuming as you record.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap  to begin a recording.

To adjust the recording level, move the microphone closer to or farther away from what you're recording.

To see more details while you're recording, swipe up from the top of the waveform.
3. Tap  to stop recording; tap Resume to continue.
4. To review your recording, tap .

To change where playback begins, drag the waveform left or right across the playhead before you tap .
5. To save the recording, tap Done.

Your recording is saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if [Location Services is turned on](#) in Settings  > Privacy & Security. To change the name, tap the recording, tap the name, then type a new name.

To fine-tune your recording, see [Edit or delete a recording](#).

## Mute the start and stop tones

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap  to begin recording.
3. While recording, use the iPhone volume down button to turn the volume all the way down.

## Use another app while recording

While you're recording, you can use another app as long as it doesn't play audio on your iPhone.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap  to begin recording.

3. While you're recording, go to the [Home Screen](#), then open another app.

If the other app starts playing audio, Voice Memos stops recording.

On [supported models](#), you can see your recording in progress in the Dynamic Island at the top of the Home Screen and in other apps. Tap the Dynamic Island to expand it, or navigate back to Voice Memos. See [Use the Dynamic Island](#).



If Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings or iCloud preferences, your recording is saved in iCloud and appears automatically on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. See [Keep recordings up to date](#).

Recordings using the built-in microphone are mono, unless you [turn on Stereo Recording](#) in Settings. You can also use an external stereo microphone that works with iPhone to record stereo. Look for accessories marked with the Apple "Made for iPhone" or "Works with iPhone" logo.

## View a Voice Memos transcription on iPhone

Speech in your audio recordings can be transcribed to text in Voice Memos. You can view the transcription while you're recording or after.

**Note:** Audio transcription is available on iPhone 12 or later in English (all variants), Spanish, Portuguese, Italian, French, German, Japanese, Korean, Simplified Chinese, and Traditional Chinese. It's not available in all countries or regions.

If you open a recording made in an earlier version of Voice Memos (iOS 17 or earlier), Voice Memos will transcribe it automatically if it includes recorded speech.

### View a transcription while recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap ● to begin recording.
3. Swipe up from the top of the waveform, then tap ↗ to watch the transcription live.

The waveform disappears temporarily, and the transcription appears, with the current word highlighted. To return to the waveform view, tap ↘.

4. Tap || to pause recording; tap Resume to continue.
5. To save the recording, tap Done.

## View or copy transcribed text after Recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap the recording with the transcript you want to view.
3. Tap ..., then do one of the following:
  - *Copy part of the transcript:* Choose View Transcript, select the text you want to copy, then tap Copy.
  - *Copy the entire transcript:* Choose Copy Transcript.

You can open another document—a Mail message or text file, for example—and paste the text into it.

## Search for text in titles and transcriptions

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Swipe down from the top of the list of recordings to show the search field.
3. In the search field, enter the text you want to find.

The list shows only recordings with that text—either in the title or in the audio transcription.

When you select a term in the transcription, the playhead appears at that location in the audio waveform. To return to the waveform, tap ☐.

## Play a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

You can play audio you recorded on your iPhone using the playback controls.

You can also adjust settings to change playback speed, reduce background noise, and fill in silences.

**Note:** Changing these settings doesn't affect the recording itself. The setting you choose for a recording stays with that specific recording and is applied each time you play the recording. It doesn't apply to other recordings, and isn't included with the recording when you share it.



Control	Description
	Play
	Pause
	Skip backward 15 seconds

Control	Draft Description
	Skip forward 15 seconds

**Tip:** While the recording is open, you can tap its name to rename it.

## Change the playback speed

You can play a recording at a faster or slower speed.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to play, then tap .
3. Tap or , then drag the slider toward the tortoise or toward the rabbit for a slower speed, or toward the rabbit for a faster speed.
4. Tap , then tap to play the recording.

## Enhance a recording

You can turn on Enhance Recording to reduce background noise and echo when you play the recording.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to enhance, then tap .
3. Tap Options, then turn on Enhance Recording.
4. Tap , then tap to play the recording.

## Skip over gaps when playing back a recording

Voice Memos can analyze your audio and automatically skip over gaps when playing it.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap the recording you want to play, then tap .
3. Tap Options, then turn on Skip Silence.
4. Tap , then tap to play the recording.

## Reset the playback options

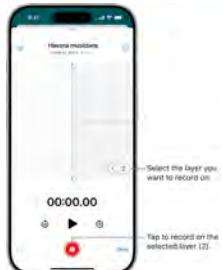
You can return all the playback options for a recording to their original settings at the same time.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap the recording you want to turn off playback options for, then tap .
3. Tap Options, then tap Reset.

# Add a second layer to a Voice Memos recording on iPhone

On iPhone 16 Pro and iPhone 16 Pro Max, you can record a vocal layer on top of an instrumental recording without using headphones. This allows you to capture a musical inspiration—add vocals or a voiceover to an existing instrumental recording, try out lyrics, harmonize with instrumental music, and more.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to add a vocal layer to, then tap  to view the waveform.
3. Tap .



4. Tap , then record your second layer.

In the list of recordings, layered recordings are indicated by .

Although you can only create a layered recording on an iPhone 16 Pro or an iPhone 16 Pro Max, you can play a layered recording on any device.

**Note:** Layered recordings are in QTA (QuickTime Audio) format. They won't appear on devices with iOS 18.1, iPadOS 18.1, macOS Sequoia 15.1, or earlier. However, when you [separate the layers](#), each layer is in .m4a format and *will* appear on devices with iOS 18.1, iPadOS 18.1, macOS Sequoia 15.1, or earlier.

Only the first layer can be transcribed or [recorded in stereo](#). (See [View a Voice Memos transcription](#) for the hardware, software, and languages that support transcription.) You can edit both layers of a layered recording together, unless you [separate them](#).

## Mix the layers

After recording the second layer, you can mix the two layers.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap the layered recording you want to mix.
3. Tap  to view the waveform, then tap .
4. Drag the Layer Mix slider to mix the layers.

## Separate the layers

After recording the second layer, you can separate the two layers to edit or play them separately.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. While viewing the waveform, tap , then tap Separate Layers.
3. Tap Done to return to the list of recordings.

The two layers appear as separate recordings in the list. You can select them, [edit them](#), and play them separately.

## Import layered recordings into Logic Pro

If Voice Memos is turned on in [iCloud settings](#), you can open a layered recording from your iPhone on your iPad where you're signed in to the same Apple Account and [export the recording to Files](#). Then you can [import the layered recording into Logic Pro for iPad](#) for editing. The two layers open automatically as two distinct tracks in Logic Pro 11.1.1 or later.

## Export a Voice Memos recording to Files on iPhone

Any recording can be exported from Voice Memos to the Files app on your iPhone. Layered recordings are in QTA (QuickTime Audio) format. One-layer recordings are in .m4a format.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap the recording you want to export, tap , then tap .
3. Scroll down, tap Save to Files, navigate to the location where you want to save the recording, then tap Save.

## Edit or delete a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

You can fine-tune your recordings using the editing tools. Remove parts, record over parts, or replace an entire recording. You can also delete a recording you no longer need.

### Edit a voice recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to edit, tap , then tap .
3. Tap  at the top right, then drag the yellow trim handles to enclose the section you want to keep or delete.

You can pinch open to zoom in on the waveform for more precise editing.



To check your selection, tap .

4. To keep the selection (and delete the rest of the recording), tap Trim, or to delete the selection, tap Delete.

5. Tap Apply, then tap Done. Draft
6. Tap Save Recording to overwrite the original recording, or tap Save as New Recording to save the edited version as a new recording (leaving the original as it was).

## Replace a recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to replace, tap ..., then tap Edit Recording.
3. Drag the waveform to position the playhead where you want to start recording new audio.

You can pinch open to zoom in on the waveform for more precise placement.
4. Tap Replace to begin recording (the waveform turns red as you record).

Tap  to pause; tap Resume to continue.
5. To check your recording, tap ▶.
6. Tap Done, then tap Save Recording to replace the original recording, or tap Save as New Recording to save the changes as a new recording (leaving the original as it was).

## Delete a recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to delete, then tap .
  - Tap Edit above the list of recordings, select one or more recordings, then tap .

Deleted recordings move to the Recently Deleted folder, where they're kept for 30 days by default. To change how long deleted recordings are kept, go to Settings (i) > Apps > Voice Memos > Clear Deleted, then select an option.

## Recover or erase a deleted recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Recently Deleted folder, then tap the recording you want to recover or erase.

If you don't see the Recently Deleted folder, tap < at the top left.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Recover the selected recording:* Tap Recover.
  - *Delete the selected recording:* Tap Delete.
  - *Recover everything in the Recently Deleted folder:* Tap Edit above the Recently Deleted list, then tap Recover All.
  - *Delete everything in the Recently Deleted folder:* Tap Edit above the Recently Deleted list, then tap Delete All.

# Keep recordings up to date in Voice Memos

Draft

# on iPhone

You can keep your audio recordings up to date automatically on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) and Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings.

To turn on Voice Memos in iCloud on your devices, do the following:

- *iOS or iPadOS:* Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > See All, then scroll down and turn on Voice Memos.
- *macOS Sequoia:* Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, then click your name in the sidebar. If you don't see your name, click "Sign in" to sign in to your Apple Account or create one. Click iCloud, click See All, then scroll down and turn on Voice Memos.

## Organize recordings in Voice Memos on iPhone

You can mark audio recordings as favorites and organize your recordings into folders.

*Note:* Apple Watch recordings, recently deleted recordings, and favorites are grouped into Smart Folders, which automatically gather files by type and subject matter.

### Mark recordings as favorites

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. In the list of recordings, do any of the following:
  - Tap the recording you want to mark as a favorite, tap , then tap .
  - Tap Edit above the list of recordings, select one or more recordings, tap , tap Move to Folder, then tap Favorites. (If there isn't a Favorites folder, create one by entering Favorites in the field.)

Recordings marked as favorites automatically appear in the Favorites folder.

### Organize recordings into folders

You can group related recordings together into folders so you can locate them easily.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap Edit above the list of recordings.
3. Select one or more recordings, tap , tap Move to Folder, then choose a folder.

To create a new folder, tap , type a name for the folder, then tap Save.

To view your folders, tap ; tap a folder to check its contents.

To return to the list of recordings, tap All Recordings.

### Delete or reorder folders

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap  to go to the list of folders.

3. Tap Edit above the folders, then ~~Draft~~ of the following:
  - *Delete a folder:* Tap  next to the folder, then tap .
  - *Change the order of the folders:* Drag  next to any folder.
4. Tap Done.

## Search for or rename a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

You can search for recordings or rename any recording.

### Search for a recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Swipe down from the middle of the list of recordings to reveal the search field.
3. Tap the search field, enter part or all of the recording name, then tap Search.

*Note:* You can also search for a word or phrase in a transcript by entering it in this field.

### Rename a recording

A recording is initially saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if [Location Services is turned on](#) in [Settings](#)  > Privacy & Security. You can change the name.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap the recording, tap the name, then type a new one.

## Share a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

You can share one or more audio recordings with others (or send it to your Mac or another device) using AirDrop, Mail, Messages, and more.

### Share a recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to share, then tap .
3. Tap Share, choose a sharing option, select or enter a recipient, then tap Done or .

### Share more than one recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap Edit above the list of recordings, then select the recordings you want to share.
3. Tap , choose a sharing option, select or enter a recipient, then tap  or Done.

## Duplicate a recording in Voice Memos on

Draft

You can duplicate a recording if you need another copy of it. You can also make changes to the copy, save it, and [give it a new name](#).

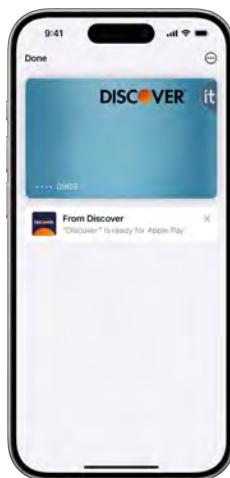
1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. In the list of recordings, tap a recording, tap ..., then tap Duplicate.

The duplicate appears right below the original version in the list and has "copy" added to its name. To change the name, tap it, then type a new one.

## Wallet

### About Apple Wallet on iPhone

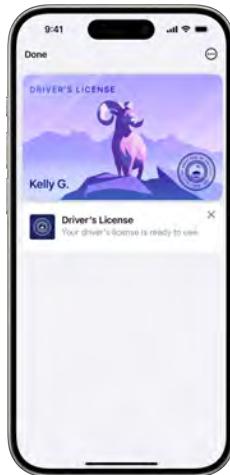
Use the Wallet app (in the Utilities folder) to securely keep your eligible cards in one convenient place for easy access.



#### Credit and debit cards

Add your credit and debit cards to make purchases with [Apple Pay](#) in stores, in apps, and online. You can even pay with rewards or choose a flexible payment option. (Requires eligible cards from participating issuers.)

#### [Set up Apple Pay](#)



## Identity cards

Draft

Present your eligible identification card at select TSA checkpoints, badge into your workplace, access places on your college campus, and more.

[Add identity cards](#)



## Transit and tickets

Breeze through turnstiles by simply holding your iPhone to the reader. You can conveniently check the balance and top up a transit card, or see the latest gate information on a boarding pass. (Requires a supported card or pass.)

[Pay for transit](#)



## Keys

Unlock your home, hotel room, car, and more with compatible digital keys.

[Use digital keys](#)

Draft



And more

- Passes, coupons, reward cards, and loyalty cards
- Verifiable COVID-19 vaccination cards
- Apple Account balance
- AutoFill cards

## Set up Apple Pay in Wallet on iPhone

Using [Apple Pay](#) can be simpler than using a physical card, and safer too. Apple Pay is designed with your privacy and security in mind. Your actual card numbers are never stored on your device or shared with merchants, and each transaction uses a unique security code. With your cards stored in Apple Wallet, you can use Apple Pay to make secure payments in stores, for transit, in apps, and online wherever Apple Pay is accepted.

**Note:** Apple Pay and its features aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Countries and regions that support Apple Pay](#).



Add a debit or credit card for Apple Pay

You can add an eligible card from a participating card issuer. Many major credit and debit cards from banks and credit unions are supported. You can check with your card issuer or try adding your card to see if it's accepted.

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap +. You may be asked to [sign in to your Apple Account](#).  
Draft
3. Add any of the following types of cards:
  - *A new card:* Tap Debit or Credit Card, tap Continue, then hold iPhone near the chip on the card. If the card doesn't have a chip, tap Enter Card Details Manually, then enter the card number or tap Scan Card with Camera.

*Note:* If you can't add your card, it may not be supported by Apple Pay, or your issuer may need to approve it first. Contact your bank or card issuer, or see the Apple Support article [If you can't add a card to Apple Wallet to use with Apple Pay](#).

- *Apple Card:* See [Use Apple Card](#).
- *Your previous cards:* Tap Previous Cards, then choose any cards you previously used. These cards may include the card associated with your Apple Account, cards you have in Apple Wallet on your other devices, and cards you [saved for AutoFill](#). Tap Continue, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- *A card from a supported app:* Below "From Apps on Your iPhone", tap the app of your bank or card issuer.

4. Verify your information with your bank or card issuer. This might include receiving a text message, answering security questions, or confirming through your bank's app.

**Tip:** If you have a paired Apple Watch, you have the option to also add the card to your watch.

## Connect your account to Wallet

With an eligible account, you can see your account balance, available credit, full transaction history, and more in Wallet.

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the card you want to connect.
3. Tap Get Started below the card (or tap ..., tap Card Details, then tap Get Account Balance & Activity), then follow the onscreen instructions to connect your account.

If you don't see Get Started or Get Account Balance & Activity, the card issuer doesn't support this feature.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [View your account balance and full transaction history in the Wallet app](#).

## Pay later or with installments

With pay later options in Apple Wallet, you can split purchases into installments when using Apple Pay in stores, in apps, and online. (Availability varies by country and region and is subject to credit approval.)

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap +. You may be asked to [sign in to your Apple Account](#).
3. Tap Pay Later Options, then follow the onscreen instructions.

See the Apple Support article [Pay with installments using Apple Pay](#).

## View card details and change settings

Draft

If you have Apple Card, see [Use Apple Card](#). For other cards, do the following:

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap a card.

**Note:** The latest transactions may appear, showing authorized amounts that may differ from the amount of the payment charged to your account. For example, a gas station may request an authorization of \$99, even though you pumped only \$25 worth of gasoline. To see the final charges, see the statement from your card issuer, which includes all Apple Pay transactions.

3. Tap  to see any of the following:

- The last four digits of the device account number—the number transmitted to the merchant when you use Apple Pay
- The physical card number (if you [added the card information for AutoFill](#))
- The virtual card number (if supported)

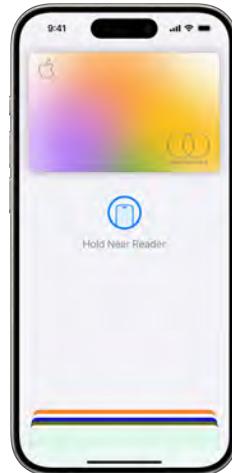
4. To see more details, tap , then tap any of the following:

- *Card Details:* See more information, contact the card issuer, change your billing address, or remove the card from Wallet.
- *Notifications:* Turn on or off the transaction history and notifications.

## Use Apple Pay for contactless payments on iPhone

With your eligible cards stored in the Wallet app on iPhone, you can use [Apple Pay](#) for secure, contactless payments in stores, restaurants, and more.

**Note:** Apple Pay isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Countries and regions that support Apple Pay](#).



Find places that accept Apple Pay

You can use Apple Pay where you see contactless payment symbols such as the following:



**Note:** In addition to accepting Apple Pay<sup>Draft</sup>, the merchant must accept your payment card and payment network.

In other countries and regions, you may see different contactless payment symbols. See the Apple Support article [Learn where to use Apple Pay](#).

## Pay with your default card on an iPhone with Face ID

1. Double-click the side button.
2. When your default card appears, authenticate with Face ID or your passcode.

**Tip:** With a [connected account](#) such as Apple Card, you can quickly check the account balance and remaining credit by tapping the card. Tap the card again when you're ready to pay.

3. Hold the top of your iPhone near the card reader until you see Done or a checkmark on the screen.

## Pay with your default card on an iPhone with Touch ID

1. Double-click the Home button, then rest your finger on Touch ID.

**Tip:** With a [connected account](#) such as Apple Card, you can quickly check the account balance and remaining credit by tapping the card. Tap the card again when you're ready to pay.

2. Hold the top of your iPhone near the card reader until you see Done or a checkmark on the screen.

## Pay with a different card instead of your default card

1. When your default card appears, tap the cards at the bottom of the screen, then choose another card.

**Tip:** To quickly check your card account balance or available credit (if supported), tap the card. Tap the card again when you're ready to pay.

2. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
3. Hold the top of your iPhone near the card reader until you see Done or a checkmark on the screen.

## Pay with rewards or installments

**Note:** If you have Location Services turned on, the location of your iPhone at the time you make a payment may be sent to Apple and the card issuer to help prevent fraud. See [Control the location information you share](#).

# Use Apple Pay in apps and on the web on iPhone

You can make purchases using [Apple Pay](#) in apps, in App Clips, and on the web wherever you see the Apple Pay button.

**Note:** Apple Pay isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Countries and regions that support Apple Pay](#).



## Pay in apps, App Clips, or Safari

1. During checkout, tap the Apple Pay button.
2. Review the payment information and set any of the following:
  - Payment method

You can choose a different payment card; you can also pay with rewards or installments (available on cards from participating banks and card providers in certain markets; subject to eligibility and approval).

- Billing and shipping addresses
- Contact information

**Tip:** If you subscribe to iCloud+, you can [use Hide My Email](#) to keep your real email address private.

3. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete the payment.

See the Apple Support articles [Pay with rewards using Apple Pay](#) and [Pay with installments using Apple Pay](#).

## Use Apple Pay in third-party browsers on Mac, Window devices, and other devices

When you shop in a supported third-party web browser, you can complete the purchase with Apple Pay using the payment information on your iPhone. (Not available in all countries or regions.)

1. At checkout, click Apple Pay, then [scan the code](#) using your iPhone camera.
2. On your iPhone, review the payment information and set any of the following:
  - Payment method
  - Billing and shipping addresses
  - Contact information
3. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete the payment.

## View preauthorized payments

You can see preauthorized payments made with Apple Pay for future and recurring charges such as subscriptions.

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap ..., then tap Payments.
3. Tap a payment to see the details.
4. To cancel your service or manage the payment methods, contact the merchant directly. (For participating merchants, tap Manage.)
5. To prevent the merchant from automatically charging your card, tap Revoke Payment Authorization.

*Note:* Revoking the payment authorization doesn't cancel your service.

## Turn on order tracking

When you make purchases from participating merchants, you can track your orders in the Wallet app  on your iPhone.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Wallet & Apple Pay, then scroll down and tap Order Tracking.
3. Turn on any of the following:
  - *Apple Pay:* Orders from participating merchants will be automatically added to Wallet when you use Apple Pay on your iPhone, iPad, or Mac.
  - *Mail:* Allow Apple Intelligence & Siri to update Wallet with order tracking information from your emails on your iPhone, iPad, or Mac.

*Note:* Apple Intelligence isn't available for all devices, languages, or regions. To check whether Apple Intelligence is available for your device, language, and region, see the Apple Support article [How to get Apple Intelligence](#).

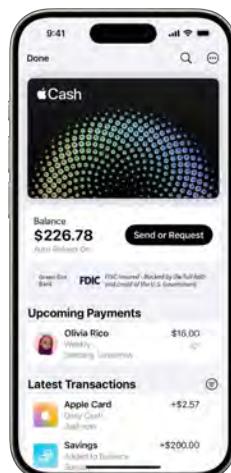
To see your tracked orders, go to the Wallet app , tap ..., then tap Orders.

For details, see the Apple Support article [Track orders and purchases in Apple Wallet](#).

## Use Apple Cash on iPhone

With Apple Cash, you can send and receive money, get cash back from Apple Card transactions, make purchases, and transfer your Apple Cash balance to your bank account.

*Note:* Apple Cash is only available in the U.S.



Draft

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Wallet & Apple Pay, turn on Apple Cash, then follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [Set up Apple Cash](#).

## Make purchases with Apple Cash

Where Visa is accepted, you can make purchases with Apple Cash in the following ways:

- *With Apple Pay:* Use [Apple Pay](#) for purchases [at contactless payment terminals](#) and [in apps and on the web](#).
- *With the virtual card number:* If Apple Pay isn't supported, [use AutoFill during checkout](#). Or go to the Wallet app , tap Apple Cash, then tap  to see the card number, expiration date, and security code.

## Send, request, and receive payments with Apple Cash in Messages

Use Apple Cash to send and receive money with people who use [iMessage](#).

**Note:** In a group conversation, only people with Apple Cash set up in their Apple Account can send and receive payments.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In an iMessage conversation, do one of the following:
  - Tap , tap Apple Cash, then enter the amount.
  - If there's an underlined monetary amount in a message bubble, tap it to preset the payment.
3. Do one of the following:
  - *Send or request a one-time payment:* Tap Send or Request.
  - *Set up a recurring payment:* Tap Show Keypad; tap Send Recurring Payment; enter the start date, frequency, and memo; then tap Send. (Recurring payments aren't available in a group conversation.)
4. Add a comment (optional), then tap .

You can also send or request Apple Cash in the Wallet app ; tap the Apple Cash card, tap Send or Request, then follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [Send and receive money with Apple Cash](#).

## Send Apple Cash with Tap to Cash

With Tap to Cash, you can send Apple Cash to someone by holding your iPhone or Apple Watch near their iPhone or Apple Watch, without having to share your phone number or email address.

**Note:** Tap to Cash is supported on all iPhone models with iOS 18 or later and all Apple Watch models with watchOS 11 or later.

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Apple Cash card, tap Send or Request, then tap Tap to Cash.
3. Enter the amount, add a note (optional), then tap Continue.

4. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
5. Hold your iPhone near the recipient's iPhone or Apple Watch.
6. Continue holding the devices near each other until the payment information appears on the recipient's screen.
7. The recipient can choose Accept or Decline.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [Use Tap to Cash](#).

## See transactions, set up recurring payments, transfer funds, and contact support

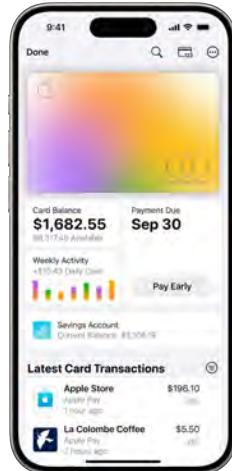
1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Apple Cash card, then tap ... .
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Add money or set up Auto Reload:* See the Apple Support article [Add money to Apple Cash](#).
  - *Transfer funds to your bank:* See the Apple Support article [Transfer money in Apple Cash to your bank account or debit card](#).
  - *Set up and manage recurring payments:* See the Apple Support article [Send and receive money with Apple Cash](#).
  - *View card details:* Update your bank account information, request transaction statements, contact support, and more.

Apple Cash and sending and receiving payments through Apple Pay are services provided by Green Dot Bank, member FDIC.

## Use Apple Card on iPhone

Apple Card is a credit card created by Apple and designed to help you lead a healthier financial life. You can sign up for Apple Card in the Wallet app on iPhone in minutes and start using it with [Apple Pay](#) right away in stores, in apps, or online worldwide. Apple Card gives you easy-to-understand, real-time views of your latest transactions and balance right in Wallet, and Apple Card support is available anytime by simply sending a text from Messages.

*Note:* Apple Card is only available in the U.S.



Apply for Apple Card

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap +, then tap Apply for Apple Card.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [How to apply for Apple Card](#).

## Make purchases with Apple Card

You can make purchases with Apple Card in the following ways:

- *With Apple Pay:* [At contactless payment terminals](#) and in apps and on the [web](#).
- *With the virtual card number:* If Apple Pay isn't supported, [use AutoFill during checkout](#). Or go to the Wallet app , tap Apple Card, then tap  to see the card number, expiration date, and security code.
- *With the titanium card:* In stores, restaurants, and other locations where Apple Pay isn't yet accepted, use the physical card.

## View transactions, make payments, and manage your Apple Card

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Apple Card.

3. Do any of the following:

- *Review your spending:* Scroll down to see recent transactions or tap  to search. Tap Activity to see your weekly, monthly, or yearly spending.

See the Apple Support article [See your Apple Card spending history](#).

- *Make a one-time payment or schedule automatic payments:* Tap the payment button. See the Apple Support article [How to make Apple Card payments](#).

- *Manage your account:* Tap ⋮ to review rewards and offers, see account details, contact support, manage notifications, and more.

**Tip:** [Add the Apple Card widget](#) to your Home Screen to see your balance, available credit, and spending activity at a glance.

Daily Cash may not be divided between Apple Cash and a Savings account. Apple Card owners and co-owners may individually change where their Daily Cash is deposited at any time. To open Savings, you must add Apple Card to Wallet on an iPhone or iPad with the latest version of iOS or iPadOS. Apple is not a financial institution. Apple Card and Savings are issued and provided by Goldman Sachs Bank USA, Salt Lake City Branch. Member FDIC.

Apple Cash is provided by Green Dot Bank. Member FDIC.

## Add identity cards to Wallet on iPhone

With your identity card in the Wallet app , you can easily present your ID at select locations by simply tapping your iPhone. You can also keep supported identity cards on Apple Watch.



Draft

## Add your driver's license or state ID (U.S. only)

You can easily and securely add your driver's license or state ID to the Wallet app, then use your iPhone or Apple Watch to present your license or ID at select Transportation Security Administration (TSA) security checkpoints and at participating businesses. You can also share in apps that require identity verification. (Supported on iPhone 8 and later with iOS 15.4 or later, and on Apple Watch Series 4 and later with watchOS 8.4 or later. The driver's license or state ID must be issued by a participating state. See the [IDs in Wallet website](#).)

1. In Wallet, tap +.
2. Tap Driver's License and ID Cards, then choose your state. (Available for participating states.)
3. Choose whether you want to add your license or ID to your iPhone only, or to both your iPhone and paired Apple Watch.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions to scan the front and back of your license or ID, then follow the prompts to confirm your identity.

See the Apple Support article [Present your driver's license from Apple Wallet](#).

## Add a Passport ID (U.S. only)

Create a digital ID in Wallet using your U.S. passport. It can be used at TSA checkpoints, in apps, and in person. See the Apple Support article [Can I add my Passport ID to Wallet?](#).

## Add a My Number Card (Japan only)

Intro to come.

## Add your student ID card

At participating campuses, you can add your contactless student ID card to the Wallet app, and then use your iPhone or Apple Watch to access locations where your student ID card is accepted, such as your dorm, the library, and campus events. You can even pay for laundry, snacks, and meals around campus.

1. Download the app that supports student ID cards for your school.
2. Open the app, sign in, then add your student ID card to Wallet.

See the Apple Support article [Use student ID cards in Wallet on your iPhone or Apple Watch](#).

## Add your employee badge

Draft

If you work at a participating corporate office, you can add your employee badge to the Wallet app , and then use your iPhone or Apple Watch to present your badge to readers at your workplace.

See an administrator for setup instructions, or see the Apple Support article [Add an employee badge to Apple Wallet](#).

## View the information on your ID

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap your ID.
3. To see more details, tap ⓘ.

## Pay for transit using iPhone

Depending on your local transit system, you can use your iPhone to pay for your fare with a [payment card in Apple Pay](#) or a transit card stored in the Wallet app .

*Note:* Not available in all countries or regions; see [Where you can ride transit using Apple Pay](#).



### Add a transit card to Wallet

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap +, then tap Transit Card.
3. Choose a transit card in the list—or search by location or card name—then follow the onscreen instructions.

To learn how to transfer your transit card, see the Apple Support article [Add a transit card to Apple Wallet](#).

### See your balance and add money

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap your transit card to see the balance and transactions.
3. Tap Add Money, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To learn more, see the Apple Support article [Top up your transit card with Apple Pay](#).

### View transit card details and change settings

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap your transit card, then tap ... Draft
3. Tap any of the following:
  - *Card Number*: View your account number.
  - *Card Details*: View your account balance; turn on Service Mode to get help at stations and kiosks; turn Express Transit on or off; or remove the card from Wallet.
  - *Notifications*: Turn notifications on or off.

## Pay for your ride with Express Transit

With Express Transit, you don't need to authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode, and you don't need to wake or unlock your device or open an app.

*Note:* Express Transit isn't available in all countries or regions.

1. If you have multiple cards for a transit network, set the default Express Transit card in Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay > Express Transit Card.

By default, Express Transit is turned on when you add an eligible card.
2. As you approach a fare gate or board the bus, make sure your device is turned on (it doesn't need to be connected to the internet).
3. Hold the top of your iPhone near the middle of the ticket gate scanner until you feel a vibration.

You might be able to use your Express Transit card even when your iPhone needs to be charged.

## Pay for transit at a fare gate

If you're not using Express Transit, do the following:

1. Make sure your device is turned on (it doesn't need to be connected to the internet).
2. As you approach a fare gate or board a bus, do one of the following:
  - *On an iPhone with Face ID*: Double-click the side button, then glance at iPhone to authenticate with Face ID, or enter your passcode.
  - *On an iPhone with Touch ID*: With the Lock Screen showing on your device, double-click the Home button, then rest your finger on Touch ID.
3. Hold the top of your iPhone near the middle of the ticket gate scanner until you feel a vibration.

## Use digital keys in Wallet on iPhone

In the Wallet app , you can store digital keys to your home, hotel room, car, and scooter. iPhone automatically presents the right key when you arrive at your door or vehicle, giving you access with just a tap using Near Field Communication (NFC).

### Unlock your home

With a compatible smart lock and a home key in Wallet, you can unlock your door with just a tap of your iPhone or Apple Watch.

See [Unlock your door with a home key on iPhone or Apple Watch](#).

## Access your apartment building or <sup>Draft</sup>condominium

Follow the instructions from your property company to add a resident key for your apartment building, condominium, or other shared living space to your iPhone or Apple Watch.

See the Apple Support article [Add a resident key to Apple Wallet on iPhone or Apple Watch](#).

## Unlock your hotel room

At participating hotels, you can add your room key to Apple Wallet from the hotel provider's app, check in without going to the lobby, and use your iPhone or Apple Watch to unlock your room.

See the Apple Support article [Add a hotel room key to Apple Wallet on your iPhone](#).

## Unlock and start your car

With a digital car key in Apple Wallet, you can lock, unlock, and start your compatible car using iPhone or Apple Watch.

See the Apple Support article [Add your car key to Apple Wallet on your iPhone or Apple Watch](#).

## Unlock and start your scooter

With a digital scooter key in Apple Wallet, you can lock, unlock, and start your compatible scooter using iPhone or Apple Watch.

See the Apple Support article [Add your scooter key to the Wallet app on your iPhone or Apple Watch](#).

# Use passes in Wallet on iPhone

Use the Wallet app to keep all your passes—such as loyalty and rewards cards, coupons, boarding passes, movie and event tickets, and more—in one convenient place for easy access. Passes can include useful information, such as the points on a loyalty card, the balance on your coffee card, a coupon's expiration date, or airport and boarding information for a flight.



## Add a pass to Apple Wallet

When you do something like purchase a ticket, you often have the option to add it to Apple Wallet. You may also get a supported pass from a website, app, QR code, AirDrop sharing, or after using Apple Pay with a participating merchant.

1. Tap Add to Apple Wallet.

Draft



*Note:* If you don't see Add to Apple Wallet, contact the merchant or company to make sure they support passes in Apple Wallet.

2. Tap Add in the upper-right corner or follow the onscreen instructions.

## View the pass details and settings

Passes can include useful information, such as the points on a loyalty card, the balance on your coffee card, a coupon's expiration date, or airport and boarding information for a flight.

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the pass.
3. To see more information, tap ..., then tap Pass Details.

## Use a pass

1. Access the pass on your iPhone in any of the following ways:
  - On the Lock Screen, tap the pass notification. If prompted, authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
  - If Automatic Selection is turned on for the pass, double-click the side button ([on an iPhone with Face ID](#)) or double-click the Home button ([on other iPhone models](#)). If prompted, authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
  - Go to the Wallet app , then tap the pass.
2. To present the pass, do one of the following:
  - *Contactless pass:* Hold the top of your iPhone near the pass reader until Done or a checkmark appears on the screen.
  - *Pass with a barcode or QR code:* Present the code to the reader.

## Use a loyalty card with Apple Pay

At participating stores, you can receive or redeem rewards when you present the loyalty card during checkout.

1. [Add your loyalty card](#) to the Wallet app .
2. To have your loyalty card appear automatically when you're in the store, tap ... on the card, tap Pass Details, then turn on Automatic Selection.
3. At the payment terminal in the store, present your loyalty card by holding iPhone near the contactless reader.

Wallet then switches to your default payment card so you can [complete the purchase](#). In some stores, you can present your loyalty card and payment card in one step. In other stores, you need to wait until the terminal or cashier asks for payment.

# Check your Apple Account balance in Wallet on iPhone

Draft

In the Wallet app, you can check the balance of your [Apple Account](#), add money, and redeem Apple Gift Cards. Use your Apple Account balance to buy products, accessories, games, apps, subscriptions like iCloud+ and Apple Music, and more. You can even use your Apple Account balance as a quick, convenient way to pay at the Apple Store or [apple.com](#).

*Draft*  
Note: Not all features are available in all countries or regions.

## Add Apple Account to Apple Wallet to see your balance and transactions

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap +, then tap Add Apple Account.

The account balance and transactions appear below the card.

## Add money to your Apple Account balance

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apple Account, then tap Add Money.
3. Choose the amount, then follow the onscreen instructions to complete the payment.

## Redeem an Apple Gift Card or code

When you receive an Apple Gift Card or code, you can add the funds to your Apple Account balance.

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apple Account, tap ..., then tap Redeem.
3. Tap Use Camera, then position iPhone so that the gift card appears in the frame.

Alternatively, you can tap Enter Code Manually, then follow the onscreen instructions.

## Use your Apple Account balance at the Apple Store

During checkout at the Apple Store, you can pay with your Apple Account balance using Apple Pay.

*Draft*  
Note: This feature isn't available in all countries or regions.

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apple Account, then double-click the side button.
3. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
4. Hold the top of your iPhone near the card reader until you see Done or a checkmark on the screen.

# Organize and search in Wallet on iPhone

In the Wallet app, you can easily organize and reorder your cards, keys, and passes. You can also search for cards, passes, transactions, merchants, and more.

## Rearrange your cards, keys, and passes

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.

*Draft*

2. Touch and hold a card you want to move.
3. Drag the card to a new position in the stack.

**Tip:** To make a credit or debit card your default payment card, drag it to the front of the card stack.

## Search for cards, passes, and transactions

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then enter what you're looking for. You can search by merchant, date, transaction amount, location, and more.

# Remove cards and passes in Wallet on iPhone

In the Wallet app, you can remove cards and passes that you don't use anymore. You can also remove debit and credit cards from [Apple Pay](#) if your iPhone is lost or stolen.

*Note:* If you sign out of iCloud in Settings > [your name], all your credit and debit cards for Apple Pay are removed from iPhone. You can add the cards again the next time you sign in to your Apple Account.

## Remove a card or pass from your iPhone

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the card or pass you want to remove, then tap .
3. Do one of the following:
  - *Remove a debit or credit card:* Tap Card Details, then tap Remove Card.
  - *Permanently delete a pass:* Tap Remove Pass.

*Note:* If you remove a payment card on your iPhone, it's not removed from Apple Wallet on your other devices. You can [add the card](#) again later.

*Note:* If you delete a pass on your iPhone, it's permanently removed from Apple Wallet on your other devices.

## Remove your cards from Apple Pay if your iPhone is lost or stolen

If you turned on [Find My iPhone](#), you can use it to help locate and secure your iPhone.

To remove your cards from Apple Pay, do any of the following:

- *On another iPhone or iPad:* Go to the Settings app , tap your name, select the lost iPhone, then tap Remove Items (below Wallet & Apple Pay).
- *Using a web browser:* Sign in to your [Apple Account](#). Click Devices, then select the lost device. In the Wallet & Apple Pay section, click Remove Items.
- Call the issuers of your cards.

## Hide or archive expired passes

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Wallet & Apple Pay, then turn **Draft** on or off. Hide Expired Passes.

## View, unhide, or delete expired passes

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap **⋮**, then tap Expired.
3. Tap a pass, then do any of the following:
  - *See the details:* Tap .
  - *Restore the pass:* Tap .
  - *Permanently remove the pass:* Tap .

## Fill in payment information on iPhone

With your physical and virtual card numbers saved in Apple Wallet, you can use AutoFill to automatically fill in payment information in apps and online where Apple Pay isn't available. You can add, edit, and remove AutoFill cards to manage your saved payment methods.

Your AutoFill cards are saved in [iCloud Keychain](#) so you can access them on your other devices where you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#).

### Save a physical card number in Apple Wallet

Even if your debit or credit card doesn't support Apple Pay, you can add the card number to Apple Wallet.

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap **⋮**, then tap AutoFill.
3. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode, then tap Add Card.
4. Position your card in the frame to scan the information, or enter the card details manually.

### Update or remove AutoFill cards

You can edit or delete the payment information and manage your AutoFill cards.

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap **⋮**, then tap AutoFill.
3. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode, then tap a card to see the details.
4. Do any of the following:
  - *Update the card information:* Tap Edit.
  - *Delete the card information:* Tap Remove From AutoFill.

*Note:* Removing a card from AutoFill doesn't remove it from Apple Pay.

### See a virtual card number

To hide your real card number and prevent fraud when shopping in apps or on websites where Apple Pay isn't available, use a virtual card number (available for supported cards).

1. Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone.

**Draft**

2. Tap a supported card (such as [Apple Cash](#) or [Apple Card](#)).
3. Tap , then authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
4. Tap the virtual card number to copy it.

## Fill in your payment information during checkout

When Apple Pay isn't available, you can use AutoFill to enter the card number, expiration date, and security code of a debit or credit card saved in Apple Wallet. You can also use the iPhone camera to scan the information on a new card.

1. During checkout, tap a payment information field.
2. Do one of the following:
  - *Choose a card saved in Apple Wallet:* Tap a payment card above the onscreen keyboard.
  - *Use a new card:* Tap Scan Card, then position your card in the frame.

# Change your Wallet & Apple Pay settings on iPhone

In Settings, you can customize your preferences for Wallet app  and [Apple Pay](#).

## Customize your Wallet & Apple Pay settings

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Wallet & Apple Pay, then set any of the following:
  - *Location:* Control the [location information you share](#).
  - *Siri & Search:* Allow [Siri](#) to make suggestions across apps based on the way you use Wallet & Apple Pay. You can also allow suggestions and content from Wallet & Apple Pay to appear in [Search](#) and [widgets](#).
  - *Notifications:* Change [notification settings](#).
  - *Live Activities:* Turn on or off [Live Activities on the Lock Screen](#).
  - *Cellular Data:* Turn on or off [cellular data usage](#).
  - *Apple Pay Defaults:* [Change your default card, address, and preferences for Apple Pay](#).
  - *Apple Cash:* Turn on or off [Apple Cash](#).
  - *AutoFill Cards:* [Fill in payment information](#).
  - *Express Transit Card:* Choose cards to pay for transit automatically without requiring authentication. See [Pay for your ride with Express Transit](#).
  - *Hide Expired Passes:* Turn on to [archive old passes](#).
  - *Order tracking:* Purchases from participating merchants are automatically added to Wallet for [order tracking](#).

## Change your default card, address, and preferences for Apple Pay

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Wallet & Apple Pay, then tap Apple Pay Defaults.

Draft

3. Set any of the following:

Draft

- *Transaction defaults:* Set the default card, your shipping address, email, and phone number.
- *Available payment options:* Turn on or off Pay Later, Rewards, Offers, and Other Pay Later Options.
- *Allow Payments on Mac:* Use Apple Pay on your iPhone to confirm payments on your nearby Mac.
- *Double-Click Side Button:* (on an iPhone with Face ID) Your cards and passes appear on the screen when you double-click the side button.
- *Double-Click Home Button:* (on an iPhone with a Home button) Your cards and passes appear on the screen when you double-click the Home button.

## Keep your passes up to date on your other devices

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, tap iCloud, then turn on Wallet.

## Allow access to passes when iPhone is locked

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Face ID & Passcode or Touch ID & Passcode, enter your passcode, then turn on Wallet (below Allow Access When Locked).

# Weather

## Check the weather on iPhone

Check the weather for your current location. View the upcoming hourly and 10-day forecast, see severe weather information, and more.



**Note:** Some Weather app features—such as severe weather alerts, air quality, next-hour precipitation, and news—aren't available in all countries and regions. To learn about the data sources for the Weather app, see the Apple Support article [Feature availability and data sources in the Weather app](#).

## Before you begin

Weather uses Location Services to get the forecast for your current location. You

Draft

can turn on Precise Location to increase ~~Draft~~ the accuracy of the forecast.

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Weather.
2. Turn on Precise Location.

## Check the local forecast and conditions

1. Go to the Weather app  on your iPhone.
2. The details for your current location are shown. If you don't see them, tap , then tap My Location.

Swipe up to view weather details such as:

- *Hourly forecast*: Swipe the hourly display left or right.

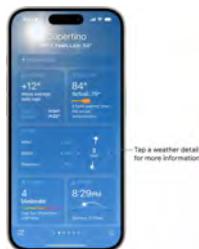
**Tip:** Tap the hourly forecast to see the hourly temperature forecast, chance of precipitation, high and low temperatures, and more. Tap  to change the displayed weather condition. Swipe left to see the same information for the days ahead.

- *10-day forecast*: View weather conditions, chance of precipitation, and high and low temperatures for the coming days.
- *Severe weather alerts*: View updates for weather events such as winter storms and flash floods. Tap the alert to read the full government-issued alert.
- *Maps*: View a map that displays the temperature, precipitation, air quality, or wind conditions in the area. Tap the map to view it in full screen or to change the map view between temperature, precipitation, air quality, and wind. See [View weather maps](#).
- *Air quality*: Tap to view health information and details about air pollutants.

*Note:* The air quality scale appears above the hourly forecast when air quality reaches a particular level for that location. For some locations, the air quality scale always appears above the hourly forecast.

- *News*: Read a news article when there's a story relevant to the weather in that location.
- *Additional weather details*: View additional weather information such as the UV index, wind, visibility, moon phases, and more. Tap a weather detail for more features and information specific to that detail.

**Tip:** The Averages weather detail shows how today's temperature or precipitation compares to the historical average; tap it for additional information.



## Customize the weather units

You can change the units used in weather data. This includes Fahrenheit or Celsius for temperature, and miles per hour, kilometers per hour, knots, or Beaufort for wind.

1. Go to the Weather app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap .
3. Tap , tap Units, then do any of the following:
  - *Change temperature units:* Tap Fahrenheit, Celsius, or “Use system setting.”
  - *Change wind, precipitation, pressure, or distance units:* Tap  next to the current measurement unit, then choose an option.

## Send a report about the weather

You can report the weather in your location if it doesn’t match what’s shown in the Weather app.

1. Go to the Weather app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , tap , then tap Report an Issue.
3. Tap the options that best describe the weather conditions in your location, then tap Submit.

The information you share with Apple isn’t associated with your [Apple Account](#).

## Check the weather in other locations on iPhone

Check the weather for any location around the world and quickly access forecasts for locations you save to your list.



## Check the weather in another location

1. Go to the Weather app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  in the bottom-right corner of the screen.
3. Tap the search field at the top of the screen, then enter the name of the city, neighborhood, or location.

**Tip:** To see your Home and Work locations in search results, go to [Settings](#)  > Apps > Weather, then turn on Home and Work. Also make sure to [turn on Location Services](#) for Weather.

4. Tap the location in the search results to display the forecast.

5. Tap Cancel to close the forecast, then tap Cancel to clear the search results and return to the list.

*Note:* Neighborhood search results aren't available in all locations.

## Add a location to your list

You can add locations to the list to quickly check the weather in places important to you.

1. Go to the Weather app  on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
  - *While looking at the location list:* Tap the search field at the top of the list, enter the name of a city, neighborhood, or location that you want to add to your list, tap the location in the search results, then tap Add.
  - *While looking at one location's forecast:* Tap  in the bottom-left corner of the screen, [change the location of the weather map](#), touch and hold where you want to add a location, then tap .

To check the weather in locations you added to your list, swipe the iPhone screen left or right when viewing a location, or tap , then tap a location.

## Remove and rearrange locations in your list

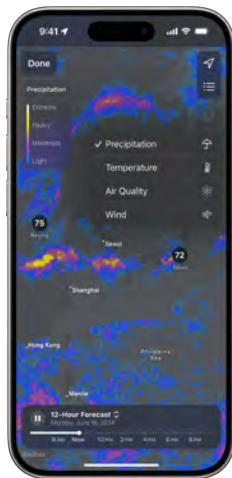
1. Go to the Weather app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  to display your list.
3. Do either of the following:
  - *Delete a location:* Swipe left on the location, then tap . Or, tap , then tap Edit List.
  - *Rearrange the order of locations on your list:* Touch and hold the location, then move it up or down. Or, tap , then tap Edit List.

Your list of locations stays up to date across your devices when you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).

## View weather maps on iPhone

You can view full-screen precipitation, temperature, air quality, and wind maps in your location or other areas.

*Note:* Not all features are available in all countries or regions. When data isn't available, the map indicates unsupported areas.



### View a full-screen weather map

1. Go to the Weather app  on your iPhone.
2. Select a location, then tap  at the bottom of the screen.

*Note:* The type of weather map shown can change depending on the weather conditions for the selected location.
3. To switch to a precipitation, temperature, air quality, or wind map, tap  in the upper right.
4. In a precipitation or wind forecast map, do any of the following:
  - *Show the timeline:* Tap near the bottom of the map.
  - *Change the duration of the timeline:* While viewing a precipitation map, tap , then switch between 12-Hour Forecast and Next-Hour Forecast.
5. Tap Done to close the map.

### Change the location of the weather map

1. Go to the Weather app  on your iPhone.
2. [View a full-screen weather map](#), then do any of the following:
  - *Move the map:* Drag it.
  - *Zoom in and out:* Pinch the screen.
  - *View another location from your list:* Tap  in the upper right, then tap a location.
  - *Return to your current location:* Tap  in the upper right.
  - *Add a location to your list, view its current conditions, or view it in Maps:* Touch and hold the location on the map, then tap Add [location], View [location], or Open in Maps.
3. Tap Done to close the map.

## Manage weather notifications on iPhone

You can receive notifications when precipitation or certain severe weather events are forecasted in your current location. You can also receive notifications for locations you saved in your list.

*Note:* Weather notifications aren't available in all countries or regions.

## Turn on weather notifications for your location

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Privacy & Security, then tap Location Services.
3. Tap Weather, then tap Always.
4. Turn on Precise Location to receive the most accurate notifications for your current location.
5. Go to the Weather app  on your iPhone.
6. Tap  to display your list, tap , then tap Notifications.  
If prompted, allow notifications from the Weather app.
7. Below Current Location, turn on notifications for Severe Weather and Next-Hour Precipitation.
8. Tap Done.

## Turn on weather notifications for locations in your list

1. Go to the Weather app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  to display your list.
3. Tap , then tap Notifications.  
If prompted, allow notifications from the Weather app.
4. Below Your Locations, tap a location, then turn on notifications for Severe Weather and Next-Hour Precipitation.
5. Tap Done.

## Get weather notifications for an upcoming destination

*Note:* This feature isn't available in the E.U. or China.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Privacy & Security, tap Location Services, then tap System Services.
3. Tap Significant Locations & Routes, then turn on Significant Locations & Routes.
4. Return to the top level of the Settings app, tap Apps, then tap Weather.
5. Tap Location, then select Always.

# Use Weather widgets on iPhone

Use Weather widgets to check the forecast and other weather conditions at a glance on your iPhone Home Screen. You can choose from a variety of widget sizes and displays.

**Tip:** You can add more than one Weather widget to your Home Screen so you can quickly see weather conditions and forecasts in different locations.

## Change the location shown in the Weather widget

You can change the location that a Weather widget displays on your iPhone Home Screen.

1. Add a widget to your Home Screen.<sup>Draft</sup>
2. Touch and hold the Weather widget on your Home Screen.
3. Tap Edit "Weather" or Edit Widget.
4. Tap My Location, then search for a city or tap a location from your list that you want to display.
5. Tap the screen outside the widget to return to your iPhone Home Screen.

Weather widgets display conditions affecting upcoming destinations when you [get weather notifications for an upcoming destination](#), set up a widget stack, and turn on Smart Rotate and Widget Suggestions. See [Edit a widget on your Home Screen](#).

## Learn the weather icons on iPhone

The icons in the Weather app  indicate different weather conditions, like fog or haze. Here's a list of some of the weather icons and what they mean.

Icon	Description
	Sunrise
	Sunset
	Clear / Mostly clear
	Partly cloudy
	Haze
	Fog
	Windy / Breezy
	Cloudy
	Thunderstorm

Icon	Draft Description
	Rain
	Heavy rain
	Drizzle / Freezing drizzle
	Snow
	Heavy snow / Blizzard
	Freezing rain / Sleet / Wintry mix
	Clear / Mostly clear (night)
	Partly cloudy (night)
	Drizzle (night)

## Siri

### How to use Siri on iPhone

Siri is an intelligent assistant that's built into your iPhone to help you get things done. After you [turn on Siri](#), you can use it to get everyday tasks done with your voice, or by typing requests to Siri. The more you use Siri, the better it knows what you need.

Below are some examples of what you can use Siri to do. Additional examples appear throughout the guide. Want even more examples? [Ask Siri](#) something like, "What can I do here?"

#### Get information

# FPO

Ask Siri to spell or translate a word, perform calculations, get information from the web, and more.

[Ask Siri to get information](#)

Call, text, and email

# FPO

Use Siri with the Phone, FaceTime, Messages, and Mail apps to stay connected with friends and family, near and far.

[Call, text, and email with Siri](#)

Play music and podcasts

# FPO

Ask Siri to play your favorite music and podcasts and control audio playback. For example, ask Siri to play, pause, or skip songs.

[Play music and podcasts with Siri](#)

Control Apple devices and smart home accessories

# FPO

Control your Mac and other Apple devices with just your voice. You can also control smart home accessories that you set up in the Home app.

[Control your Apple devices and smart home accessories with Siri](#)

# FPO

You can ask Siri to get travel directions, report traffic incidents, share your estimated time of arrival (ETA), find nearby attractions, and more.

[Use Siri to navigate](#)

## Use Siri with apps

# FPO

Ask Siri to complete actions in apps to help you complete everyday tasks. For example, while you have your hands full prepping dinner, ask Siri to add items to your grocery list.

[Use Siri with apps](#)

## Do more with Apple Intelligence



With Apple Intelligence, you can type requests to Siri, get answers to questions about your Apple products, tap into ChatGPT's expertise, and more.

[Use Apple Intelligence with Siri](#)

Siri is designed to protect your information, and you can choose what you share. To learn more, see the [Siri, Dictation & Privacy website](#).

## Find out what Siri can do

# Get information with <sup>Draft</sup> Siri on iPhone

You can use Siri to get information from the web, your contacts, and apps. You can also ask Siri to spell or translate words, perform calculations and conversions, and more. When [Location Services is turned on](#) in Privacy & Security settings, Siri even provides information based on location—like coffee shops near you.

On your iPhone, [activate Siri](#), then see the ideas below for requests you can make.

## Ask Siri to get information

- "What causes a rainbow?"
- "Who made the first rocket that went to space?"
- "How do you spell [X]?" ORBIT
- "How do you say 'Thank You' in Mandarin?"
- "What time is it?"
- "What time is it in London?"
- "Where's Gordon?"
- "Where's my iPad?"
- "What was the score of last night's game?" ORBIT
- "How are the San Francisco Giants doing this season?"
- "What's 18 percent of 225?"
- "How many centimeters are in an inch?" ORBIT
- "When is my uncle's birthday?" ORBIT
- "Show me Jane's information." ORBIT
- "Hey Siri, what's the weather for today?"
- "What's the weather like in San Francisco?"

	<b>Get information from the web</b>		<b>Spell or translate</b>
	<b>Ask questions about time and place</b>		<b>Find people and other Apple devices</b>
	<b>Get sports updates</b>		<b>Get calculations and conversions</b>
	<b>Get information about your contacts</b>		<b>Check the weather</b>

## Call, text, and email with Siri on iPhone

You can use Siri with the Phone, FaceTime, Messages, and Mail apps to stay connected with friends and family, near and far. When [Location Services is turned on](#) in Privacy & Security settings, Siri even provides information about your location when you ask.

### Make calls

Draft

On your iPhone, [activate Siri](#), then see the ideas below for requests you can make. Draft

- "Call Eliza's mobile."
- "Return my last call."
- "Redial that last number."
- "FaceTime mom."

## Send, read, and reply to text messages

You can use Siri to send messages, read your incoming texts out loud, and reply to messages.

On your iPhone, [activate Siri](#), then see the ideas below for requests you can make.

- "Send a message to Mayuri saying, how about tomorrow?"
- "Read my last message from Antonio"
- "Reply, that's great news!"

Siri can send a message right after it has been read back to you. Go to [Settings](#) > Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri) > Messaging with Siri, then turn on Automatically Send Messages.

**WARNING:** Avoid distractions while driving. See [Important safety information](#).

## Read and write emails

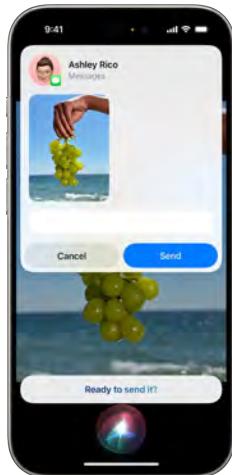
On your iPhone, [activate Siri](#), then see the ideas below for requests you can make.

- "Read me my emails" ORBIT
- "Email this photo to mom" ORBIT
- "Send an email to Ashley" ORBIT

## Use Siri to share content with your contacts

You can share onscreen items like photos, webpages, content from Apple Music or Apple Podcasts, Maps locations, and more with [people in your contacts](#).

For example, when looking at a photo in your photo library, [activate Siri](#), then say something like "Send this to mom" to create a new message with the photo.



## Play music and podcasts with Siri on iPhone

Use Siri to play the music and podcasts you love and control playback on your iPhone. Draft

## Use Siri with Apple Music

If you have an individual, family, or student [subscription to Apple Music](#), you can ask Siri to play anything from the Apple Music catalog, find songs by lyrics, add music to your library, and more.

On your iPhone, [activate Siri](#), then see the ideas below for requests you can make.

- "Play 'Party Girls' by Victoria Monét"
- "Play Tainy"
- "Play the latest album by Loraine James in the living room"
- "Play the top songs from 1990"
- "Play some popular hip-hop songs" ORBIT
- "Play some 80's music" ORBIT
- "Play some mellow music" ORBIT
- "Play music for a rainy day" ORBIT
- "Play something happy" ORBIT
- "Play music to study" ORBIT
- "Play some dinner party music" ORBIT
- "Play some workout music" ORBIT
- "I like this song" ORBIT
- "I don't like this song" ORBIT
- "Play more music like this" ORBIT
- "Play my Chill Mix"
- "Play my Discovery Station"
- "Play something I like"
- "What's playing?"
- "Who sings this song?"
- "What album is this on?" ORBIT
- "Add this to my library"
- "Add this song to my Workout playlist"
- "Add this album to my Sunday Morning playlist."
- "Play Apple Music Country"
- "Play Wild 94.9"
- "Tune in to ESPN Radio"
- "Pause music" ORBIT
- "Resume music" ORBIT
- "Skip this song" ORBIT

- "Turn up the volume." Draft

- "Shuffle music" ORBIT

Ask Siri something like "Play a song with the lyrics" and then say a key phrase from the lyrics.

	Play a specific song, album, or artist		Play hits from a decade or genre
	Play music that fits your mood		Play music for an activity
	Tell Siri what you like and don't like		Play music picked just for you
	Find out what's playing		Add music to your library or playlist
	Listen to live and on-demand radio		Control what's playing
	Play songs based on their lyrics		

**Tip:** You can also identify a song playing on or near iPhone by [adding the Music Recognition control to Control Center](#). Open Control Center, tap + at the top left, tap Add a Control at the bottom, then tap the Recognize Music icon. With a song playing, open Control Center, then tap ⓘ.

## Play songs based on their lyrics

On your iPhone, [activate Siri](#), then see the ideas below for requests you can make.

## Use Siri with Apple Podcasts

Listen to your favorite podcasts, follow shows, and control playback—all with Siri.

On your iPhone, [activate Siri](#), then see the ideas below for requests you can make.

- "Play the next episode" ORBIT
- "Play the latest episode of Journey to Launch podcast" ORBIT
- "Follow this podcast" ORBIT
- "Skip ahead three minutes" ORBIT
- "Play this twice as fast" ORBIT
- "Continue playing podcast" ORBIT

	Play and follow podcasts		Control playback
---	--------------------------	---	------------------

# Control your Apple devices and smart home accessories with Siri on iPhone

Use Siri to control your iPhone and other Draft Apple devices with just your voice—like opening apps, adjusting settings, and locating your other Apple devices or items with AirTags. You can also control smart home accessories that you set up in the Home app.

## Control your iPhone

On your iPhone, [activate Siri](#), then see the ideas below for requests you can make.

- "Open Camera"
- "Open Accessibility settings" ORBIT
- "Open Calculator" ORBIT
- "Siri, turn on the flashlight"
- "Turn up the volume"
- "Turn on the Work Focus"
- "Siri, hang up"
- "Speak screen"
- "Turn on Voice Control"
- "Turn on VoiceOver"
- "Turn on AssistiveTouch"
- "Turn on Guided Access"

---

	<a href="#">Open apps and settings</a>		<a href="#">Adjust utility settings</a>
	<a href="#">Adjust accessibility settings</a>		

---

## Control your home

Ask Siri to turn on lights, adjust the thermostat, and control the products that you use in your home—even when you're not there.

To get started, [find accessories that work with Apple Home](#). For information on how to set up smart home accessories with your iPhone or iPad, see the Apple Support article [Add a smart home accessory to the Home app](#).

On your iPhone, [activate Siri](#), then see the ideas below for requests you can make.

- "Turn on the lights"
- "Turn off the lights downstairs"
- "Turn on the security system" ORBIT
- "Set the temperature to 68 degrees"
- "Turn down the kitchen lights"
- "Set my reading scene"

If you [organize your accessories by room or zone](#), you can control areas of your house with a single command.

- "Turn off the lights downstairs" ORBIT
- "Turn on the fan in the office" ORBIT

- "Start heating the upstairs" ORBIT<sup>Draft</sup>
- "Did I lock the front door?"
- "Show me the entryway camera"
- "Did I close the garage door?" ORBIT
- "Play a song I like in the kitchen"
- "Move the music to the den"
- "What's playing in the kitchen?"
- "Set the dining room volume to 10 percent"
- "Remove the music from the kitchen"
- "Stop playing music everywhere"

If you have a [home hub](#) set up, you can ask Siri to control your home while you're away.

- "Turn off the lights in the Chicago house"
- "Lock the front door" ORBIT
- "Close the garage" ORBIT

	Turn accessories on and off		Adjust an accessory
	Control a room or zone		Check your home's status
	Play audio anywhere, or everywhere		Control audio
	Control your accessories remotely		

## Use Siri to navigate on iPhone

You can ask Siri to get travel directions, report traffic incidents, share your estimated time of arrival (ETA), find nearby attractions, and more. When [Location Services is turned on](#) in Privacy & Security settings, Siri even provides information based on location—like reminding you of something when you leave a specific location.

### Get travel directions

You can keep focused on the road by using Siri to get directions. And by listening to turn-by-turn spoken directions, you can follow driving, cycling, and walking directions without even looking at your iPhone.

On your iPhone, [ask Siri](#) something like "Give me directions home", or see the ideas below for requests you can make.

- "Give me driving directions home"
- "Give me walking directions home"
- "Give me transit directions to the Ferry Building"

- "Give me cycling directions home" Draft

▶	Get driving directions	▶	Get walking directions
▶	Get transit directions	▶	Get cycling directions

**Tip:** You can ask for directions to your home, work, or school address when using Siri or searching in Maps. See [Edit a pin](#).

## Use Siri on the road

While you're on the road, you can use Siri to report traffic incidents, report the status of incidents in select countries or regions, share your estimated time of arrival (ETA), and more.

On your iPhone, [activate Siri](#), then see the ideas below for requests you can make.

- "Share my ETA"
- "Report an accident"
- "There's something on the road"
- "There's a speed check here"
- "The hazard is gone"
- "Clear the accident"
- "Stop navigating"

▶	Share your ETA	▶	Report traffic incidents
▶	Report on the status of a hazard or accident	▶	End directions before you arrive

## Find nearby attractions, restaurants, or services

On your iPhone, [activate Siri](#), then see the ideas below for requests you can make.

- "Find coffee near me"
- "Find a gas station"
- "Find a charging station"

# Use Siri with apps on iPhone

You can ask Siri to complete actions in apps to help you perform everyday tasks and shortcuts with your voice. When you turn on Siri Suggestions, you can also get suggested actions in your apps before you ask. When [Location Services is turned on](#) in Privacy & Security settings, Siri even provides information based on location—like reminding you of something when you leave a specific location.

## Use Siri across your apps

On your iPhone, [activate Siri](#), then see the ideas below for requests you can make.

Ask Siri to add an ingredient to the groceries list or remind you to do something at a specific time or place. For example, "Add artichokes to my groceries list." or "Remind me to pack an umbrella when I get home." Draft

Ask Siri to set alarms and timers. For example, "Set an alarm for 7 a.m." or "Set the timer for 3 minutes." Draft

Ask Siri to set up a calendar event. For example, "Set up a meeting with Gordon at 9" or "What's on my calendar for Friday?"

Ask Siri to view your passwords. For example, "Show me my passwords."

Ask Siri to get information about the stock market. For example, "How are the markets doing?" or "How's Apple stock today?"

	<b>Add a reminder</b>		<b>Set an alarm or timer</b>
	<b>Create or change calendar events</b>		<b>See your passwords</b>
	<b>Get info about stocks</b>		

## Use Siri to listen to a webpage

You can use Siri to read supported webpages aloud in the Safari app.

[Ask Siri](#) something like, "Read this" or "I want to listen to this page."

Or without using Siri:

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the page you want to listen to, tap , then tap Listen to Page.

While listening to a webpage, tap , then tap .

To start listening again, tap , then tap .

## Keep track of your health and fitness

You can use Siri to keep track of your health and fitness and log data.

On [supported models](#), [activate Siri](#), then say something like:

- "How much did I sleep last night?"
- "Log my 6AM medications as taken"
- "Log that my period started today."
- "How are my Activity Rings?"
- "What's my heart rate?"
- "How far have I walked today?"

## Let Siri make suggestions in apps

Siri makes suggestions for what you might want to do next, such as call into a meeting or confirm an appointment, based on your routines and how you use your apps.

For example, Siri might help when you do any of the following:

- *Glance at the Lock Screen or start a search:* As Siri learns your routines, you get suggestions for just what you need, at just the right time.
- *Create email and events:* When you start adding people to an email or calendar event, Siri suggests the people you included in previous emails or events.

- *Receive calls:* If you get an incoming call from an unknown number, Siri lets you know who might be calling—based on phone numbers included in your emails.
- *Type:* As you enter text, Siri can suggest names of movies, places, or anything you viewed on iPhone recently. If you tell a friend you’re on your way, Siri can even suggest your estimated arrival time.
- *Confirm an appointment or book a flight on a travel website:* Siri asks if you want to add it to your calendar.

To turn off Siri suggestions for an app, see [Siri Suggestions](#).

## Run shortcuts with Siri

Apps can offer shortcuts for things you do frequently. You can use Siri to initiate these shortcuts with just your voice. Some apps have Siri Shortcuts set up automatically. You can also create your own.

Tap Add to Siri when you see a suggestion for a shortcut, then follow the onscreen instructions to record a phrase of your choice that performs the shortcut.

To run a shortcut with your voice on your iPhone, [activate Siri](#), then speak your phrase for the shortcut. See [Turn on and activate Siri](#).

You can also use the Shortcuts app to create a new shortcut that uses Siri, or to manage, re-record, and delete existing Siri Shortcuts. See the [Shortcuts User Guide](#).

Based on your routines and how you use your apps, Siri also suggests shortcuts on the Home Screen, the Lock Screen, and when you start a search. To turn off shortcut suggestions for an app, see [Change Siri settings](#).

## Use Siri in your car

With CarPlay or Siri Eyes Free, you can keep focused on the road by using Siri to make calls, send text messages, play music, get directions, and use other iPhone features.

CarPlay (available in select cars) takes the things you want to do with your iPhone while driving and puts them on your car’s built-in display. CarPlay uses Siri, so you can control CarPlay with just your voice. See [Use Siri](#).

With Siri Eyes Free (available in select cars), use your voice to control features of your iPhone without looking at or touching iPhone. To connect iPhone to your car, use Bluetooth® (refer to the user guide that came with your car if you need to). To activate Siri, press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel until you hear the Siri tone, then make a request.

**WARNING:** For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see [Important safety information](#).

## Turn on and activate Siri on iPhone

Siri is an intelligent assistant that’s built into your iPhone to help you get things done. To get started, learn the basics—like how to turn Siri on and get its attention.

**Note:** Siri is designed to protect your information and to let you choose what you share. To learn more, see the [Siri, Dictation & Privacy website](#) and the [Improve Siri and Dictation & Privacy website](#).



Draft

## Turn on Siri

Siri needs to be turned on before you can use it to get information. If you didn't set up Siri when you first set up your iPhone, do the following:

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri), then tap Talk to Siri.
3. Choose one of the following:
  - "Siri" or "Hey Siri": iPhone listens for "Siri" or "Hey Siri" at the beginning of requests.
  - "Hey Siri": iPhone listens for "Hey Siri" at the beginning of requests.

To activate Siri with the side button, turn on Press Side Button for Siri.

To change additional Siri settings, see [Change Siri settings](#).

## Activate Siri

After you turn on Siri, you need to *activate* it, then ask a question or make a request.

*Note:* You must be connected to the internet to use Siri.

1. Do one of the following:
  - *With your voice:* Say "Siri" or "Hey Siri."
  - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Press and hold the side button.
  - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press and hold the Home button.
  - *With EarPods:* Press and hold the center or call button.
  - *With CarPlay:* Press and hold the voice command button on the steering wheel, or touch and hold the Home button on the CarPlay Home Screen. See [Use Siri](#).
  - *With Siri Eyes Free:* Press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel.
2. Ask a question or make a request—for example, say something like "What's 18 percent of 225?" or "Set the timer for 3 minutes."

**Tip:** To change how long Siri waits for you to finish speaking, go to the Settings app , tap Accessibility, tap Siri, then choose Default, Longer, or Longest below Siri Pause Time.

When you activate Siri with a button, Siri responds silently when iPhone is in [silent mode](#). When silent mode is off, Siri responds out loud. When you activate Siri with your voice, Siri responds out loud. To change this behavior, see [Change how Siri responds](#).

Draft

**Draft**  
You can also activate Siri with a touch of your voice on supported AirPods. See [Set up Siri](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

**Tip:** To prevent iPhone from responding to "Siri" or "Hey Siri," place your iPhone face down, or go to the Settings app , tap Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri), tap "Listen for," then choose Off.

## Make back-to-back requests

After you activate Siri, you can make follow-up requests without reactivating it (not available in all countries or regions).

1. [Activate Siri](#), then make a request.
2. Immediately after you make the request, make another one.

For example, say "Hey Siri, what's the weather like in San Francisco? What about Cupertino?"

To override a request, interrupt Siri while Siri is speaking.

## Make a correction if Siri misunderstands you

- *While making back-to-back requests:* Repeat your request in a different way.
- *If you aren't making back-to-back requests:* Tap , then repeat your request in a different way.
- *Spell out part of your request:* Tap , then repeat your request by spelling out any words that Siri didn't understand. For example, say "Call," then spell the person's name.
- *Change a message before sending it:* Say "Change it."
- *Edit your request with text:* If you see your request onscreen, you can edit it. Tap the request, then use the onscreen keyboard.

**Tip:** To correct your request without reactivating Siri, make the corrected request immediately after the original one. (Available on supported iPhone models in some countries and regions.)

## Type instead of speaking to Siri

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, tap Siri, then turn on Type to Siri.
3. To type a request, activate Siri, then use the keyboard and text field to ask a question or make a request.

## Turn off Siri

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri), then tap Talk to Siri (or Talk & Type to Siri).
3. Tap Off, then turn off Press Side Button for Siri.

If Siri doesn't work as expected on your iPhone, see the Apple Support article [If Siri isn't working on your iPhone](#).

# Customize Siri

# Tell Siri about yourself Draft on iPhone

You can provide information to Siri—including things like your home and work addresses, and your relationships—for a more personalized experience so you can say things like "Give me driving directions home" and "FaceTime mom."

## Tell Siri who you are

1. Open Contacts , then [fill out your contact information](#).
2. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
3. Tap My Information, then tap your name.

## Tell Siri how to say your name

1. Open Contacts , then tap your contact card.
2. Tap Edit, scroll down and tap "add field," select a pronunciation name field, then type how to say your name.

You can also add a pronunciation for any other contact card in Contacts. See [Edit contacts](#).

## Tell Siri about a relationship

Say something like "Sarah Milos is my sister" or "Hey Siri, Ashley Kamin is my mom."

## Keep what Siri knows about you up to date on your Apple devices

On each device, go to Settings , then [sign in to the same Apple Account](#).

If you use iCloud, your Siri settings stay up to date across your Apple devices using end-to-end encryption.

If you don't want Siri personalization to stay up to date across iPhone and your other devices, you can turn off Siri in iCloud settings.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud.
2. Tap See All, then turn off Siri.

**Note:** If you have Location Services turned on, the location of your device at the time you make a request is also sent to Apple to help Siri improve the accuracy of its response to your requests. To deliver relevant responses, Apple may use the IP address of your internet connection to approximate your location by matching it to a geographic region. See [Control the location information you share](#).

# Announce calls, messages, and more with Siri on iPhone

Siri can announce calls and notifications from apps like Messages  on [supported headphones](#) and when [using CarPlay](#). You can answer or reply using your voice without needing to say "Hey Siri."

Announce Calls and Announce Notifications also work with supported third-party apps.

## Have Siri announce calls

With Announce Calls, Siri identifies incoming phone calls and FaceTime calls, which you can accept or decline using your voice.

1. Go to the Settings  > Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri) > Announce Calls, then choose an option.
2. When a call comes in, Siri identifies the caller, and asks if you want to answer the call. Say "yes" to accept the call or "no" to decline it.

## Have Siri announce notifications

Siri can automatically announce incoming notifications from apps like Messages and Reminders. Siri automatically enables app notifications for apps that use time-sensitive notifications, but you can change the settings at any time. To learn more about time-sensitive notifications, see [Set up a Focus](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri) > Announce Notifications, then turn on Announce Notifications.
2. Tap an app you want Siri to announce notifications from, then turn on Announce Notifications.

For some apps, you can also choose whether to announce all notifications or only time-sensitive notifications.

For apps where you can send a reply, like Messages, Siri repeats what you said, then asks for confirmation before sending your reply. To send replies without waiting for confirmation, turn on Reply Without Confirmation.

## Respond to Siri announcements hands-free

You can nod or shake your head to respond to Siri announcements while you're wearing supported AirPods. So if you're on the bus to work, you can still use Siri for managing calls, messages, and notifications without having to speak out loud. See [Use controls and gestures with your AirPods](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

# Turn Siri Suggestions on or off on iPhone

When you turn on Siri Suggestions, you get suggested actions in some apps even before you ask. For example, when you get an invitation in Mail, you're asked if you want to add it to your calendar. Or when you browse webpages, you get suggestions for related webpages. You can also customize the apps Siri has access to.

## Turn Siri Suggestions on or off for an app

Siri Suggestions are on by default for your apps. You can turn them off or change the settings at any time.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri), then tap Apps.
3. Tap an app, then turn settings on or off.

## Change Siri Suggestions settings

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri), then turn on or off any of the following:

- Show in App
- Show on Home Screen
- Suggest App
- Suggestion Notifications

Your personal information—which is encrypted and remains private—stays up to date across all your devices where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#). As Siri learns about you on one device, your experience with Siri is improved on your other devices. If you don't want Siri personalization to update across your devices, you can disable Siri in iCloud settings. See [Keep what Siri knows about you up to date on your Apple devices](#).

Siri is designed to protect your information, and you can choose what you share. To learn more, see the [Siri Suggestions, Search & Privacy website](#).

## Change Siri settings on iPhone

You can change the voice Siri uses, prevent access to Siri when your device is locked, retrain Siri with your voice, and more.

For information about how to set up and use Siri, see [Turn on and activate Siri](#). To change settings for Siri Suggestions, see [Siri Suggestions](#).

### Change how Siri responds

You can customize Siri by choosing the language and voice Siri uses. You can further customize Siri responses by choosing to mute Siri, show what Siri says onscreen, and show what you say onscreen.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Change the voice for Siri:* Tap Voice, then choose a different variety or voice (not available for all languages).
  - *Change the language Siri responds to:* Tap Language, then select a new language.
  - *Change when Siri provides voice responses:* Tap Siri Responses, then choose an option below Spoken Responses.
  - *Always see the response from Siri onscreen:* Tap Siri Responses, then turn on Always Show Siri Captions.
  - *See your request onscreen:* Tap Siri Responses, then turn on Always Show Request.

**Tip:** To change how long Siri waits for you to finish speaking, go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri, then choose Default, Longer, or Longest below Siri Pause Time.

### Change when Siri responds

You can customize when Siri responds to your voice.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.

- *Prevent Siri from responding to the voice request "Siri" or "Hey Siri":* Tap Talk to Siri (or Talk & Type to Siri), then tap Off.
- *Prevent access to Siri when iPhone is locked:* Turn off Allow Siri When Locked.

You can also make requests by typing. See [Type instead of speaking to Siri](#).

### Retrain Siri with your voice

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Talk to Siri, then tap Off.
3. Turn on "Siri" or "Hey Siri" again, then follow the onscreen instructions.

### Change Siri settings for Phone, FaceTime, and Messages

You can perform tasks for Phone, FaceTime, and Messages with just your voice. With Siri, you can hang up calls and skip the confirmation step when sending messages. You can enable these features in Settings.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Hang up Phone and FaceTime calls:* Tap Call Hang Up, then turn on Call Hang Up. For more information, see [End calls with Siri](#).
  - *Send messages without confirmation:* Tap Messaging with Siri, then turn on Automatically Send Messages. See [Send and reply to messages](#).

On supported headphones, Siri can also [announce calls, messages, and more](#).

### Change which apps appear in search

You can change which apps appear when you search with Siri.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search, then scroll down and select an app.
3. Turn settings on or off.

To change Siri accessibility settings, see [Change Siri accessibility settings](#).

If Siri doesn't work as expected on your iPhone, see the Apple Support article [If Siri isn't working on your iPhone](#).

## Apple Intelligence

### Use Apple Intelligence on your iPhone



Apple Intelligence\* is the personal intelligence system built into iOS 26. It combines the power of generative models with an understanding of your personal context to deliver intelligence that's useful and relevant, all while protecting your privacy.

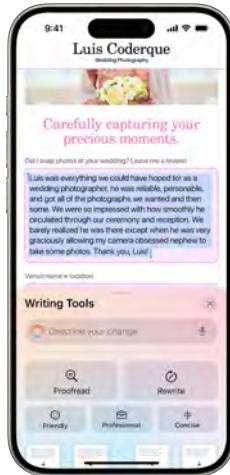
Draft  
Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.\*\* To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the [latest version of iOS](#).

## Turn on Apple Intelligence

If Apple Intelligence is off, you can turn it on. Go to [Settings](#) > Apple Intelligence & Siri, then do one of the following:

- Tap the button next to Apple Intelligence.
- Tap Turn on Apple Intelligence.

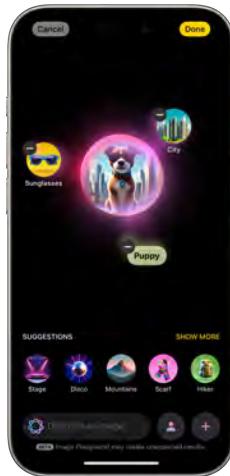
The option you see is based on the version of iOS you have and if you've previously set up Apple Intelligence.



## Find the perfect words

Transform how you communicate using Writing Tools that can summarize text, proofread your work, and help you find the right wording and tone.

### [How to use Writing Tools](#)



## Create one-of-a-kind images and your own emoji

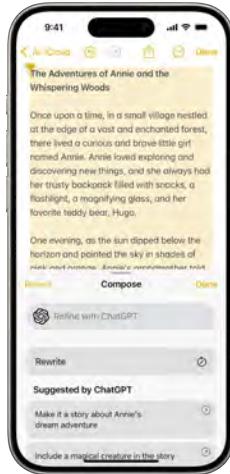
Produce fun, original images in seconds with the Image Playground app or Image Wand in the Notes app. You can also make custom emoji—called Genmoji—from a description.

### [How to create original images](#)



## Do more with Siri

Type requests to Siri, get answers to questions about your Apple products, and more.



## Tap into ChatGPT

Let Apple Intelligence work with ChatGPT, which integrates with Siri and Writing Tools, to get access to even more expertise—including the ability to compose text from scratch.



## Reduce the noise and focus

Apple Intelligence can summarize and prioritize notifications and reduce interruptions, showing you the information most important to you.

[How to summarize and prioritize notifications and reduce interruptions](#)

## Use Apple Intelligence with apps

View your most urgent emails, craft quick email responses with Smart Reply, and summarize long emails.

[Use Apple Intelligence in Mail](#)

See summaries of unread Messages conversations and craft fast responses with Smart Reply.

[Use Apple Intelligence in Messages](#)

After you record audio, use Apple Intelligence to generate a summary of the transcript.

[Use Apple Intelligence in Notes](#)

Find photos with enhanced search, create memory movies, and remove distracting objects using Clean Up.

[Use Apple Intelligence in Photos](#)

Use Apple Intelligence to generate a summary of a webpage in the Safari app.

[Get webpage summaries with Apple Intelligence](#)

Check the [Apple Intelligence website](#) for more information about features, supported devices, and languages.

	<b>Mail</b>		<b>Messages</b>
	<b>Notes</b>		<b>Photos</b>
	<b>Safari</b>		<b>And more...</b>

## Turn off Apple Intelligence

Go to Settings  > Apple Intelligence & Siri, then tap the button next to Apple Intelligence.

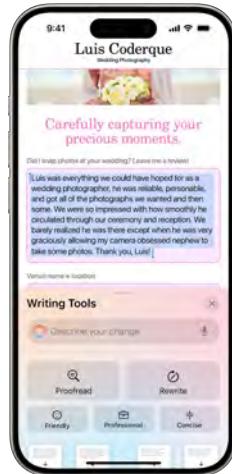
\*Apple Intelligence uses generative models, and outputs may be inaccurate, unexpected, or offensive. Check important information for accuracy.

\*\*Apple Intelligence is available in beta on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, with Siri and device language set to Chinese (Simplified), English (Australia, Canada, India, Ireland, New Zealand, Singapore, South Africa, UK, or U.S.), French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), or Spanish. Some features may not be available in all regions or languages. For more information, see the Apple Support article [How to get Apple Intelligence](#).

## Use Writing Tools with Apple Intelligence on iPhone

With Apple Intelligence,\* you can use Writing Tools to proofread your work, create different versions of the same text to help you find the right wording and tone, and summarize selected text. Writing Tools are available in most places you write, including third-party apps and websites.

Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.\*\* To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the [latest version of iOS](#) and have [Apple Intelligence turned on](#).



Proofread text

1. While writing, select the text you want to refine, tap , then tap Writing Tools.

**Tip:** You can also tap  in the top-right corner of the keyboard.

2. Tap Proofread.

Apple Intelligence checks your text for grammatical and spelling errors. All changes are underlined with a glowing line.

3. Do any of the following:

- *View changes and an explanation for each change:* Tap  and  at the bottom.
- *Discard a change:* Tap Use Original.
- *Switch between the updated and original versions of your text:* Tap Original.
- *Revert to the unedited version of your text:* Tap Revert.

4. When you're finished, tap Done. Draft

## Rewrite text

With Writing Tools, you can rewrite text you've just written—like class notes or a blog post—to ensure everything reads just right. You can also adjust the tone of your writing to suit the audience and task at hand.

1. While writing, select the text you want to refine, tap , then tap Writing Tools.

**Tip:** You can also tap  in the top-right corner of the keyboard.

2. Do any of the following:

- *Rewrite text:* Tap Rewrite.
- *Rewrite the text in a particular tone:* Tap Friendly, Professional, or Concise.
- *Rewrite the text based on a description:* Tap "Describe your change," then enter a description—"Make this more enthusiastic," for example.

A rewritten version of your text appears.

3. Do any of the following:

- *Try the rewrite again:* Tap Rewrite. To undo, tap .
- *Switch between the updated and original versions of your text:* Tap Original.
- *Revert to the unedited version of your text:* Tap Revert.

4. When you're finished, tap Done.

## Summarize and organize text

After writing or reading text, you can use Apple Intelligence to generate a summary. You can also have the summary presented as bulleted key points, or have the original text organized in a list or table.

1. Select the text you want to refine, tap , then tap Writing Tools.

**Tip:** You can also tap  in the top-right corner of the keyboard.

2. Do any of the following:

- *Summarize text:* Tap Summarize.
- *Summarize the key points of the text:* Tap Key Points.
- *Organize the original text in a list:* Tap List.
- *Organize the original text in a table:* Tap Table.

A rewritten version of your text appears.

3. After viewing the summary, do any of the following:

- *Copy the summary:* Tap Copy.
- *Replace the original text with the summary:* Tap Replace.

*Note:* Replace is not an option if the source text is not editable.

- *Share the summary:* Tap Share, then choose a share option.

If you turn on the ChatGPT extension, you can compose text with Writing Tools. To turn on the extension and learn about availability, see [Use ChatGPT with Apple Intelligence](#).

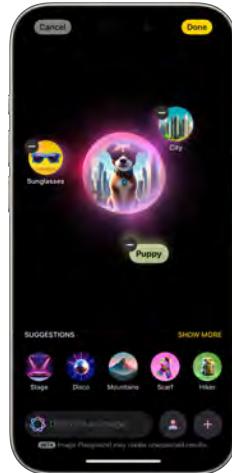
\*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

\*\*Apple Intelligence is available in beta on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, with Siri and device language set to Chinese (Simplified), English (Australia, Canada, India, Ireland, New Zealand, Singapore, South Africa, UK, or U.S.), French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), or Spanish. Some features may not be available in all regions or languages. For more information, see the Apple Support article [How to get Apple Intelligence](#).

## Create original images with Image Playground on iPhone

In the Image Playground app, you can use Apple Intelligence\* to combine concepts, text descriptions, and people from your photo library to create images within seconds. You can also use Image Playground to create images in Messages, Freeform, and more.

Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.\*\* To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the [latest version of iOS](#) and have [Apple Intelligence turned on](#).



Create an image

You can combine up to six elements to create original images.

1. Go to the Image Playground app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap , then do any of the following:

- *Create an image from a concept:* Tap a concept—a theme, costume, accessory, or place.
- *Create an image from a description:* Tap “Describe an image,” enter a description, then tap Done.
- *Create an image of a person:* Tap , then choose a person from your photo library.

To add a person from Photos, you need to name them in the Photos app. See [Find and name people and pets in Photos](#). If you provide a text description that’s different from the image you use—for example, the name in Photos doesn’t match the name in your description—your image is personalized based on the photo you selected rather than the text description.

**Tip:** You can also create an image of a person without using a photo from your library. Tap , tap Appearance, then choose an appearance setting.

- *Create an image based on a photo, such as an image of a pet, nature, or food:* Tap , then tap Choose Photo or Take Photo.
- *Change the image style:* Tap , then tap Animation, Illustration, or Sketch.

*Note:* Changing the image style creates a new set of previews.

3. To see variations of an image, tap the preview bubble, then swipe left.
4. When you’re happy with your image, tap Done in the top-right corner to save it to your gallery.

To view the image in your gallery, tap <.

**Tip:** Tap  or  to rate an image. Your ratings help improve the Image Playground experience.

In addition to using the Image Playground app, you can also use Image Playground features to create original images in apps like Freeform and Messages. See [Create and send original images in Messages](#) and [Create original images in Freeform](#).

## Edit or refine your image

1. Go to the Image Playground app  on your iPhone.
2. In the gallery, tap an image, then tap Edit.

3. Do any of the following: Draft

- *Add a concept:* Tap a suggested concept.

You can also tap Show More, then swipe left to see Themes, Costumes, Accessories, and Places.

- *Add a description:* Tap the “Describe an image” field, enter a description, then tap Done.

- *Add an image of a person:* Tap , then choose a person from your photo library.

To add a person from Photos, you need to name them in the Photos app. See [Find and name people and pets in Photos](#). If you provide a description that’s different from the image you use—like a name of a different person, for example—your image is personalized based on the photo you selected rather than the text description.

**Tip:** You can also add an image of a person without using a photo from your library. Tap , tap Appearance, choose a skin tone and appearance setting, then tap Done.

- *Edit an image of a person:* If you already added a person and you want to change the image, tap , tap Edit, choose a new starting point, then tap Done.

To change the appearance, tap , tap Edit, make adjustments, then tap Done.

- *Take a photo or choose a photo from your library:* Tap , then tap Take Photo or Choose Photo.

- *Change the image style:* Tap Style, then tap Animation, Illustration, or Sketch.

*Note:* Changing the image style creates a new set of previews.

- *Remove a concept:* Tap .

4. When you’re finished, tap Done, then tap Save or Save as Duplicate.

To return to your gallery, tap .

## Copy, share, or save an image

1. Go to the Image Playground app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap a saved image, then do any of the following:

- *Copy or duplicate your image:* Tap , then tap Copy or Duplicate.

- *Share your image:* Tap , then choose a share option.

- *Add a caption to your image:* Tap , tap Add Caption, enter an image description, then tap Done.

## Delete an image

*Note:* If you delete an image from Image Playground, it’s deleted on all your devices where you’re [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).

1. Go to the Image Playground app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap an image in the gallery, then tap .

## Create and send original images in Messages

Draft



You can create images with Image Playground directly in the Messages app.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation.
3. Tap , then tap Image Playground.
4. [Create an image](#), then tap Done.
5. When you're ready to send your image, tap .

## Create original images in Freeform

You can create images with Image Playground directly in the Freeform app.

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap  to start a new one.
3. Do one of the following:
  - *Create a new image:* Tap  in the toolbar, tap Image Playground, then [create an image](#).
  - *Use elements from your board:* Select up to six images, drawings, text boxes, stickies, or shapes that you want to use, tap them, then tap Add to Playground.
  - *Replace an existing image with an image created in Image Playground:* Add an image, tap  in the toolbar, tap Replace, tap Image Playground, then [create an image](#).
4. Tap Done to add the image to your board.

To block access to image creation features like Image Playground, see [Block access to image creation features](#).

## Share feedback

1. Go to the Image Playground app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a saved image, then tap .
3. Choose feedback such as "Doesn't match description" or "Doesn't resemble original photo," then tap Send to Apple.

\*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

Draft  
\*\*Apple Intelligence is available in beta on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, with Siri and device language set to Chinese (Simplified), English (Australia, Canada, India, Ireland, New Zealand, Singapore, South Africa, UK, or U.S.), French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), or Spanish. Some features may not be available in all regions or languages. For more information, see the Apple Support article [How to get Apple Intelligence](#).

## Create your own emoji with Genmoji on iPhone

With Apple Intelligence,\* you can create custom emoji—called Genmoji. Simply describe what you want the Genmoji to look like or create one of friends and family based on their photos. You can add Genmoji to messages, [share them as a sticker](#) or [Tapback](#), and more.

**Note:** Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.\*\* To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the [latest version of iOS](#) and have [Apple Intelligence turned on](#).



### Create Genmoji

1. Tap a text field, then tap ⓘ or ⓘ to switch to the emoji keyboard.
2. Tap ⓘ at the top right of the onscreen keyboard.
3. Enter a description in the Describe a Genmoji field, like "Rainbow cactus."

To refine your Genmoji, just change the description. For example, if the original description was "Giraffe riding a unicycle," type "Purple giraffe riding a unicycle," and your Genmoji is updated to match the new description.

4. Tap Done.
5. To add a Genmoji to a message, swipe through to find the Genmoji you want to use, then tap Add.

To create a Genmoji based on a photo, enter the name of a person [you've identified in your photo library](#), add a description—"Danny celebrating his 35th birthday," for example—tap Choose a Person, select a person identified in your Photos library, then choose a variation.

### Delete Genmoji

1. Tap a text field, then tap ⓘ or ⓘ to switch to the emoji keyboard.
2. Swipe right or tap ⓘ.

3. Tap , touch and hold a Genemoji, then tap Remove.

You can also tap  in a Messages conversation, tap Stickers, touch and hold a Genemoji, then tap Remove.

\*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

\*\*Apple Intelligence is available in beta on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, with Siri and device language set to Chinese (Simplified), English (Australia, Canada, India, Ireland, New Zealand, Singapore, South Africa, UK, or U.S.), French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), or Spanish. Some features may not be available in all regions or languages. For more information, see the Apple Support article [How to get Apple Intelligence](#).

## Use Image Wand with Apple Intelligence on iPhone

With Apple Intelligence,\* you can use Image Wand in the Notes app to create images based on rough sketches you create. You can also select empty space to create an image based on words and images from the surrounding area.

Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.\*\* To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the [latest version of iOS](#) and have [Apple Intelligence turned on](#).

### Create an image from a rough sketch

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. Open an existing note or tap  to start a new note.
3. Tap , create a sketch using your finger, then tap Image Wand.
4. Circle your sketch, enter a description, then tap .
5. Swipe through the created images to find one you like.
6. Tap  to choose a different style—Animation, Illustration, or Sketch.

To refine your image, tap a description, then edit it. To save it, tap Done.

### Create an image from surrounding content

Apple Intelligence can create images based on the words and images around it.

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a note, tap , then tap Image Wand.
3. Circle an area near the content you want to illustrate.

You can also create an image from highlighted text. Tap the Image Wand, select a block of text, tap , then choose Create Image.

### Re-create an existing image

When you create an image with Image Playground, all the elements used to create it are saved—sketches, descriptions, characters, and people. You can modify, add, or subtract elements in an existing created image.

1. Tap a created image.

The image shows the elements used to create it.

3. Do any of the following:

- *Add a new element:* Enter a description, then tap ⓘ.
- *Modify an element:* Tap a description, edit the text, then tap ⓘ.
- *Remove an element:* Tap ⓘ.

4. When you're finished, tap Done.

\*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

\*\*Apple Intelligence is available in beta on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, with Siri and device language set to Chinese (Simplified), English (Australia, Canada, India, Ireland, New Zealand, Singapore, South Africa, UK, or U.S.), French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), or Spanish. Some features may not be available in all regions or languages. For more information, see the Apple Support article [How to get Apple Intelligence](#).

## Use Apple Intelligence with Siri on iPhone

Siri is the intelligent assistant that's built into your iPhone to simplify and accelerate everyday tasks. With Apple Intelligence,\* Siri has a new design, and is more natural and helpful. When Siri is activated, the Siri search field appears and remains until you close it, so you can continue what you're doing while you talk to Siri.

Siri also follows along if you stumble over your words while making a request. For example, you might say, "Siri, set an alarm—wait no, sorry, I meant a timer for 10 minutes—actually, let's make that 15." Siri understands what you meant and starts a timer for 15 minutes.

In addition to using your voice, you can type requests to Siri. You can also tap into Siri's product knowledge to get answers to questions about your Apple products.

And with your permission, Siri can tap into ChatGPT to get even more expertise. See [Use ChatGPT with Apple Intelligence](#).

*Note:* Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.\*\* To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the [latest version of iOS](#) and have [Apple Intelligence turned on](#). Siri availability and features vary by language, and by country and region. For more information, see the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

### Type to Siri

<\_\_ href="Art/V0006\_SiriTypeRequests-1V\_UG.mp4" class=" Video \_\_">\_\_

When you don't want to speak out loud, you can type to Siri—for example, when you're in a quiet place like a meeting or a library.

To type to Siri, double-tap the bottom of the screen, then enter your request.

To turn off Type to Siri, go to Settings ⓘ > Apple Intelligence & Siri, tap Talk & Type to Siri, then turn off Type to Siri.

### Make requests to Siri that maintain context

With Apple Intelligence, you can make requests to Siri that build on your previous requests, maintaining the context of what you just said. Draft

For example, you can say or type something like "How are the San Francisco Giants doing this season?" Then ask, "When are they playing next?" And finally: "Add that to my calendar."

1. [Activate Siri](#), then make a request.
2. Immediately after you make the request, make another one.

## Ask Siri questions about your Apple products

You can tap into Siri's product knowledge to get answers to questions about your iPhone—as well as other Apple products like iPad, Mac, Apple TV, Apple Watch, AirPods, and HomePod.

[Activate Siri](#), then, in a supported language, say or type something like:

- "Where do I name a group text on iPhone?"
- "I want to block someone from texting me on my iPhone. How do I do that?"
- "How do I make the text on my iPhone bigger?"
- "Tell me how to connect my AirPods to iPhone?"
- "How do I change what shows up in Control Center on my iPhone?"
- "How do I play sound from my TV through HomePod?"
- "How do I use Apple Pay on iPhone?"
- "How do I take a screenshot?"

**Note:** To learn more about Apple Intelligence and Privacy, see [Apple Intelligence and privacy](#). To learn more about Privacy and Siri, see [Siri, Dictation & Privacy](#).

\*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

\*\*Apple Intelligence is available in beta on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, with Siri and device language set to Chinese (Simplified), English (Australia, Canada, India, Ireland, New Zealand, Singapore, South Africa, UK, or U.S.), French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), or Spanish. Some features may not be available in all regions or languages. For more information, see the Apple Support article [How to get Apple Intelligence](#).

## Use visual intelligence on iPhone

Use visual intelligence to quickly learn more about the places and objects around you. On [models that have the Camera Control](#) (shown below), just click and hold it to do things like look up details about a restaurant or business; have text translated, summarized, or read aloud; identify plants and animals; and more.

On iPhone 16e, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, you can access visual intelligence by customizing the Action button or Lock Screen, or opening Control Center. See [Alternate options to using the Camera Control](#).



Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.\*\* To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the [latest version of iOS](#) and have [Apple Intelligence turned on](#).

## Get information about a place

You can use visual intelligence to get details about a business in front of you, such as hours of operation, available services, and contact information. Depending on the business, you can also view reviews and ratings, make a reservation, or place an order for delivery. (Available in English only.)

1. Click and hold the Camera Control ([on supported models](#)), or use [an alternate option](#).
2. Point your iPhone camera at the business in front of you.
3. Click the Camera Control again or tap the name of the business at the top of the screen, then depending on the business, do any of the following:
  - *View the hours of operation:* Tap Schedule.
  - *Place an order for delivery:* Tap Order.
  - *View the menu or services offered:* Tap Menu.
  - *Make a reservation:* Tap Reserve.
  - *Call the business, view its website, and more:* Tap ⓘ.
4. Tap ⓘ or swipe up from the bottom of the screen to close visual intelligence.

## Get information about animals and plants

You can use visual intelligence to identify animals and plants. (Available in English only.)

1. Click and hold the Camera Control ([on supported models](#)), or use [an alternate option](#).
2. Point your iPhone camera at an animal or plant in front of you.
3. Tap the result at the top of the screen.
4. Tap ⓘ to close the results, then swipe up from the bottom of the screen to close visual intelligence.

## Interact with text

Draft  
You can use visual intelligence to interact with text around you in a variety of ways. For example, you can have visual intelligence summarize and translate text or read it aloud. Visual intelligence can also identify contact information in text such as phone numbers and email addresses, websites, and take action depending on the type of text.

1. Click and hold the Camera Control ([on supported models](#)), or use [an alternate option](#).
2. Point your iPhone camera at text in front of you.
3. Click the Camera Control again or tap the circle at the bottom of the screen to analyze the text.
4. Depending on the text, do any of the following:
  - *Read a short summary of the text:* Tap Summarize at the bottom of the screen.
  - *Translate text:* Tap Translate at the bottom of the screen.
  - *Hear the text read aloud:* Tap Read Aloud at the bottom of the screen.
  - *Call a phone number, start an email, create a calendar event, or go to a website:* Tap the phone number, email address, date, or website at the bottom of the screen. Tap ⓘ to see all of the available options.
5. Tap ⓘ to close the text results, then swipe up from the bottom of the screen to close visual intelligence.

## Create a calendar event from details on a poster or flyer

You can use visual intelligence to create an event in the Calendar app when you see an event on a poster or flyer. (Available in English only.)

1. Click and hold the Camera Control ([on supported models](#)), or use [an alternate option](#).
2. Point your iPhone camera at a poster or flyer that contains a date in the future.
3. Tap Create Event at the top of the screen, then tap Schedule.
4. To make changes to the event details, tap Edit, make changes, then tap Add.  
The event is automatically added to your Calendar app.
5. Tap ⓘ to close the event details, then swipe up from the bottom of the screen to close visual intelligence.

## Search for visually similar images

You can use visual intelligence to search for items similar to those around you.

1. Click and hold the Camera Control ([on supported models](#)), or use [an alternate option](#).
2. Point your iPhone camera at an object in front of you.
3. Tap ⓘ to search for similar images.
4. Tap ⓘ to close the search results, then swipe up from the bottom of the screen to close visual intelligence.

*Note:* Subject to your search provider's terms of use and data privacy policies.

## Interact with what's on your screen

Draft

Draft  
You can use visual intelligence to do more with what's on your iPhone screen. You can perform image searches, go straight to relevant websites, summarize text, add events to your calendar, and more.

When you see something on your iPhone screen that you'd like to interact with, do the following:

1. Quickly press and release the side button and the volume up button at the same time to take a screenshot.
2. Depending on what's shown in the screenshot, do any of the following:
  - Tap ⓘ to search the web for similar items.
  - Swipe your finger on a specific item to highlight it and search for that particular item.
  - Tap ⓘ to ask a question or tap into ChatGPT's knowledge about what's on screen.
  - Tap Add to Calendar to create a calendar event.
  - Tap the website to go to the relevant website.
  - Tap Summarize to read a short summary of the text.
3. Tap ✖ to delete the screenshot or tap ⓘ to save the screenshot.

## Alternate options to using the Camera Control

On iPhone 16e, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, you can choose any of the following options as an alternative to using the Camera Control for visual intelligence:

- *Action button*: Customize the Action button on the left side of your iPhone to use visual intelligence. See [Use visual intelligence with the Action button](#).
- *Lock Screen*: Add a visual intelligence control to the bottom of your Lock Screen to use visual intelligence. See [Change the controls at the bottom of the Lock Screen](#).
- *Control Center*: Swipe down from the top-right corner of the screen to open Control Center, then tap ⓘ to use visual intelligence.

If you turn on the ChatGPT extension, you can use visual intelligence to ask ChatGPT for information about things around you. To turn on the extension and learn about availability, see [Use ChatGPT with Apple Intelligence](#).

\*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

\*\*Apple Intelligence is available in beta on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, with Siri and device language set to Chinese (Simplified), English (Australia, Canada, India, Ireland, New Zealand, Singapore, South Africa, UK, or U.S.), French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), or Spanish. Some features may not be available in all regions or languages. For more information, see the Apple Support article [How to get Apple Intelligence](#).

# Summarize notifications and reduce interruptions with Apple Intelligence on iPhone

Draft  
With its deep understanding of language, Apple Intelligence\* can help condense the information most important to you. Notifications are summarized so you can scan them for key details, such as when a group chat is particularly active. Your iPhone can also determine which notifications have priority over others. And the Reduce Interruptions Focus shows you only the notifications that might need immediate attention, like a text about an early pickup from daycare.

**Note:** Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.\*\* To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the [latest version of iOS](#) and have [Apple Intelligence turned on](#).

## Customize notification summaries

Your iPhone can summarize long or stacked notifications, making them easier to understand at a glance.

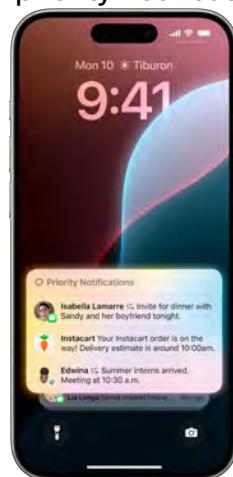
1. Go to Settings , then tap Notifications.
2. Tap Summarize Notifications, turn on Summarize Notifications, then tap Choose Notifications to Summarize.
3. Tap the notifications you want to summarize, then tap Summarize Selected Notifications.

To change which notifications you want to summarize, tap the button next to an app.

## Turn notification summaries on or off

1. Go to Settings , then tap Notifications.
2. Tap Summarize Notifications, then turn Summarize Notifications on or off.

## Turn priority notifications on



Your iPhone can determine which notifications have priority over others. Priority notifications appear at the top of the stack, so you can catch up on what you may have missed.

1. Go to Settings , then tap Notifications.
2. Tap Prioritize Notifications, then turn Prioritize Notifications on.

To turn off priority notifications, turn Prioritize Notifications off.

To change which notifications you want to prioritize, tap the button next to an app.

You can also change settings when you receive a priority notification on the Lock Screen. When a priority notification appears, do one of the following:

- *Turn off Priority Notifications for a Specific app:* Swipe left, tap Options, then tap Turn Off All [app] Notifications.
- *Turn off all Priority Notifications:* Swipe left, tap Options, then tap Turn Off Prioritization.

## Use the Reduce Interruptions Focus

<\_\_ href="Art/V0007\_ReduceInterruptions-1V\_UG.mp4" class="\_\_ Video "().\_\_

The Reduce Interruptions Focus understands the content of your notifications and shows you the most important ones, but silences notifications that are less important.

You can customize a Reduced Interruptions Focus.

1. Go to Settings  > Focus.
2. Tap  at the top right, then tap Reduce Interruptions.
3. Tap Customize Focus, then tap People or Apps.
4. Choose the people and apps to allow notifications from.

*Note:* When you turn on Intelligent Breakthrough & Silencing for any Focus, any notifications specifically allowed or silenced will always be allowed or silenced.

\*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

\*\*Apple Intelligence is available in beta on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, with Siri and device language set to Chinese (Simplified), English (Australia, Canada, India, Ireland, New Zealand, Singapore, South Africa, UK, or U.S.), French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), or Spanish. Some features may not be available in all regions or languages. For more information, see the Apple Support article [How to get Apple Intelligence](#).

## Use Apple Intelligence with apps

### Use Apple Intelligence in Mail on iPhone

Apple Intelligence\* makes it easier than ever to stay on top of your email. In addition to [using Writing Tools](#) to craft your outgoing messages, you can use Priority Messages to quickly view your most urgent emails, like a same-day dinner invitation or boarding pass. Smart Reply helps you compose a fast email response to make sure you covered everything. You can also view summaries that automatically appear in your inbox, and generate summaries of complex emails and long email threads to view all the pertinent details.

*Note:* Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.\*\* To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the [latest version of iOS](#) and have [Apple Intelligence turned on](#).

#### View Priority Messages in your inbox

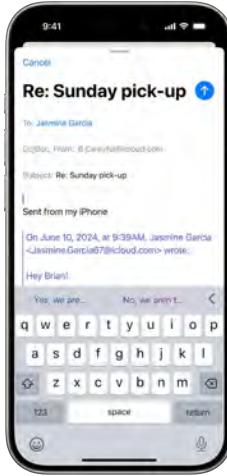


1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap your inbox, tap , then tap Show Priority.

Time-sensitive emails appear at the top of your inbox.

*Note:* Priority Messages appear in the Primary category or in List View.

## Use Smart Reply in Mail



1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap an email, tap , then tap Reply.
3. In the keyboard, tap a suggested reply.

Apple Intelligence drafts a reply in the email. To refine your reply, see [Find the right words with Writing Tools](#).

4. When you're ready to send your reply, tap .

## Summarize your email

 [Art/V0004\\_EmailSummary-1V\\_UG.mp4](#)

Apple Intelligence can help you summarize a complex email, or catch up on a long email thread in seconds.

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.

A short summary automatically appears under each email in your inbox.

2. Tap an email, then tap Summarize.

*Note:* You may need to scroll to the top of the screen for the Summarize button to appear.

A summary appears at the top of the screen. If the message is part of an email thread, the contents of the thread are summarized.

## Turn email summary previews on or off

When you turn on Apple Intelligence, summaries automatically appear under your emails. You can turn off summaries if you want to see the first lines of the most recent message instead.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Mail.
2. Turn Summarize Message Previews on or off.

\*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

\*\*Apple Intelligence is available in beta on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, with Siri and device language set to Chinese (Simplified), English (Australia, Canada, India, Ireland, New Zealand, Singapore, South Africa, UK, or U.S.), French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), or Spanish. Some features may not be available in all regions or languages. For more information, see the Apple Support article [How to get Apple Intelligence](#).

## Use Apple Intelligence in Messages on iPhone

Apple Intelligence\* allows you to get through your messages even faster with summaries that show you the key points of each conversation, and Smart Reply, which helps you quickly craft a response.

Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.\*\* To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the [latest version of iOS](#) and have [Apple Intelligence turned on](#).

### View message summaries

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Look under a conversation in the Messages list to see a summary of unread messages in that conversation.

### Use Smart Reply in Messages

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a conversation, tap the text field, then tap a suggested reply in the keyboard.

Apple Intelligence drafts a reply in the text field. To refine your reply, see [Find the right words with Writing Tools](#).

3. When you're ready to send your reply, tap .

### Turn message summaries on or off

When you turn on Apple Intelligence, summaries automatically appear under your message conversations. You can turn off summaries if you want to see the most recent message in each conversation instead.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Messages.
2. Turn Summarize Messages on or off.

You can also create and send original images with Image Playground. See [Create original images with Image Playground](#).

\*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

\*\*Apple Intelligence is available in beta on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, with Siri and device language set to Chinese (Simplified), English (Australia, Canada, India, Ireland, New Zealand, Singapore, South Africa, UK, or U.S.), French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), or Spanish. Some features may not be available in all regions or languages. For more information, see the Apple Support article [How to get Apple Intelligence](#).

## Translate messages, calls, and conversations on iPhone

On an [iPhone with Apple Intelligence](#), you can get translations of text messages, audio and video calls, and face-to-face conversations in different languages. When you're traveling abroad and need to communicate with people you meet, or staying connected with family and friends who speak different languages, Live Translation helps bridge language barriers in real time. Live Translation is integrated into the Messages, FaceTime, Phone, and Translate apps, and uses Apple-built models that run entirely on device, so your personal conversations stay private.

### Translate texts in Messages

In the Messages app, use Apple Intelligence to see incoming texts in other languages, automatically translated to your preferred language. Live Translation in Messages is available in Chinese (Simplified), English (UK, U.S.), French (France), German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish (Spain) when Apple Intelligence is enabled on a [compatible iPhone](#).

Translations automatically appear inline when [Apple Intelligence is turned on](#) and you receive a text in another language. To change the translated language, do the following:

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation with incoming messages in a different language, scroll to the bottom, tap Translating *[language]*, then choose a different language.

### See translated captions in FaceTime

During a FaceTime call with someone who speaks a different language, you can use Apple Intelligence to see captions in your preferred language. Live Translation in FaceTime is available for one-on-one calls in English (UK, U.S.), French (France), German, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish (Spain) when Apple Intelligence is enabled on a [compatible iPhone](#).

1. Go to the FaceTime app  on your iPhone.
2. During a call, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible).
3. Tap , then tap Live Captions.

A Live Captions window appears, showing the automatically transcribed dialogue of the call near the top of the screen.

### Get translations during phone calls

When you have a call in the Phone app Draft with someone who speaks a different language, you can use Apple Intelligence to see captions in your preferred language. Live Translation in Phone is available for one-on-one calls in English (UK, U.S.), French (France), German, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish (Spain) when Apple Intelligence is enabled on a [compatible iPhone](#).

1. Go to the Phone app  on your iPhone.
2. &#SW1"></Variable>.</Para> </Item> <Item> <Para>&lt;more to come ...>

## Hear translations for conversations using AirPods

When someone nearby speaks to you in a different language, you can use your AirPods to hear what they're saying translated into your preferred language in real time. Live Translation with AirPods is available for conversations on <language support> when Apple Intelligence is enabled on a [compatible iPhone](#) and paired with <supported AirPods>.

1. Go to the Translate app  on your iPhone.
2. Wear your AirPods, and make sure they're connected to your device.
3. Tap Live.

For details see [<link>](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

# Use Apple Intelligence in Notes on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can record audio—like a class lecture—then use Apple Intelligence\* to generate a summary of the transcript, so you can get to the most important information at a glance.

Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.\*\* To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the [latest version of iOS](#) and have [Apple Intelligence turned on](#).

## View a summary of an audio recording in Notes

After you [record an audio note](#) in the Notes app, you can see a summary of the recording.

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a note with a recording.
3. Tap the recording, then tap Summary.

To copy or share the summary, tap , then tap Copy Summary or Share Summary.

**Tip:** You can also summarize an audio recording in Voice Memos  using Writing Tools. Tap a recording, tap , tap View Transcript, then follow the steps to [summarize and organize text](#).

\*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

\*\*Apple Intelligence is available in beta on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, with Siri and device language set to Chinese (Simplified), English (Australia, Canada, India, Ireland, New Zealand, Singapore, South Africa, UK, or U.S.), French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), or Spanish. Some features may not be available in all regions or languages. For more information, see the Apple Support article [How to get Apple Intelligence](#).

# Use Apple Intelligence Draft in Phone on iPhone

You can use Apple Intelligence\* to generate a summary of a phone call you record in the Phone app.

You can also view summaries of voicemails that appear in-line with missed calls, so you can instantly see who reached out and what they said.

**Note:** Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.\*\* To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the [latest version of iOS](#) and have [Apple Intelligence turned on](#).

## View a summary of a phone call

<\_\_ href="Art/V0009\_TranscriptSummary-1V\_UG.mp4" class="Video \_\_ ">"

1. Go to the Phone app  on your iPhone.

2. [Record a call](#).

Your recording is saved in the Notes app.

3. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.

4. Open the recording of your call (in the Call Recordings folder).

5. Tap the recording, then tap Summary.

To copy the summary, tap , then tap Copy Summary. To share the summary, tap , then tap Share Summary.

## View voicemail summaries

Para

1. Para

Para

\*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

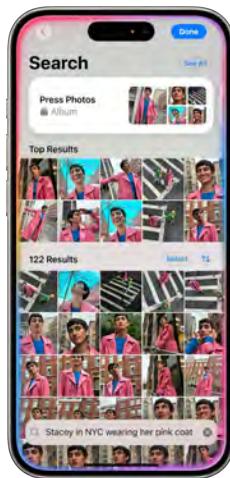
\*\*Apple Intelligence is available in beta on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, with Siri and device language set to Chinese (Simplified), English (Australia, Canada, India, Ireland, New Zealand, Singapore, South Africa, UK, or U.S.), French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), or Spanish. Some features may not be available in all regions or languages. For more information, see the Apple Support article [How to get Apple Intelligence](#).

# Use Apple Intelligence in Photos on iPhone

With Apple Intelligence,\* you can find just about anything in the photos and videos you capture, create memory movies of stories you want to see, and focus on the most important parts of your photos by removing distracting objects.

**Note:** Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.\*\* To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the [latest version of iOS](#) and have [Apple Intelligence turned on](#).

## Search for specific photos and videos with Apple Intelligence



Apple Intelligence makes it even easier to find a specific photo or a key moment in a video—just describe what you want to find.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search, then enter a description using natural language—"Maya skateboarding in a tie-dye shirt," or "Sadie cartwheeling on the grass," for example.

*Note:* For more information on naming people and pets in photos, see [Find and name people and pets in Photos](#).

3. Do any of the following:
  - *See all search results:* Tap See All.
  - *Select specific search results:* Tap Select, then select the photos and videos you want to share or add to an album.
  - *Sort search results in reverse chronological order:* Tap .
4. When you're finished, tap Done.

## Create a memory movie

You can create a custom memory movie of a story you want to see, right in Photos. Just type a description, and Apple Intelligence finds the best photos and videos, crafts a storyline with unique chapters and a narrative arc, and sets it to music.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down to Memories, then tap Create.
3. Type a description of the movie you want to create from your library, then tap Done.

## Remove distractions from your photos



You can use the Clean Up tool to remove distracting objects in the background of a photo.

*Note:* Clean Up is not available in all languages or regions. For more information, see the Apple Support article [Requirements to use Clean Up in Photos](#).

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.

2. Open a photo, tap , then tap Clean Up.

*Note:* After you tap Clean Up, some items may be highlighted automatically so you can quickly tap to remove them.

3. Tap, brush, or circle what you want to remove.

Use two fingers to pinch to zoom or pan the image.

*Note:* If you brush over a person's face, the face may become blurred with a pixelated effect.

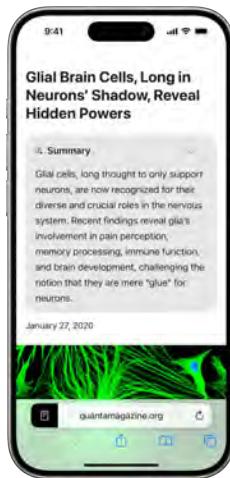
4. When you're finished, tap Done.

\*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

\*\*Apple Intelligence is available in beta on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, with Siri and device language set to Chinese (Simplified), English (Australia, Canada, India, Ireland, New Zealand, Singapore, South Africa, UK, or U.S.), French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), or Spanish. Some features may not be available in all regions or languages. For more information, see the Apple Support article [How to get Apple Intelligence](#).

## Get webpage summaries with Apple Intelligence on iPhone

With Apple Intelligence,\* you can generate summaries of webpages in the Safari app.



Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.\*\* To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the [latest version of iOS](#) and have [Apple Intelligence turned on](#).

## Summarize a webpage

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Show Reader.
3. Tap Summarize at the top of the page.

To return to the normal view, tap , then tap Hide Reader.

You can also use Writing Tools to summarize webpages. See [Use Writing Tools with Apple Intelligence](#).

\*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

\*\*Apple Intelligence is available in beta on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, with Siri and device language set to Chinese (Simplified), English (Australia, Canada, India, Ireland, New Zealand, Singapore, South Africa, UK, or U.S.), French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), or Spanish. Some features may not be available in all regions or languages. For more information, see the Apple Support article [How to get Apple Intelligence](#).

## Use ChatGPT with Apple Intelligence on iPhone

If you choose to allow Apple Intelligence to work with ChatGPT from OpenAI,\* you can do the following:

Get more answers from Siri:

Siri can tap into ChatGPT to provide answers when that might be helpful for certain requests including questions about photos and documents.

Compose text in Writing Tools:

Writing Tools can use ChatGPT to compose text or images from just a description.

Use ChatGPT with visual intelligence:

Use visual intelligence with Camera Control to quickly learn more about the places and objects around you.

You don't need a ChatGPT account, but if you have one—free or paid—you can connect to your account. With a ChatGPT paid account, your iPhone can use advanced ChatGPT capabilities more often.

**Note:** Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.\*\* To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the [latest version of iOS](#) and have [Apple Intelligence turned on](#). The ChatGPT extension is available only in regions where the ChatGPT app and service are available. Refer to [OpenAI](#) for ChatGPT availability.\*\*\*

## Set up ChatGPT

When you first [compose text in Writing Tools](#), [access ChatGPT with visual intelligence](#), or [use Siri to get answers from ChatGPT](#), you may be prompted to turn on the ChatGPT extension. You can also set up the extension in Settings.

**Note:** You must be at least 13 years old or the minimum age required in your country to consent to use ChatGPT. For more information, see [OpenAI Terms of Use](#).

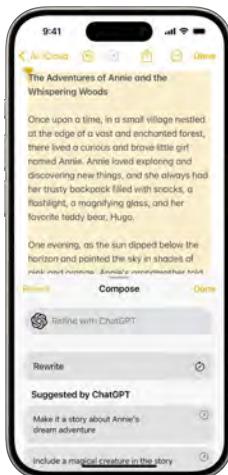
1. Go to Settings , then tap Apple Intelligence & Siri.
2. Below Extensions, tap ChatGPT, then tap Set Up.
3. Do one of the following:
  - *Use ChatGPT without an account:* Tap Enable ChatGPT.
  - *Use ChatGPT with an existing account:* Tap Use ChatGPT with an Account, then follow the onscreen instructions.

**Note:** If you want your requests saved to your ChatGPT chat history, you must be signed in to a ChatGPT account.

If you later decide to use ChatGPT with an account, go to Settings  > Apple Intelligence & Siri, tap ChatGPT, then tap Sign In.

## Compose text with Writing Tools

After you [set up the ChatGPT extension](#), you can compose text in Writing Tools.



1. While typing, tap the text field, tap , then tap Writing Tools.
2. Swipe up, then tap Compose.
3. Describe what you want ChatGPT to write—for example, "A bedtime story about a girl who visits a magical world where she befriends a caterpillar on its journey to becoming a butterfly."
4. Tap .

5. If you're asked for more details, do one of the following:
  - *Add more details*: Tap a field, enter your response, then tap **Update**.
  - *Continue without adding more details*: Tap **Ignore**.
6. After viewing the text, do any of the following:
  - *Rewrite text*: Tap **Rewrite**.
  - *Incorporate suggestions by ChatGPT*: Tap an option, then tap .
  - *Revert to the unedited version of your text*: Tap **Revert**.
7. When you're finished, tap **Done**.

## Use visual intelligence to ask ChatGPT for information

After you [set up the ChatGPT extension](#), you can use visual intelligence to ask ChatGPT for information about things around you.

1. Click and hold the Camera Control ([on supported models](#)), or use [an alternate option](#).
2. Point your iPhone camera at an object in front of you.
3. Tap  to ask ChatGPT about the object.

After you tap , you can type or dictate a follow-up question in the text field at the bottom of the screen.
4. Tap  to close the ChatGPT results, then swipe up from the bottom of the screen to close visual intelligence.

## Use Siri to get answers from ChatGPT

After you [set up the ChatGPT extension](#), Siri can tap into ChatGPT when it might be helpful to get the information you're looking for.

[Activate Siri](#), then, in a supported language, say or type something like:

- "Hey Siri, ask ChatGPT to compose a haiku about dragons."
- "What should I get my uncle for his 70th birthday? He loves to fish."
- "Hey Siri, ask ChatGPT for some ideas of how to spend a free afternoon in Malibu if I don't feel like hitting the beach."
- "Hey Siri, compose a limerick about a tiger named Terry."
- "What kind of recipes can I make with this?" with a photo of fruit open in the Photos app.
- "Hey Siri, ask ChatGPT to summarize this document for me," with a document—like a PDF of a lease agreement—open in the Files app.

If Siri determines that ChatGPT would be helpful, it asks if you want to use ChatGPT to fulfill the request. You're always asked to confirm before any photos or files are sent to ChatGPT.

**Tip:** If you want to have Siri send a request without confirming, you can start your question with "Ask ChatGPT." You can also turn off Siri confirmations in Settings. See [Send requests to ChatGPT without confirming](#).

## Send requests to ChatGPT without confirming

You control when ChatGPT is used and are asked before any of your information is shared. You can choose to let Siri send requests to ChatGPT automatically without **Draft**.

1. Go to Settings , then tap Apple Intelligence & Siri.
2. Below Extensions, tap ChatGPT.
3. Turn off Confirm ChatGPT Requests.

You're always asked before any photos or files are sent to ChatGPT.

## Turn off ChatGPT

1. Go to Settings , then tap Apple Intelligence & Siri.
2. Tap ChatGPT, then turn off Use ChatGPT.

If you want to prevent Siri from suggesting ChatGPT when you make a request, turn off ChatGPT, then turn off Setup Prompts.

To block access to the ChatGPT extension, see [Block access to Intelligence Extensions](#).

## ChatGPT and privacy

When using the ChatGPT extension, you choose what content to send to ChatGPT. Your request and attachments, as well as limited data associated with the request, such as current time zone, country, device type, language, and feature being used when making the request, are sent to ChatGPT to answer your request and enable ChatGPT to provide you accurate and relevant results. Your IP address is obscured from ChatGPT, but your general location is provided for purposes such as enabling ChatGPT to prevent fraud and comply with applicable law.

If you access the ChatGPT extension without an account, only the information described above will be sent to ChatGPT. OpenAI does not receive any information tied to your Apple Account. OpenAI must process your data solely for the purpose of fulfilling your request, and not store your request or any responses it provides unless required under applicable laws. OpenAI also must not use your request to improve or train its models.

When you are signed in to a ChatGPT account, your account settings and OpenAI's data privacy policies apply.

For more information, see [ChatGPT Extension & Privacy](#).

\*Apple Intelligence and ChatGPT use generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

\*\*Apple Intelligence is available in beta on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, with Siri and device language set to Chinese (Simplified), English (Australia, Canada, India, Ireland, New Zealand, Singapore, South Africa, UK, or U.S.), French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), or Spanish. Some features may not be available in all regions or languages. For more information, see the Apple Support article [How to get Apple Intelligence](#).

# Apple Intelligence and privacy on iPhone

Apple Intelligence\* delivers intelligence that is relevant for you and grounded in your personal context while protecting your privacy with a groundbreaking step forward for privacy in AI. The cornerstone of Apple Intelligence is on-device processing, so it is aware of your personal information without collecting your personal information.

For more complex requests that require Draft more computational capacity, Apple Intelligence can use Private Cloud Compute, which extends the privacy and security of your Apple products like iPhone into the cloud to unlock even more intelligence. Private Cloud Compute uses larger, server-based models powered by Apple silicon. Your data is never stored. It is only used to fulfill your requests. And independent privacy and security researchers can verify this privacy promise at any time.

**Note:** Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.\*\* To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the [latest version of iOS](#) and have [Apple Intelligence turned on](#).

## About Private Cloud Compute

When a user makes a request, Apple Intelligence analyzes whether it can be processed on device. For more complex requests, it can draw on Private Cloud Compute, which extends the privacy and security of your iPhone into the cloud. With Private Cloud Compute, only the data that is relevant to your request is processed on Apple silicon servers, before being removed. When requests are routed to Private Cloud Compute, data is not stored or made accessible to Apple, and is only used to fulfill the user's requests. Independent privacy and security researchers can inspect the code that runs on Apple silicon servers that enable Private Cloud Compute to verify this privacy promise at any time.

The Apple silicon servers that form the foundation of Private Cloud Compute provide unprecedented cloud security. This starts with the Secure Enclave, which protects critical encryption keys on the server just as it does on a user's iPhone, while Secure Boot ensures the OS running on the server is signed and verified, just like in iOS. Trusted Execution Monitor makes sure only signed and verified code runs, and attestation enables a user's device to securely verify the identity and configuration of a Private Cloud Compute cluster before sending a request. And to verify Apple's privacy promise, independent experts can inspect the software that runs on Private Cloud Compute servers.

**Note:** To learn more, go to [Private Cloud Compute: A new frontier for AI privacy in the cloud](#).

## Create an Apple Intelligence Report

You can generate a report of requests your iPhone has sent to Private Cloud Compute.

1. Go to Settings , then tap Privacy & Security.
2. Tap Apple Intelligence Report, then choose a report duration for the last 15 minutes (default) or last 7 days. Choose off to disable the report.

**Note:** The report may be empty if there haven't been any Private Cloud Compute requests since you changed the duration.

3. Tap Export Activity, choose a place to store the file, then tap Export.

The report is saved as a file named Apple\_Intelligence\_Report.json.

4. Open the file with a text reader.

\*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

Draft  
\*\*Apple Intelligence is available in beta on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, with Siri and device language set to Chinese (Simplified), English (Australia, Canada, India, Ireland, New Zealand, Singapore, South Africa, UK, or U.S.), French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), or Spanish. Some features may not be available in all regions or languages. For more information, see the Apple Support article [How to get Apple Intelligence](#).

# Block access to Apple Intelligence features in Screen Time on iPhone

You can turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions in Screen Time to restrict access to certain Apple Intelligence\* features like Writing Tools, image creation features, and intelligence extensions on supported devices.

**Note:** You can use Apple Intelligence features on any iPhone 16 model, iPhone 15 Pro, iPhone 15 Pro Max, a Mac or iPad with M1 or later, or an iPad mini (A17 Pro). Apple Intelligence is not available in all languages or regions.\*\* To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the [latest version of iOS](#) and have [Apple Intelligence turned on](#).

## Block access to Writing Tools

1. Go to Settings , then tap Screen Time.
2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Tap Intelligence & Siri, tap Writing Tools, then tap Allow or Don't Allow.

## Block access to image creation features

You can restrict access to image creation features like Image Playground, Genmoji, and Image Wand.

1. Go to Settings , then tap Screen Time.
2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Tap Intelligence & Siri, tap Image Creation, then tap Allow or Don't Allow.

## Block access to Intelligence Extensions

You can restrict access to third-party AI provider extensions—like ChatGPT.

1. Go to Settings , then tap Screen Time.
2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Tap Intelligence & Siri, tap Intelligence Extensions, then tap Allow or Don't Allow.

\*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

\*\*Apple Intelligence is available in beta on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, with Siri and device language set to Chinese (Simplified), English (Australia, Canada, India, Ireland, New Zealand, Singapore, South Africa, UK, or U.S.), French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), or Spanish. Some features may not be available in all regions or languages. For more information, see the Apple Support article [How to get Apple Intelligence](#).

Draft

# iPhone safety features Draft

## Use SOS to contact emergency services on your iPhone

In case of emergency, use your iPhone to quickly and easily call for help, share your Medical ID, and alert your emergency contacts (provided that cellular service is available).

If your carrier's cellular network is unavailable, iPhone displays  and attempts to route any emergency calls through other networks, if available.

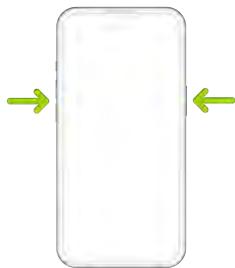
On [supported models](#), you may also be able to contact emergency services via satellite  if cellular networks are unavailable. See [Use Emergency SOS via satellite](#).

**Important:** If an emergency call has been made and you don't need emergency services, don't hang up. Wait until a responder answers, then explain that you don't need help.

### Quickly call emergency services (all countries or regions except India)

- Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends, then release the buttons.

Or, you can enable iPhone to start Emergency SOS when you quickly press the side button five times. Go to [Settings](#)  > [Emergency SOS](#), then turn on [Call with 5 Presses](#).



After an emergency call ends, your iPhone alerts your emergency contacts with a text message, unless you choose to cancel. Your iPhone sends your current location (if available) and—for a period of time after you enter SOS mode—your emergency contacts receive updates when your location changes.

### Quickly call emergency services (India)

- Quickly press the side button three times until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends.
- If you've turned on Accessibility Shortcut, simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends, then release the buttons.

By default, iPhone plays a warning sound, starts a countdown, then calls the emergency services.

After an emergency call ends, your iPhone alerts your emergency contacts with a text message, unless you choose to cancel. Your iPhone sends your current location (if available) and—for a period of time after you enter SOS mode—your emergency contacts receive updates when your location changes.

## Dial the emergency number when Draft your iPhone is locked

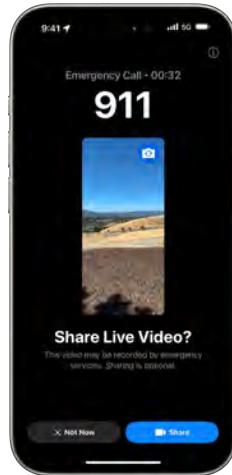
1. On the Passcode screen, tap Emergency.
2. Dial the emergency number (for example, 911 in the U.S.), then tap .

## Text Emergency Services (not available in all countries or regions)

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In the To field, type 911 or your local emergency services number.
3. Type your emergency.
4. Tap the send button.

## Share live video or existing photos with emergency services (not available in all countries or regions)

If requested by emergency services you can use Emergency SOS Live Video to stream live video or upload existing photos and videos to emergency services.



- If you get a request to share video or photos while on an emergency services call, do any of the following:
  - *Share live video:* Tap Share when prompted to begin streaming live video to emergency services. You can pause or restart sharing at any time by tapping the Camera button. You can stop sharing at any time by tapping , and then tapping Stop Sharing Camera or End Call.
  - *Share existing photos or videos:* Tap Choose when prompted, then select the photos or videos you want to send to emergency services.
  - *Decline:* Tap Not Now when prompted if you don't want to share videos or photos with emergency services.

*Note:* Emergency SOS Live Video is available on iPhone 14 or later, is subject to device limitations, and may not be available in all situations.

## Change your Emergency SOS settings

1. Go to Settings  > Emergency SOS on your iPhone.

- Turn “Call with Hold and Release” on or off: Hold and release the side and volume buttons to start a countdown to call emergency services.
- Turn “Call with 5 presses” on or off: Rapidly press the side button five times to start a countdown to call emergency services.
- Manage your emergency contacts: In Health, tap Set Up Emergency Contacts or Edit Emergency Contacts. See [Set up and view your Medical ID](#).

## Important information about emergency calls on iPhone

- Some cellular networks may not accept an emergency call from iPhone if iPhone isn't activated, if iPhone isn't compatible with or configured to operate on a particular cellular network, or (when applicable) if iPhone doesn't have a SIM card or the SIM card is PIN-locked.
- In certain countries or regions, your location information (if determinable) may be accessed by emergency service providers when you make an emergency call.
- Review your carrier's emergency calling information to understand the limits of emergency calling over Wi-Fi.
- With CDMA, when an emergency call ends, iPhone enters *emergency call mode* for a few minutes to allow a callback from emergency services. During this time, data transmission and text messages are blocked.
- After making an emergency call, certain call features that block or silence incoming calls may be disabled for a short period of time to allow a callback from emergency services. These features include Do Not Disturb, Silence Unknown Callers, and Screen Time.
- On an [iPhone with Dual SIM](#), if you don't turn on Wi-Fi Calling for a line, any incoming phone calls on that line (including calls from emergency services) go directly to voicemail (if available from your carrier) when the other line is in use; you won't receive missed call notifications.

If you set up conditional call forwarding (if available from your carrier) from one line to another when a line is busy or not in service, the calls don't go to voicemail; contact your carrier for setup information.

- When using an iPhone with a USB-C connector and compatible accessory, data transfer over USB 3 and DisplayPort connections is unavailable after an emergency session (call or text) has been initiated, and remains unavailable for up to 5 minutes from the end of the session. This time varies by country or region. To continue using your accessory, disconnect and reconnect your device after this period. Charging is not affected and will continue to function.

## Set up and view your Medical ID

A Medical ID provides information about you that may be important in an emergency, like allergies, medical conditions, and your emergency contacts. Your iPhone and Apple Watch can automatically share your Medical ID during an emergency call (U.S. and Canada only) and in-person to first responders.

### Create your Medical ID

Set up a Medical ID in the Health app.

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture at the top right, then tap Medical ID.
3. Tap Get Started or Edit, then enter your information.
4. Below Emergency Contacts, tap Add Emergency Contact, then add your contacts.

After an emergency call ends, your iPhone alerts your emergency contacts with a text message, unless you choose to cancel. Your iPhone sends your current location (if available) and—for a period of time after you enter SOS mode—your emergency contacts receive updates when your location changes.

5. Tap Done.

**Tip:** To view your Medical ID from the Home Screen, touch and hold the Health app icon, then choose Medical ID.

## Allow emergency services and first responders to access your Medical ID

The information in your Medical ID can be shared automatically during an emergency call (U.S. and Canada only), and also appears on the Lock Screen of your iPhone and Apple Watch.

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture at the top right, then tap Medical ID.
3. Tap Edit, scroll to the bottom, then turn on Show When Locked and Emergency Call.

**Note:** A first responder views your Medical ID from the Lock Screen by swiping up or pressing the Home button (depending on your iPhone model), tapping Emergency on the passcode screen, then tapping Medical ID.

## Use Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone

iPhone displays  when you're outside cellular and Wi-Fi coverage; Emergency SOS via satellite may still be available.

**Important:** If an Emergency SOS via satellite session has been made and you don't need emergency services, don't hang up. Wait until a responder answers, then explain that you don't need help.

**Note:** iPhone satellite features are available on [supported models](#). Emergency SOS via satellite isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Emergency SOS via satellite availability](#).

### Connect to Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone

1. Try calling 911 or emergency services even if your normal cellular carrier network isn't available.

If your carrier's cellular network is unavailable, iPhone displays  and attempts to route any emergency calls through other networks, if available.

2. If the call doesn't go through, tap **Emergency Text via Satellite** to text emergency services.

You can also go to the Messages app and text 911 or SOS, then tap **Emergency Services**.

3. Tap **Report Emergency** and follow the onscreen instructions.

**Important:** To help you connect to a satellite, make sure to hold your phone naturally in your hand—you don't need to raise your arm or hold your phone up, but make sure your phone has a clear line of sight to the sky. If you're under heavy foliage or surrounded by other obstructions, you might not be able to connect to a satellite.

After you're connected, your iPhone starts a text conversation by sharing important information including your Medical ID and emergency contact details (if you [set them up](#)). It also shares your answers to the emergency questionnaire, your location (including elevation), and your iPhone's battery level. In addition, you can also choose to share the information you send to emergency services with your emergency contacts.



Try the demo before going to a remote location

If you're planning a trip to a remote location, you can create your Medical ID, add emergency contacts, and try the Emergency SOS demo before you go.

1. Go to **Settings** > **Emergency SOS** on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down and tap **Try Demo**.

*Note:* The Emergency SOS demo doesn't start a call to emergency services.

## Request Roadside Assistance via satellite on your iPhone

On [supported models](#), you can request Roadside Assistance via satellite when you're outside cellular and Wi-Fi coverage.

### Request Roadside Assistance via satellite on your iPhone

1. Open the **Messages** app on your iPhone.

2. Tap  at the top of the screen, then type "Roadside" in the address field.



3. Tap Roadside Assistance and follow the onscreen instructions.

**Important:** To help you connect to a satellite, make sure to hold your phone naturally in your hand—you don't need to raise your arm or hold your phone up, but make sure your phone has a clear line of sight to the sky. If you're under heavy foliage or surrounded by other obstructions, you might not be able to connect to a satellite.

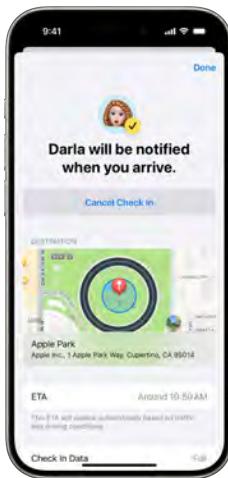
After you're connected, you'll be asked for important information, like the model of your car and the issue you're having.

After you answer the questions, you're guided to connect to a satellite and to send messages directly to a roadside assistance provider. They may ask follow-up questions to make sure they're sending you the right kind of help. You can follow up with them with any questions about the estimated time until someone arrives and about any fees associated with the service.

Roadside Assistance via satellite isn't available in all countries or regions. For more information, see the Apple Support article [Request Roadside Assistance via satellite on your iPhone](#).



## Use Check In on iPhone to let your friends know you've arrived



Note: Check In requires iOS 17 or later for both the sender and recipient.

## How Check In works

You can use Check In on iPhone to automatically notify a friend that your iPhone has arrived, and choose what details they can see if you don't successfully complete your Check In.

Similarly, if a friend sends you a Check In but their iPhone hasn't arrived as expected, you can view their location, battery percentage, cellular signal, and more.

## Send a Check In

1. Open the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the top of the screen and add a recipient, or select an existing conversation.
3. Tap , tap More, tap Check In, then tap Edit.
4. Choose one of the following:
  - When I Arrive: Specify your destination, how you're traveling (driving, transit, or walking), and add extra time if needed. Check In monitors your journey and notifies your friend if your iPhone isn't progressing for an extended period of time or if it doesn't reach your destination as expected. When you arrive at your destination successfully, the Check In automatically completes and notifies your friend that your iPhone has arrived.
  - After a timer: Specify a period of time—for example, if you're meeting someone new. If you don't end the Check In before the time you set, Check In notifies your friend.
5. Tap .

If your iPhone doesn't arrive at your destination or you don't cancel the Check In, and you don't respond to the Check In prompts, the details of your iPhone's journey will be sent to your friend.

To change the details you want to share with your friend if you don't complete your Check In as expected, see [Choose what details you share](#).

**Note:** If you start a Check In and then lose service or your iPhone powers off, your Check In recipient may get a delayed or early notification and have the option to view the iPhone details you shared with them.

## Add time to your Check In

If you need extra time, you can add time to your Check In. Draft

1. Open the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the conversation with the friend you sent a Check In to.
3. On the Check In message, tap Details, tap Add Time, then select one of the options.

## Cancel a Check In

If you've completed your journey, or you want to end your session for any reason, you can cancel your Check In to let your friend know.

1. Open the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the conversation with the friend you sent a Check In to.
3. On the Check In message, tap Details, then tap Cancel Check In and confirm.

## Choose what details you share

You can change the details you share with your friend during a Check In.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Messages on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down and tap Check In Data.
3. Choose what details you want to share if you don't complete your Check In as expected:
  - *Limited*: Share your current location, in addition to the network signal and battery details of your iPhone and Apple Watch.
  - *Full*: Share the data above (current location, network signal, and battery details), in addition to the route you've traveled and the last time you unlocked your iPhone or removed your Apple Watch.

# Manage Crash Detection on iPhone 14 or later

## What is Crash Detection?

If your iPhone 14 or later (any model) detects a severe car crash, it can help connect you to emergency services and notify your emergency contacts.

## How Crash Detection works

When your iPhone detects a severe car crash, it will display an alert and will automatically initiate an emergency phone call after 20 seconds unless you cancel. If you are unresponsive, your iPhone will play an audio message for emergency services, which informs them that you've been in a severe crash and gives them your latitudinal and longitudinal coordinates with an approximate search radius.

When a crash is detected, Crash Detection won't override any existing emergency calls placed by other means.

If you're in a severe car crash and unresponsive in a location without a cellular or Wi-Fi connection, iPhone will attempt to contact emergency services using [Emergency SOS via satellite](#), where available.

## Turn Crash Detection on or off

Crash Detection is on by default. You can turn off alerts and automatic emergency calls from Apple after a severe car crash in [Settings](#) > Emergency SOS, then turn off Call After Severe Crash. If you have third-party apps registered to detect crashes on your device, they will still be notified.

## If you have CarPlay or Apple Watch

If your iPhone has Crash Detection turned on and is connected to your vehicle through CarPlay, the Crash Detection features (dialing emergency services) will go through your iPhone.

If you're wearing your Apple Watch at the time of the event, dialing emergency services will be placed by iPhone but Crash Detection features will be routed through Apple Watch.

For more information, see [Use Crash Detection on iPhone or Apple Watch to call for help in an accident](#).

## Reset privacy and security settings in an emergency

You can use Safety Check on iPhone to quickly stop sharing your device access and personal information with others. Safety Check helps you quickly change your passcode and Apple Account password, stop sharing your location with Find My, restrict Messages and FaceTime to the device in your hand, and more.

1. Go to [Settings](#) > Privacy & Security > Safety Check on your iPhone.
2. Tap Emergency Reset, tap Start Emergency Reset, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You can also use Safety Check to periodically review and update the information you share with people, apps, and devices. To learn more about what Safety Check does, see [How Safety Check on iPhone works to keep you safe](#) in the Personal Safety User Guide.

**Important:** You might also be sharing information that Safety Check can't review or change—for example, accounts and passwords, social media sharing, and information shared from another device. To help you decide on additional steps for reducing the information you share, see [Additional considerations when using Safety Check](#) in the Personal Safety User Guide.

## Family Sharing

### Set up Family Sharing on iPhone

Family Sharing lets you and up to five other family members share access to Apple services, eligible purchases, an iCloud storage plan, and more. You can even help locate each other's missing devices.

One adult family member—the *organizer*—invites other family members to participate. When family members join, Family Sharing is set up on everyone's devices automatically. The group then chooses which services and features they want to use and share.

Family Sharing is available on eligible devices. See the Apple Support article [System requirements for iCloud](#).



## Create a Family Sharing group

You only need to set up Family Sharing on one device. Then it's available on all your devices that are signed in to the same [Apple Account](#).

1. Go to **Settings** ⓘ > [your name], then tap Family. Follow the onscreen instructions to set up your Family Sharing group.
2. Tap **Invite** next to suggested family members (if any are listed), or tap **Invite Others**, then do one of the following:
  - Tap **Create Child Account** to [create an Apple Account for a child](#) you want to add to your family.
  - Tap **Invite People**, then follow the onscreen instructions to invite family members and designate added adult members as parents or guardians. [Learn about types of Family Sharing members](#).

You can also add family members later. See [Add Family Sharing members](#).

3. Tap a feature you want to set up for your Family Sharing group (for example, Subscriptions), then follow the onscreen instructions.

To set up parental controls or Apple Cash for a child, tap their name, tap the feature, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You can see what you're sharing with your family and adjust sharing settings at any time.

To learn how to set up or join a Family Sharing group on all your devices, see the Apple Support article [Set up Family Sharing](#).

## What you can do with Family Sharing

You can set up or share the following with your Family Sharing group:

- **Passwords and passkeys:** You can share passwords and passkeys with people in your family to access important accounts. See [Share passwords](#).
- **An iCloud Drive folder:** Organize and share family documents, photos, and more. See [Share files and folders in iCloud Drive](#).
- **Apple and App Store subscriptions:** You can share Apple subscriptions, including iCloud+, and eligible App Store subscriptions. See [Share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members](#).
- **Purchases:** You can share items purchased in the App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV. All purchases are billed to the family organizer. See [Share App Store, Apple TV, and Apple Books purchases with Family Sharing](#).

- *Locations*: When you share your location with your Family Sharing group, all family members, including any new members added later, can use the Find My app  to see your location and help locate a missing device. See [Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices](#).
- *Apple Card and Apple Cash*: You can share Apple Card with trusted members of your Family Sharing group or set up an Apple Cash Family account for a child. See [Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing \(U.S. only\)](#).
- *Parental controls*: You can manage your children's purchases, how they use their Apple devices, and more. See [Set up parental controls with Family Sharing](#).
- *A device for your child*: You can set up a new iPhone or iPad for a child and customize parental controls. See [Set up a device for a child with Family Sharing](#).

## See recommendations for Family Sharing features

To see suggestions to help you get the most out of Family Sharing, go to Settings  > Family, then tap Recommended For Your Family.

# Add a member to a Family Sharing group on iPhone

With [Family Sharing](#), each family member joins the family group with their own [Apple Account](#). That way you can share access to subscriptions and other features without sharing personal information like photos or documents.

The family organizer can easily invite family members who have an Apple Account or create an Apple Account for a child who doesn't have one yet.

[Learn about types of Family Sharing members](#).

## Add a family member with an Apple Account

The organizer of the Family Sharing group can add a family member who has their own Apple Account.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Family, then tap  in the upper-right corner.
3. Tap Invite Others, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You can send the invitation using AirDrop, Messages, or Mail. If you're near the family member, you can also tap Invite in Person and ask the family member to enter their [Apple Account](#) email address (or phone number) and password on your device.

People you invite see your invitation at the top of Settings in the Family row. If they haven't accepted your invitation, you can also follow up with reminders.

## Create an Apple Account for a child

Children under 13 can't create an Apple Account on their own. (This age varies by country or region.) But if you're the family organizer or a parent or guardian, you can create an Apple Account for a child and add them to the Family Sharing group.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Family, then do one of the following:

- If you’re a parent or guardian: Tap .
- If you’re the organizer: Tap , then tap Create Child Account.

*Note:* If your child already has an Apple Account, tap Invite Others. They can enter their Apple Account and password on your device to accept the invitation.

3. Enter the child’s name and birthday. The child’s birthday is used to set suggested content restrictions that determine the content they can access.

You can also [block content and prevent iTunes & App Store purchases, allow or block calls and messages from specific contacts, and schedule time away from the screen](#) in Settings  > Screen Time; share your child’s location with all members of the Family Sharing group, including any new members added later; and use Ask to Buy. You can change these settings at any time. For more information, see any of the following:

- [Set up Screen Time for a family member](#)
- [Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices](#)
- [Apple Support article: Approve what kids buy with Ask to Buy](#)

4. Follow the onscreen instructions to finish creating the child account.

For more information about child accounts and the age at which a child can create their own Apple Account, see the Apple Support article [Create an Apple Account for your child](#).

To change device settings for image creation features, Writing Tools, and the ChatGPT extension, see [Block access to Apple Intelligence features in Screen Time](#).

If you want to join an existing Family Sharing group, [ask the organizer to add you](#). You can only be a member of one Family Sharing group at a time. If you want to join a different group, leave your current group first. See [Leave a Family Sharing group](#).

## Leave or remove a member from a Family Sharing group on iPhone

In a [Family Sharing group](#), the organizer can remove members or disband the group, and family members (other than teens with parental controls or children) can remove themselves.

[Learn about types of Family Sharing members](#).

### Remove a member from a family group

The organizer of a Family Sharing group can remove other members. When a family member is removed, they immediately lose access to shared subscriptions and content purchased by other members.

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
2. Tap [member’s name], then tap Remove [member’s name] from Family.

You can’t remove a child from your Family Sharing group. However, you can move them to another group or delete their Apple Account. See the Apple Support article [Move a child to another group using Family Sharing](#).

If you turned on Screen Time for a teen, Draft you need to turn off Screen Time settings before you can remove them from the group. See [Set up Screen Time for a family member](#).

## Leave a Family Sharing group

When you leave a Family Sharing group, you stop sharing your purchases and subscriptions with family members and immediately lose access to any content they've shared.

**Note:** The organizer can't leave the Family Sharing group. If you want to change the organizer, you must disband the group, and have another adult create a new one.

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
2. Tap *[your name]*, then tap Stop Using Family Sharing.

## Stop Family Sharing

When the family organizer turns off Family Sharing, all family members are removed from the group at the same time. When Family Sharing is turned off, all members immediately lose access to the shared content and subscriptions.

**Note:** If a child is in the Family Sharing group, the organizer must move the child to another group or delete their Apple Account before disbanding the group. See the Apple Support article [Move a child to another group using Family Sharing](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
2. Tap *[your name]*, then tap Stop Using Family Sharing.

# Share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members on iPhone

When you're in a [Family Sharing group](#), you can share Apple subscriptions and eligible App Store subscriptions with other family members.

If your Family Sharing group has [purchase sharing](#) turned on, any subscriptions shared with the group are billed directly to the organizer's default payment method.

**Note:** Not all services are available in all countries or regions, and some selections are subject to content restrictions set in Screen Time.

## Share Apple subscriptions

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
2. Tap Subscriptions, then do one of the following:
  - Tap a subscription you want to share, then follow the onscreen instructions.
  - Tap Manage Subscriptions, then tap a subscription.

See any of the following to learn more.

- **Apple Arcade:** See [Subscribe to Apple Arcade](#). All members of your family can download and play Apple Arcade games from the App Store. Each player gets a personalized account—your progress is carried over between devices.

- *Apple Fitness+:* See [Apple Fitness+ at a glance](#) in the Apple Fitness+ User Guide. All members of your family can access workouts in the Fitness app on their iPhone or iPad.
- *Apple Music:* See [Subscribe to Apple Music](#). With a family subscription, each family member gets their own music library and personal recommendations.
- *Apple News+:* See [Subscribe to Apple News+](#). All members of your family can read Apple News+ publications for no additional charge.
- *Apple TV+ and Apple TV channels:* See [Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or an Apple TV channel](#) and [Subscribe to Apple TV channels and apps](#). Each family member can watch on their iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, Apple TV, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices, using their own Apple Account and password.
- *iCloud+:* See [Subscribe to iCloud+](#). When you share iCloud+, all family members have access to iCloud+ features and storage. For storage, you only share the space—your photos and documents stay private and everyone keeps using their own accounts.

For information about combining your Apple subscriptions, see the Apple Support article [Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One](#).

## Share App Store subscriptions

You can choose which eligible App Store subscriptions you share with family members. For information about the App Store, see [Get apps in the App Store](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Family > Subscriptions > Manage Subscriptions.
2. Do either of the following:
  - *Share all new subscriptions:* Turn on Share with Family. When you purchase a new subscription that's eligible for sharing, it's shared with your Family Sharing members by default.
  - *Change the settings of a specific subscription:* Tap a subscription, then turn Share with Family on or off.

If you don't see Share with Family, the subscription isn't eligible for sharing.

# Share App Store, Apple TV, and Apple Books purchases with Family Sharing on iPhone

With [Family Sharing](#), the organizer can set up purchase sharing to share App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV purchases.

The organizer adds a payment method that's shared with the family; when a family member makes a purchase, the organizer is billed. The purchased item is added to the initiating family member's account and eligible purchases are shared with the rest of the family.

The family organizer can also require that children in the family group request approval for purchases or free downloads. See [Set up parental controls with Family Sharing](#).

## Turn on purchase sharing

When the family organizer turns on purchase sharing, they pay for family members' Draft

When the family organizer turns on purchase sharing, they pay for family members' purchases and must have a valid payment method on file.

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
2. Tap Purchase Sharing, then follow the onscreen instructions.

## Access shared content

When purchase sharing is turned on, you can download eligible apps and content that your family members buy. See any of the following Apple Support articles:

- [How to download apps and content that your family members purchased](#)
- [What types of content can I share with my family?](#)
- [If you can't find your family's shared content](#)

## Turn off purchase sharing

If you're the family organizer, you can turn off purchase sharing. Family Sharing members won't see your purchases, but you can still see items other members have shared with you.

**Note:** Even though your items aren't shared, any purchases you make still use the shared family payment method.

1. Go to Settings  > Family > Purchase Sharing.
2. Tap *[your name]*, then turn off Share Purchases.

If the organizer wants to turn off purchase sharing entirely, they can tap Stop Purchase Sharing.

If you don't want to share a specific item with your family members, see the Apple Support article [Hide and unhide music, movies, TV shows, audiobooks, and books](#).

You can also [share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members](#).

# Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPhone

With [Family Sharing](#), you can share your location with members of your Family Sharing group and help them find lost devices. When the family organizer sets up location sharing in Family Sharing settings, the organizer's location is automatically shared with everyone in the family, including any new members added later. Then, family members can choose whether or not to share their location.

## Share your location with family members

When you share locations with your family, they can [see your location in Find My](#).

You can also [get notified when family members change their locations](#)—for example, if a child leaves school during school hours.

1. Go to Settings  > Family > Location Sharing.
2. Turn on Location Sharing for the family member you want to share your location with.

You can repeat this step for each family member you want to share your location with. Each family member receives a message that you're sharing your location and can choose to share their location with you.

You can stop sharing your location with any family member at any time.

3. If you want to share your location Draft with new members that join later, turn on Automatically Share Location.

**Note:** Children and teens with [Screen Time turned on](#) may not be able to change their own location sharing settings.

To share your location, you must have Location Services turned on in [Settings](#) > Privacy & Security. See [Control the location information you share](#).

## Locate a family member's device

After you [share your location](#) with members of your Family Sharing group, they can help locate a missing device [added to the Find My app](#).

See [Locate a device in Find My](#).

Your devices are at the top of the list, and your family members' devices are below yours.

## Ask a family member to share an AirTag with you

If you receive a notification in the Find My app that says AirTag Detected Near You or Unknown AirTag, you can ask the family member who owns it to share the AirTag with you.

1. In the notification, tap Ask Owner to Share AirTag.
2. Tap Ask Owner at the bottom of the screen.

You can also use [Find Devices on iCloud.com](#) to locate a family member's missing device. See [Locate a device in Find Devices on iCloud.com](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

# Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing on iPhone

You can use Apple Cash and Apple Card with your [Family Sharing](#) group. The organizer of the Family Sharing group can set up Apple Cash for a child, and share Apple Card with trusted members of their Family Sharing group.

[Learn about types of Family Sharing members](#).

## Set up Apple Cash Family for a child

The family organizer can set up Apple Cash for a child.

**Note:** Apple Cash Family is only available in the U.S.

1. Go to the [Settings](#) app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Family, then tap the child for whom you want to set up Apple Cash.
3. Tap Apple Cash, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To see the card balance, monitor transactions, and narrow the list of people that the child can send money to, go to [Settings](#) > [Wallet & Apple Pay](#). See [Apple Cash Support](#).

For more information about system requirements and how to manage Apple Cash accounts, see the Apple Support articles [Set up and use Apple Cash Family](#) and [View and limit your child or teen's Apple Cash activity](#).

## Set up Apple Card Family

You can share your Apple Card with family members, manage payments, and control account settings and limits for children who are 13 years or older. You can also review and manage everyone's details.

*Note:* Apple Card Family is only available in the U.S.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Family, then tap Share My Apple Card.

The option only appears if you have Apple Card.

3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information about what owners, co-owners, and participants can do with Apple Card, see the Apple Support article [Set up Apple Card Family and add a co-owner and participants](#).

## Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone

With [Family Sharing](#), the organizer, or another adult designated as parent/guardian, can set up parental controls for children or other members in the Family Sharing group. You can use Screen Time to manage how your children use their Apple devices. You can also turn on Ask to Buy, so children must receive approval for eligible purchases and free downloads.

[Learn about types of Family Sharing members.](#)

*Note:* Communication Safety and some Web Content limits are turned on by default for children under 18 after [Screen Time is set up](#) (age varies by country or region).

### Customize parental controls during setup

When you [add a child](#) to your Family Sharing group or [set up a device for a child](#), you can customize parental controls from the start. You can change those settings at any time.

Follow the onscreen instructions during setup to add any of the following:

- Age-related restrictions for content in apps, books, TV shows, and movies
- Downtime and limits for specific apps
- Restrictions for who your child can communicate with
- Approvals for purchases or free downloads

See the Apple Support article [Use parental controls on your child's iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

### Receive warnings about sensitive content

Screen Time can check whether you or other family members have received or sent any sexually explicit photos or videos. See [Turn on or off checking for sensitive images and videos in communications on a family member's iPhone](#).

You can also block sensitive content and set restrictions on purchases. See [Block content and prevent iTunes & App Store purchases](#).

### Set up Screen Time for a child

Screen Time allows you to manage settings for downtime, app use, contacts, content ratings, and more. To use Screen Time, your child must be using an eligible device. See the Screen Time section in the Apple Support article [System Requirements for iCloud](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
2. Tap the child for whom you want to set up Screen Time, tap Screen Time, tap Continue, then do any of the following:
  - *Change restrictions for web content:* Tap Web Content, then select an option.
  - *Set a rating for using apps:* Tap Apps, then choose an age-appropriate rating for allowing app use (for example, Don't Allow, 4+, 9+) or choose Don't Allow to block the app regardless of age.
  - *Allow or block media content:* Tap a type of media content, then choose an age-appropriate rating for it.
3. Continue following the onscreen instructions to set up Screen Time options.

For information about Screen Time, see [Set up Screen Time for a family member](#).

To learn more about the different content and privacy restrictions, see the Apple Support article [Use parental controls on your child's iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

If your child requests more screen time, you can approve or decline the request in Settings  > Screen Time or in Messages .

## Turn on Ask to Buy

When you set up Ask to Buy, a child's purchases must be approved by the family organizer or a parent or guardian in the family group.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Family, then tap the child for whom you want to set up Ask to Buy.
3. Tap Ask To Buy, then tap Turn on Ask to Buy.

See the Apple Support article [Approve what kids buy with Ask to Buy](#).

**Note:** Age restrictions for Ask to Buy vary by region. In the United States, the family organizer can turn on Ask to Buy for any family member under age 18; for children under age 13, it's on by default.

You can also set up an Apple Cash Family account for a child. See [Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing \(U.S. only\)](#).

# Set up a device for a child with Family Sharing on iPhone

With Family Sharing, the organizer, a parent, or a guardian can use Quick Start on their iPhone to set up a new iPhone or iPad for a child and customize parental controls. You can also set up a device for a child without using Quick Start.

If you didn't sign in to a child's account when you set up their device, you can do so in Settings with their Apple Account and password, or by using proximity sign-in with a nearby iPhone or iPad.

Draft  
Note: If the child already has an Apple Account, make sure they've been added to your [Family Sharing group](#). If the child doesn't have an Apple Account and they're under 13 (this age varies by region), you can [create an Apple Account for them](#) while adding them to the group.

## Use Quick Start to set up an iPhone or iPad for a child

Draft  
Note: Requires iOS 16 or later. Bluetooth® must be turned on.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Make sure you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#) on your iPhone.
3. On the new iPhone or iPad you want to set up for your child, press and hold the side button or top button until the Apple logo appears.
4. Bring your iPhone next to the new device.
5. When you see Set Up New [device] on your iPhone, tap Continue, follow the onscreen instructions, then do one of the following:
  - If you have a child in your family group, tap your child's name.
  - If you need to create a new Apple Account for a child [who is under 13](#), tap Create New Child Account, then create an Apple Account for your child.
6. Follow the onscreen instructions to finish setting up your child's device.

## Set up an iPhone or iPad for a child without using Quick Start

1. Turn on the new device.
2. When the Quick Start screen appears, tap Set Up Without Another Device, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If your child is 12 or younger, their iPhone will need to be connected to a parent or guardian's device.

Draft  
Note: Exact age ranges may vary based on country or region.



3. Continue to follow the onscreen instructions to complete the setup.

## Set up an iPhone or iPad for a child in Settings

Draft  
If you didn't sign in to a child's account during setup, do the following:

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Make sure you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#) on your iPhone.

3. Do one of the following to sign in to the child's account:

- *Sign in with an email address or phone number and password:* Tap Sign in Manually, then tap "Sign in a child in my Family."
- *Sign in with a nearby iPhone or iPad:* Tap Use Another Apple Device, then follow the onscreen instructions. If you already have a child in your family group, tap their name, then tap Get Started. If you need to create a new Apple Account for a child, tap Create New Child Account.

4. Continue to follow the onscreen instructions to complete the setup.

You can turn on safety features for your child such as Content & Privacy Restrictions, Communication Limits, Screen Distance, and Communication Safety. See [Set up Screen Time for a family member](#) for more information.

*Note:* Screen Distance is available on [supported models](#).

## Share age ranges with apps on iPhone

After you set up Age Range for Apps for yourself or a child in your [Family Sharing group](#), certain apps can tailor your experiences to be age appropriate. For example, a parent can share that their child is under the age of 13, so their account is limited to child content (age restrictions vary by country or region).

You can set up the age range for yourself or your child in your Family Sharing group. See [Set up Family Sharing](#).

*Note:* Apps can only see an age range, and your birthday is kept private. Your choices sync to any device where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. Age Range for Apps is only available for third-party apps when the developer has implemented the necessary technical requirements.

### Set up Age Range for apps

1. Go to Settings  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Family, then tap your name or the name of a child.  
*If you don't see Family, [set up Family Sharing on iPhone](#).*
3. Tap Apple Account, then tap Set Up next to Age Range for Apps.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions.

*Note:* If you need to update your birthday or your child's birthday, see [Update the birth date associated with your Apple Account](#).

### Change when you share your age range or your child's age range

1. Go to Settings  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Family, then tap your name or the name of a child.  
*If you don't see Family, [set up Family Sharing on iPhone](#).*
3. Tap Apple Account, then tap Age Range for Apps.

4. Tap the pop-up menu next to Share With Apps, then choose an option for you or your child's age range:

- *Always*: It's automatically shared with apps when they request it.
- *Ask First*: You can choose if you want to share when an app requests it.
- *Don't Share*: It's not shared with apps.

You can prevent child accounts from changing this option. See the Apple Support Article [Use parental controls on your child's iPhone or iPad](#).

## View and update details for apps that asked for your age range or your child's age range

If you chose to share your age range or your child's age range, you can view and update details for apps that requested the age range.

**Note:** You can only view and update these details on the device signed in to the relevant Apple Account. For example, if you want to check which apps have requested your child's age range, you have to use their device.

1. Go to Settings  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Family, then tap your name or the name of a child.  
If you don't see Family, [set up Family Sharing on iPhone](#).
3. Tap Apple Account, then tap Age Range for Apps.
4. Tap an app on the list.

You can see which apps requested the age range and whether or not it was shared.

5. If you want to update your age range or your sharing preference, tap Share Age Range Again.

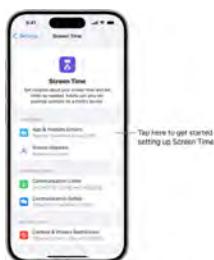
# Screen Time

## Get started with Screen Time on iPhone

You can get information about how you and your family members spend time on your devices—including which apps and websites you use and how often you pick up your device. Screen Time also lets you [schedule time away from the screen](#) and [set limits for app use](#).

### Turn on Screen Time

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Tap App & Website Activity, then tap Turn On App & Website Activity.



Use Screen Time on all your devices.

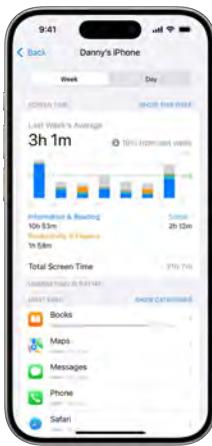
Draft  
You can share your Screen Time settings and reports across all your devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Scroll down, then turn on Share Across Devices.

## View your Screen Time summary

Any time after you [turn on Screen Time](#), you can view a report of your device use, including how much time you spend using certain kinds of apps, how often you pick up your iPhone and other devices, which apps send you the most notifications, and more.

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Tap See All App & Website Activity, then tap Devices to select which device you want to see usage for.
3. Tap Week to see a summary of your weekly use, or tap Day to see a summary of your daily use.



## Use the Screen Time widget to check your device use at a glance

You can quickly check your device use by [adding a Screen Time widget](#) to your Home Screen. The widget displays information from your Screen Time summary—the larger the widget you add, the more information it displays.

If you [set up Screen Time for family members](#) through Family Sharing, you can tap the widget to see a list of the people in your family group. Tap the name of a family member whose report you want to view.

You can also view your summary by tapping a Screen Time Weekly Report notification when one appears on your screen. (If the notification disappears, you can [find it in Notification Center](#).)

## Help protect your vision health with Screen Distance on iPhone

Viewing a device (or a book) too closely for an extended period of time can increase the risk of myopia (nearsightedness) for younger users, and eyestrain for users of all ages. In Screen Time, the Screen Distance feature uses the TrueDepth camera (on [supported models](#)) to detect when you hold iPhone closer than 12 inches for an extended period, and encourages you to move it farther away.

Screen Distance can remind younger users Draft to engage in healthy viewing habits that can lower their risk of myopia. It gives adult users the opportunity to reduce digital eyestrain.

**Note:** Screen Distance is turned on by default for children under 13 in a Family Sharing group.

## Turn Screen Distance on or off

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Tap Screen Distance, then turn Screen Distance on or off.

With Screen Distance on, when you hold the screen too close to your face for an extended period, Screen Distance covers the screen with an alert, preventing you from continuing. When you move iPhone more than 12 inches away, you can tap Continue to resume using it.



## Create, manage, and keep track of a Screen Time passcode on iPhone

You can create a passcode that must be entered before changing Screen Time settings you selected for yourself or a family member under 18 (age varies by country or region). Once you set a passcode for yourself or a family member, you can change or remove it later in Settings. You can also get notifications if your family member's passcode is used.

### Create a Screen Time passcode

When you set up a Screen Time passcode, it must be entered before you can change the settings you've chosen for yourself or a family member.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, then do one of the following:
  - *Set up a passcode for yourself:* Scroll down, then tap Lock Screen Time Settings.
  - *Set up a passcode for a family member:* Scroll down, then choose a family member from your Family Sharing group. Scroll down, tap Manage Screen Time, then tap Lock Screen Time Settings.

If you don't see your Family Sharing group, make sure you're signed in to your Apple Account and have Family Sharing set up. See [Sign in to your Apple Account](#) and [Set up Family Sharing](#).

3. Enter a four-digit passcode, then ~~enter~~<sup>Draft</sup> the passcode again to verify it.

**Note:** After setting a passcode for yourself, you can also set up Screen Time Passcode Recovery. If you set this feature up, you can use your Apple Account to reset your Screen Time passcode if you ever forget it.

## Change a Screen Time passcode

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, then do one of the following:
  - *Change a passcode for yourself:* Scroll down, tap Change Screen Time Passcode, then select Change Screen Time Passcode.
  - *Change a passcode for a family member:* Scroll down, then choose a family member from your Family Sharing group. Scroll down, tap Manage Screen Time, tap Change Screen Time Passcode, then select Change Screen Time Passcode.
- If you don't see your Family Sharing group, make sure you're signed in to your Apple Account and have Family Sharing set up. See [Sign in to your Apple Account](#) and [Set up Family Sharing](#).
3. Enter your current passcode (if changing a passcode for yourself) or your six-digit passcode for your iPhone (if changing a passcode for a family member).
4. Enter a new four-digit passcode, then enter the new passcode again to verify it.

## Remove a Screen Time passcode

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, then do one of the following:
  - *Remove a passcode for yourself:* Scroll down, tap Change Screen Time Passcode, then select Turn Off Screen Time Passcode.
  - *Remove a passcode for a family member:* Scroll down, then choose a family member from your Family Sharing group. Scroll down, tap Manage Screen Time, tap Change Screen Time Passcode, then select Turn Off Screen Time Passcode.
- If you don't see your Family Sharing group, make sure you're signed in to your Apple Account and have Family Sharing set up. See [Sign in to your Apple Account](#) and [Set up Family Sharing](#).
3. Enter your current passcode (if changing a passcode for yourself) or your six-digit passcode for your iPhone (if changing a passcode for a family member).

## Check the last time a Screen Time passcode was used

If you set up a Screen Time passcode for a family member, you can also view when the passcode was last used, and on which device.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, scroll down, then choose a family member from your Family Sharing group.

If you don't see your Family Sharing group, make sure you're signed in to your Apple Account and have Family Sharing set up. See [Sign in to your Apple Account](#) and [Set up Family Sharing](#).

### 3. Scroll down, then tap **Manage Screen Time**.

If a child's Screen Time passcode is used on their device, the parent/guardian will receive a notification. Screen Time Passcode Use notifications can be turned off by going to **Settings** > **Screen Time** > **[the child's name]** > **Manage Screen Time** > **Customize Notifications** > **Turn off Screen Time Passcode**.

**Note:** Screen Time Passcode Use will only appear on an iPhone with iOS 18.5 or later when the family member's passcode is used on a device with iOS 18.5, iPadOS 18.5, macOS 15.5, or later.

## Set schedules with Screen Time on iPhone

You can schedule time away from the screen, set time limits for app use, and more.

### Schedule time away from the screen

Block apps and notifications for periods when you want time away from your devices. For example, you might want to schedule downtime during meals or at bedtime.

During downtime, only calls, messages, and apps you choose to allow are available. To learn how to allow certain apps and contacts, see [Allow or block calls and messages from specific contacts](#) and [Choose apps and contacts to allow at all times](#).

1. Go to **Settings** > **Screen Time**.
2. Tap **App & Website Activity**, then turn on **App & Website Activity** if you haven't already.
3. Tap **Downtime**, then do one of the following:
  - Tap **Turn On Downtime Until Tomorrow**.
  - Tap **Scheduled** to schedule downtime in advance.

When you schedule downtime, a 5-minute reminder is sent before downtime begins. You can ignore the reminder, or turn on downtime until the beginning of the scheduled downtime.

4. Select **Every Day** or **Customize Days**, then set the start and end times.

You can turn off the Downtime schedule at any time by turning off **Scheduled**.

### Set limits for app use

Set a time limit for a category of apps (for example, Games or Social Networking) and for individual apps.

1. Go to **Settings** > **Screen Time**.
2. Tap **App Limits**, then tap **Add Limit**.
3. Select one or more app categories.

To set limits for individual apps, tap the category name to see all the apps in that category, then select the apps you want to limit. If you select multiple categories or apps, the time limit you set applies to all of them.

4. Tap Next at the top right, then set the amount of time allowed. Draft

To set an amount of time for each day, tap Customize Days, then set limits for specific days.

5. When you finish setting limits, tap Add.

## Choose apps and contacts to allow at all times

Specify apps that can be used and contacts you can communicate with at all times (for example, in the event of an emergency), even during downtime.

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time > Always Allowed.
2. To specify contacts you want to allow communication with, tap Contacts.

The option you selected in [communication limits](#) appears here. You can change this setting to Specific Contacts, then choose one of the following:

- *Choose From My Contacts*: To select specific people to allow communication with.
- *Add New Contact*: To add a new contact and allow communication with that person.

3. Tap  at the top left, then tap  below Allowed Apps or  below Choose Apps.
4. Tap  at the top left.

## Block apps, app downloads, websites, and purchases on iPhone

You can restrict access to apps, features, and websites, in addition to iTunes and App Store purchases.

### Block content and prevent iTunes & App Store purchases

Set Content & Privacy Restrictions to block inappropriate content and set restrictions for iTunes Store and App Store purchases.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.

- *Set restrictions for store purchases and redownloads:* Tap iTunes & App Store Purchases.
- *Remove an app or feature from the Home Screen:* Tap Allowed Apps & Features.
- *Set content ratings and other restrictions for App Store, Media, Web, & Game Center:* Tap App Store, Media, Web, & Games.
- *Restrict access to Apple Intelligence, Siri, and Math Results:* Tap Intelligence & Siri. (See [Block access to Apple Intelligence features in Screen Time](#).)
- *Allow changes to privacy settings in certain features, apps, or media:* Tap an option below Privacy, then tap Allow Changes or Don't Allow Changes.
- *Allow changes to other settings:* Tap an option below Allow Changes To, then tap Allow or Don't Allow.

To allow access to image creation features, Writing Tools, and the ChatGPT extension, see [Block access to Apple Intelligence features in Screen Time](#). You can also [set up Age Range for apps](#).

## Turn built-in apps and features on or off

You can restrict the use of built-in apps or features. If you turn off an app, it isn't deleted; it's temporarily hidden from your Home Screen until you turn it back on.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Tap Allowed Apps & Features, then turn off the apps or features you want to restrict.

## Block websites

You can block specific websites by URL.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Tap App Store, Media, Web, & Games, then tap Web Content.
4. Select Limit Adult Websites, tap Add Website below Never Allow, and enter the URLs of the websites you want to block

# Block calls and messages with Screen Time on iPhone

## Allow or block calls and messages from specific contacts

You can either allow or block communication—including incoming and outgoing phone calls, FaceTime calls, and messages—from certain contacts in iCloud, either at all times or during certain periods.

If you haven't already turned on Contacts in iCloud, go to **Settings** > [your name] > iCloud, tap See All next to Saved to iCloud, then turn on Contacts.

1. Go to the **Settings** app on your iPhone.
2. Tap **Screen Time**, tap **Communication Limits**, tap **During Screen Time**, then select one of the following for communication at all times (other than during downtime):
  - **Contacts Only**: To allow communication with only your contacts.
  - **Contacts & Groups with at Least One Contact**: To only allow one-on-one conversations with people in your contacts and group conversations that include at least one person in your contacts.
  - **Everyone**: To allow conversations with anyone, including unknown numbers.
3. Tap **Back** at the top left, then tap **During Downtime**.

The option you selected in step 3 (for During Screen Time) is already set here. You can change this setting to **Specific Contacts**, then choose one of the following:

- **Choose From My Contacts**: To allow communication with your existing contacts during downtime.
- **Add New Contact**: To add a contact and allow communication with them during Downtime.

If someone who's currently blocked by your Communication Limit settings tries to call you or send you a message, their communication won't go through.

If you try to call or send a message to someone who's currently blocked by your Communication Limit settings, their name or number appears in red in your list of recent calls or messages, and your communication won't go through. You can communicate with them when the communication limit is changed. If the limit applies only to downtime, you receive a Time Limit message. You can resume communication with the contact when downtime is over.

To resume communication with contacts who are blocked by your Communication Limit settings, change the settings by following the steps above.

## Check for sensitive images and videos in Screen Time on iPhone

Your iPhone can detect nudity in images and videos before they're sent or received. This feature is available in **Messages**, **AirDrop**, [Contact Posters](#), **FaceTime**, the **Photos** picker, and shared albums in **Photos**. Nude photos or videos can also be detected when they're selected to share in some third-party apps.

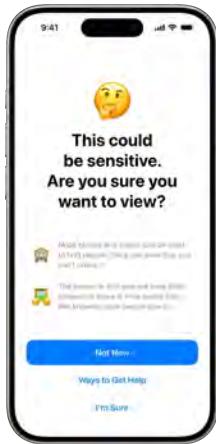
If an attempt to send photos or videos that might contain nudity is detected, **Communication Safety** provides a warning, gives options to stay safe, and provides helpful resources. Photos and videos are analyzed on the device. Apple does not receive an indication that nudity was detected and doesn't get access to the photos or videos.

To learn more about setting this feature up for a family member under 18, see [Turn on or off checking for sensitive images and videos in communications on a family member's iPhone](#) and [About Communication Safety on your child's Apple Device](#).

**Note:** Communication Safety is turned ~~on~~<sup>Draft</sup> by default for children under 18 after Screen Time is set up (age varies by country or region).

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, tap Communication Safety, then turn Communication Safety on or off.

When Communication Safety is turned on, iPhone detects nude images or videos, and displays a warning.



**Note:** When you turn on Communication Safety, it turns on Sensitive Content Warning in Settings  > Privacy & Security. You can also turn on Sensitive Content Warning separately in Settings  > Privacy & Security. See [Receive warnings about sensitive content](#).

You can help Apple improve Communication Safety by sharing analytics and usage data. No messages or media are shared with Apple. To turn this on, go to Settings  > Screen Time > Communication Safety > Improve Communication Safety.

## Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone

You can set up Screen Time for a family member on their device by following the steps in [Set up Screen Time](#), or if they're in a Family Sharing group for which you're the organizer, you can [set up Screen Time for them through Family Sharing](#) on your device.

If you're the organizer (or a parent or guardian) of a Family Sharing group, when you set up a child account, you enter the child's name and birthday. The child's birthday is used to set suggested content restrictions that determine the content they can access.

You can manually set up [content restrictions](#), [Allow or block calls and messages from specific contacts](#), and [downtime](#) later in Settings  > Screen Time on the child's device.

For children under 13, [Communication Safety](#) and [Screen Distance](#) are turned on by default. The Web Content filter is set by default to Limit Adult Websites for children under 13. (This age varies by country or region.)

### Set up Screen Time for a family member

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, then scroll down and select a family member below Family.

- To schedule downtime for your family member, follow the instructions in [Schedule time away from the screen](#).

You can approve or decline the request in the Messages app, or in [Settings](#)  > Screen Time.

- To set limits for app use for your family member, follow the instructions in [Set limits for app use](#).
- To choose apps and contacts to allow your family member to use at all times, follow the instructions in [Choose apps and contacts to allow at all times](#). You can also [view, edit, and manage a family member's contacts](#) and [set up Age Range for apps](#).

**Note:** If your family member needs health or accessibility apps, make sure they're in the Allowed Apps list. If Messages isn't always allowed, your family member may not be able to send or receive messages (including to emergency numbers and contacts) during downtime or after the app limit has expired.

- To help reduce your family member's risk of myopia (nearsightedness) or eyestrain, [turn on Screen Distance](#)

**Note:** For children under 13 in a Family Sharing group, Screen Distance is turned on by default.

- To create a Screen Time passcode for a family member, see [Create a Screen Time passcode](#).
- To turn on Communication Safety features for your family member, see [Turn on or off checking for sensitive images and videos in communications on a family member's iPhone](#)

**Note:** Communication Safety and some web content limits are turned on by default for children under 18 once Screen Time is set up (age varies by country or region).

You can also do any of the following for a family member:

- [Block content and prevent iTunes & App Store purchases](#)
- [Allow or block calls and messages from specific contacts](#)

## View or change your family member's contacts

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, then tap the name of your family member. (You may need to scroll down.)
3. Tap Communication Limits, then turn on Manage [child's name]'s contacts.  
To allow your child to add and edit contacts, turn on Allow Contact Editing.
4. Have your child approve the managing contacts request on their device.

5. Once your child accepts your request, do any of the following:

- *View your child’s contacts:* Tap Contacts.
- *Edit your child’s contacts:* Tap Contacts, tap a name, then tap Edit in the top right of the screen.
- *Remove someone from your child’s contacts:* Tap Contacts, tap a name, then tap Delete. (You may need to scroll down.)
- *Add someone to your child’s contacts:* Tap Contacts, then the add button in the top right corner.

*Note:* You’ll need to enter the child’s Screen Time passcode each time you view or make changes to your child’s contacts

## Turn on or off checking for sensitive images and videos in communications on a family member’s iPhone

You can have your family member’s iPhone detect nudity in images and videos before they’re sent or received. This feature is available in Messages, AirDrop, Contact Posters, FaceTime, the Photos picker, and shared albums in Photos. Nude photos or videos can also be detected when they’re selected to share in some third-party apps.

If an attempt to send photos or videos that might contain nudity is detected, Communication Safety provides a warning, gives options to stay safe, and provides helpful resources. Photos and videos are analyzed on the device. Apple does not receive an indication that nudity was detected and does not get access to the photos or videos.

See the Apple Support article [About Communication Safety on your child’s Apple device](#) for more information.

*Note:* Communication Safety is turned on by default for children under 18 after Screen Time is set up (age varies by country or region).

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Scroll down and tap the name of your family member.
3. Tap Communication Safety, then turn Communication Safety on or off.

You may need to enter the Screen Time passcode.

*Note:* When you turn on Communication Safety, it turns on the Sensitive Content Warning in Settings  > Privacy & Security. See [Receive warnings about sensitive content](#).

You can help Apple improve Communication Safety by sharing analytics and usage data. No messages or media are shared with Apple. To turn this on, go to Settings  > Screen Time > Communication Safety > Improve Communication Safety.

## Block adult content on a family member’s device

When you set up a child account, you enter the child’s name and birthday after tapping Create Child Account. The child’s age automatically determines the content they can access. You can help ensure that the content on your family member’s device is age appropriate by manually limiting the explicitness ratings in Content & Privacy Restrictions.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your family member’s device.
2. Tap Screen Time, tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.

### 3. Choose specific content and privacy options.

- To protect your family member's hearing, scroll down, tap Reduce Loud Audio, then select Don't Allow. (This prevents changes to the maximum headphone volume.)
- To restrict access to specific apps or features, go to Settings  > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions > Allowed Apps & Features, then turn them off. To allow them, turn them on.

### 4. Tap at the top left.

## Add or change Screen Time settings for a family member later

To add or change Screen Time settings later, follow the steps described in the sections above.

**Important:** If you set up Screen Time for a family member on their device (not through Family Sharing), and you forget the Screen Time passcode, you can use your [Apple Account](#) to reset it. However, if you set up Screen Time for a family member on your device through Family Sharing and you forget your Screen Time passcode, you can reset it on your device using your device passcode, Touch ID, or Face ID.

## Respond to a child's Screen Time request on iPhone

Screen Time helps parents manage the time kids spend on device, apps they use, and people they communicate with. And it allows them to make requests when they've reached a limit you set. For example:

- If you turned on Downtime, they can ask you to allow more time after they reach a time limit.
- If you set up Age Range for Apps, a child can ask to download an app that's above their current age range.
- If you set up Ask to Buy, they can ask to download or purchase an item from the App Store, iTunes Store, or Apple Books.
- If you set their Communication Limits so they can only communicate with people in their contacts list, they can ask to add a new phone number to the list.

### Respond to a child's request directly on their device

1. On the child's device, open the relevant app, then click or tap an option to initiate the request. (For example, click or tap Ask for More Time.)
2. Click or tap Enter Screen Time Passcode, then enter the Screen Time passcode.
3. Click or tap an option to Approve or Deny.

### Respond to a child's request on your iPhone

You can approve a child's request—like a request for more time on an app or to purchase an app—on your iPhone.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, then tap the name of your family member. (You may need to scroll down.)

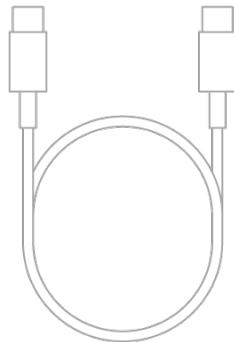
3. If your child has made a request, <sup>Draft</sup> a list of apps will appear. Tap the app under the child's requests, then enter the Screen Time passcode.
4. Depending on the request, do one of the following:
  - *Approve the request:* Tap Approve Request.
  - *Deny the request:* Tap Deny Request.
  - *Approve for 15 minutes:* Tap Approve for 15 minutes.
  - *Approve for 1 hour:* Tap Approve for 1 hour.
  - *Approve for the rest of the day:* Tap Approve for the rest of the day.

## Accessories

### Charging cable for iPhone

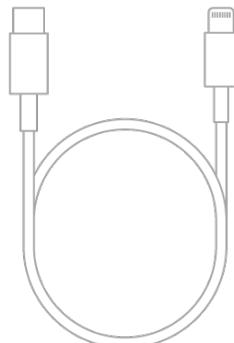
Your iPhone includes one of the following charging cables:

#### USB-C Cable



You can connect iPhone to a power outlet [using a compatible power adapter](#) (sold separately) and the included cable. You can also [connect the included cable](#) to your computer's USB-C port for charging, transferring files, and more.

#### USB-C to Lightning Cable



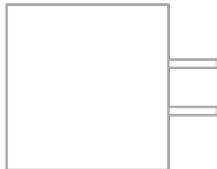
You can connect iPhone to a power outlet [using a compatible power adapter](#) (sold separately) and the included cable. You can also [connect the included cable](#) to your computer's USB-C port for charging, transferring files, and more.

### Power adapters for iPhone

You can connect iPhone to a power outlet Draft [Using its charging cable](#) (included) and a compatible power adapter (sold separately).

You can use the following Apple USB power adapters to charge iPhone. The size and style may vary depending on the country or region.

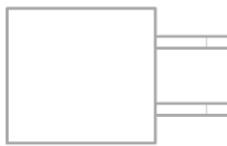
### Apple 20W USB-C power adapter



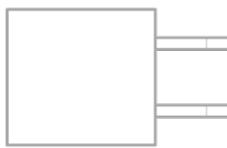
**Note:** For fast charging, iPhone 12, iPhone SE (3rd generation), and later models require a power adapter with a minimum power output of 20 watts, such as the Apple 20W USB power adapter. If you use a third-party power adapter, it should meet these recommended specifications:

- *Frequency:* 50 to 60 Hz, single phase
- *Line Voltage:* 100 to 240 VAC
- *Output Voltage/Current:* 9 VDC/2.2 A
- *Minimum Power Output:* 20 W
- *Output Port:* USB-C

### Apple 18W USB-C power adapter



### Apple 5W USB power adapter



You can also use Apple USB power adapters for iPad and Mac notebooks to charge iPhone, and you can use third-party power adapters that are compliant with applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards.

## MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone

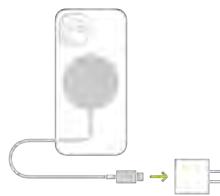
On [supported models](#), MagSafe chargers and battery packs snap to the back of iPhone or its MagSafe case or sleeve. The magnets ensure proper alignment for fast wireless charging, and you can hold and use iPhone while it's charging.

Without the magnetic alignment, MagSafe chargers can also charge other iPhone models and AirPods. (AirPods and MagSafe chargers, battery packs, cases, and sleeves are sold separately.)

### Charge iPhone or AirPods with MagSafe Charger

Draft

1. Connect MagSafe Charger to power using a compatible power adapter (sold separately).



2. Do one of the following:

- *iPhone*: ([supported models](#)) Place MagSafe Charger on the back of iPhone or its MagSafe case or sleeve. The charging symbol appears when iPhone starts charging.

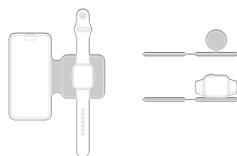
*Note:* If iPhone Leather Wallet is attached, remove it before placing MagSafe Charger on the back of iPhone.

- *Other iPhone models*: Place iPhone face up on the center of MagSafe Charger. When iPhone is aligned properly with the charger,  appears in the status bar.
- *AirPods 2, AirPods 3 (MagSafe), AirPods 4 (with Active Noise Cancellation), AirPods Pro*: Place your AirPods in the charging case, close the lid, then place the case with the status light facing up on the center of MagSafe Charger. When the case is aligned properly with the charger, the status light turns on for several seconds, then turns off while continuing to charge.

See the Apple Support article [How to use your MagSafe Charger](#).

## Charge iPhone or AirPods and Apple Watch with MagSafe Duo Charger

With MagSafe Duo Charger, you can charge your iPhone or AirPods at the same time you charge your Apple Watch. (MagSafe Duo Charger, Apple Watch, and AirPods are sold separately.)



1. Connect MagSafe Duo Charger to power using the [Apple 20W USB-C power adapter](#) or another compatible power adapter (sold separately).



2. To charge iPhone or AirPods, do <sup>Draft</sup> one of the following:

- *iPhone*: Place iPhone face up on the center of the iPhone charging surface. [Supported models](#) help you align iPhone with the charger, and the charging symbol appears when iPhone starts charging. On other models, the battery charging indicator appears when you properly align iPhone with the charging surface. Unless your iPhone is in Silent mode, you hear a chime when charging begins.

*Note:* If iPhone Leather Wallet is attached, remove it before placing iPhone on MagSafe Duo Charger.

- *AirPods 2 (with Wireless Charging Case), AirPods 3, AirPods 4 (with Active Noise Cancellation), and AirPods Pro*: Place your AirPods in the charging case, close the lid, then place the case with the status light facing up on the center of the iPhone charging surface. When the case is aligned properly with the charger, the status light turns on for several seconds, then turns off while continuing to charge.

3. To charge Apple Watch, do one of the following:

- With the Apple Watch charging surface lying flat and the Apple Watch band open, place Apple Watch face up on the charging surface.
- With the Apple Watch charging surface raised, place Apple Watch on its side with its back against the charging surface. Apple Watch automatically goes into Nightstand mode, so you can also use it as an alarm clock.

The concave charging surface magnetically snaps to the back of your Apple Watch and aligns it properly. When charging begins, a charging symbol appears on the watch face.

## Charge iPhone with MagSafe Battery Pack

MagSafe Battery Pack magnetically attaches to [supported models](#) and extends the battery life.

*Note:* If iPhone Leather Wallet is attached, remove it before placing MagSafe Battery Pack.

- *Charge your iPhone on the go*: Place MagSafe Battery Pack on the back of iPhone or its MagSafe case or sleeve. The charging symbol appears when iPhone starts charging.
- *See the battery status of MagSafe Battery Pack and iPhone*: Check the Batteries widget in Today View or on the Home Screen. See [Add a Batteries widget to your Lock Screen or Home Screen](#).
- *Charge MagSafe Battery Pack and iPhone*: With MagSafe Battery Pack on iPhone, connect either device to power using the [USB-C to Lightning Cable](#) or [USB-C Cable](#) and the [Apple 20W USB-C power adapter](#) or another compatible power adapter (minimum power output of 20 watts; sold separately). The status indicator on MagSafe Battery Pack is amber while charging, then turns green when charging is complete.

*Note:* By default, charging is limited to 90 percent to optimize the lifespan of MagSafe Battery Pack. To remove the charging limit, [open Control Center](#), tap Low Power Mode, then tap Charge past 90%.

You can also charge MagSafe Battery Pack without iPhone.

See the Apple Support article [How to use your MagSafe Battery Pack](#).

# Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone

You can wirelessly charge iPhone using a Qi-certified charger (sold separately). You can also use a Qi-certified charger to charge AirPods.

## Charge iPhone or AirPods with a Qi-certified charger

1. Connect the charger to power. Use the power adapter that came with your charger or a power adapter recommended by the manufacturer.
2. Do one of the following:
  - *iPhone*: Place iPhone face up on the center of the charger. When iPhone is aligned properly with the charger,  appears in the status bar.
  - *AirPods 2 (with Wireless Charging Case), AirPods 3, AirPods 4 (with Active Noise Cancellation), and AirPods Pro*: Place your AirPods in the charging case, close the lid, then place the case with the status light facing up on the center of the charger. When the case is aligned properly with the charger, the status light turns on for several seconds, then turns off while continuing to charge.

See the Apple Support articles [How to wirelessly charge your iPhone](#) and [Charge your AirPods and learn about battery life](#).

## AirPods and EarPods

## Use AirPods with iPhone

After you pair AirPods with iPhone, you can use AirPods to listen to audio playing on iPhone, make and answer calls, listen and respond to messages, hear reminders when you need them, listen to conversations more easily in noisy environments, and more.

### Pair AirPods with your iPhone

1. On iPhone, go to Settings  > Bluetooth, then turn on Bluetooth.
2. Go to the Home Screen on your iPhone.
3. Do one of the following:
  - *AirPods (1, 2, 3, and 4) and AirPods Pro*: Open the case with your AirPods inside, then hold it next to your iPhone.
  - *AirPods Max*: Take your AirPods Max out of the Smart Case, then hold AirPods Max next to your iPhone.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions, then tap Done.

*Note:* If onscreen instructions for pairing your AirPods Max don't appear, go to Settings > Bluetooth, then select your AirPods Max. If the status light doesn't flash white on AirPods Max, press and hold the noise control button until it does.

Your AirPods are automatically paired with all of your supported devices where you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#) (iOS 10, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.12, watchOS 3, or later required).

Note: If you can't pair your AirPods, see [Draft](#) the Apple Support article [If your AirPods won't connect](#).

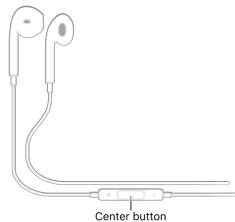
## Do more with AirPods and your iPhone

See the [AirPods User Guide](#) for detailed instructions on how to get the most out of your AirPods.

## Use EarPods with iPhone

You can use EarPods (sold separately) to listen to music and videos and to make calls on iPhone. EarPods feature a microphone, volume buttons, and the center button.

Use the center button to answer and end calls, control audio and video playback, and use Siri, even when iPhone is locked.



### Control audio with your EarPods

- *Pause*: Press the center button. Press again to resume playback.
- *Skip forward*: Press the center button twice quickly.
- *Skip backward*: Press the center button three times quickly.
- *Fast-forward*: Press the center button twice quickly and hold.

### Manage calls using your EarPods

- *Answer an incoming call*: Press the center button.
- *End the current call*: Press the center button.
- *Switch to an incoming or on-hold call, and put the current call on hold*: Press the center button. Press again to switch back to the first call.

### Ask Siri with your EarPods

Press and hold the center button until you hear a beep. Let go, then ask Siri to perform a task or answer your question. See [Turn on and activate Siri](#).

## Use Apple Watch with iPhone

### Pair Apple Watch with iPhone

On your iPhone, tap the Apple Watch app ⓘ, then follow the onscreen instructions.

See [Set up and pair your Apple Watch with iPhone](#) in the Apple Watch User Guide. (Apple Watch sold separately.)

### Unlock iPhone with Apple Watch

When you're wearing your Apple Watch (Series 3 and later), you can use it to securely unlock your iPhone ([models with Face ID](#)) when you're wearing a face mask (watchOS 7.4 or later required). [Draft](#)

**Note:** On all iPhone 12, iPhone 13, iPhone <sup>Draft</sup>14, iPhone 15, and iPhone 16 models, it's not necessary to use Apple Watch to unlock iPhone when you're wearing a face mask. See [Set up Face ID](#).

To allow Apple Watch to unlock your iPhone, do the following:

1. Go to [Settings](#)  > Face ID & Passcode.
2. Scroll down, then turn on Apple Watch (below [Unlock with Apple Watch](#)).

If you have more than one watch, turn on the setting for each one.

To unlock your iPhone while you're wearing your Apple Watch and a face mask, raise iPhone or tap its screen to wake it, then glance at your iPhone.

**Note:** To unlock your iPhone, your Apple Watch must have a passcode, be unlocked and on your wrist, and be close to your iPhone.

## Work out with Apple Fitness+

Used in conjunction with Apple Watch, Apple Fitness+ is a subscription service that lets you choose from a catalog of workouts led by expert trainers. While you follow a workout on your iPhone, in-session metrics like heart rate and calories burned (which are captured by your watch) appear on your screen. (watchOS 7.2 or later required; Apple Fitness+ availability varies by country or region.)

See [Apple Fitness+ at a glance](#) in the Apple Fitness+ User Guide.

**Note:** With Fitness on iPhone, you can view your active calories and steps, set a move goal, track your progress, and see your movement trends over time—even if you don't have an Apple Watch. See [Track your daily activity and change your move goal in Fitness](#).

## Collect health and fitness data from Apple Watch

Apple Watch can send data about your health and fitness to iPhone for you to [view in Health](#). Apple Watch can also send notifications about high heart rates, low heart rates, loud environmental sounds, and more to your iPhone.

See [Track important health information](#) in the Apple Watch User Guide.

# Apple TV, smart TVs, and video displays

## Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone

You can use your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV to watch videos and view photos streamed from your iPhone.

**Note:** To stream videos or photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from your iPhone, both devices must be on the same [Wi-Fi network](#).

### Play video on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV

1. While playing video in the Apple TV app  or another supported video app on your iPhone, tap the screen to show the controls.

2. Tap  **TV**, then choose your Apple TV or AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.



To change the playback destination, choose a different AirPlay option on your iPhone screen.

## Show photos on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo, then tap .
3. Swipe up, tap  **TV**, then choose your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.

To stop streaming photos, tap  near the top of the iPhone screen, then tap Turn off AirPlay.

## Turn automatic AirPlay streaming on or off

You can allow your iPhone to discover and automatically connect to any frequently used Apple TV or smart TV when playing content from apps that you regularly use with AirPlay.

Go to Settings  > General > AirPlay & Continuity, then choose Automatic, Never, or Ask.

## Mirror your iPhone on Apple TV or a smart TV

On Apple TV or a smart TV, you can show whatever appears on your iPhone.

1. [Open Control Center](#) on your iPhone.
2. Tap  **TV**, then choose your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.

To switch back to iPhone, open Control Center, tap , then tap Stop Mirroring.

*Note:* For a list of AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, see the [Home accessories website](#).

To learn more about using Apple TV, see the [Apple TV User Guide](#).

## Connect iPhone to a display with a cable

With the appropriate cable or adapter, you can connect your iPhone to a secondary display, like a computer monitor, TV, or projector.

1. Depending on your iPhone model, plug a Lightning Digital AV Adapter, Lightning to VGA Adapter, USB-C Display AV Adapter, or USB-C VGA Multi-port Adapter into the charging port on the bottom of iPhone.

2. Connect an HDMI or VGA cable to the adapter.
3. Connect the other end of the HDMI or VGA cable to the monitor, TV, or projector.
4. If necessary, switch to the correct video source on the monitor, TV, or projector. If you need help, use the display's manual.

The adapters have an extra port so you can connect the charging cable and charge your iPhone while connected to a monitor, TV, or projector.

## Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers

You can play audio from iPhone on wireless devices like HomePod, Apple TV, AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, and Bluetooth® headphones and speakers.

### Play audio from iPhone on a wireless device

1. Open an audio app such as Podcasts  or Music  on your iPhone.
2. Choose an item to play.
3. Tap , then choose a playback destination.



**Note:** If your AirPlay 2-enabled devices don't appear in the list of playback destinations, make sure they're on the same Wi-Fi network. With a Bluetooth device, the playback destination returns to iPhone if you move the device out of Bluetooth range.

To select the playback destination, you can also tap  on the Lock Screen or in Control Center.

**Note:** For information about setting up a Bluetooth audio device, see [Pair your iPhone with a Bluetooth accessory](#).

### Play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices

With AirPlay 2 and iPhone, you can play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices connected to the same Wi-Fi network. For example, you can play a party playlist on HomePod speakers in the living room and kitchen, on an Apple TV in the bedroom, and on an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV in the den.

Say something like:

- "Stop playing music everywhere"

- "Set the dining room volume to 10 percent"
- "What's playing in the kitchen?"
- "Play a song I like in the kitchen"
- "Add the living room speaker"
- "Remove the music from the kitchen"
- "Move the music to the den"

You can also choose playback destinations from the iPhone screen.

1. Tap ⓘ in Control Center, on the Lock Screen, or on the Now Playing screen for the app you're listening to.
2. Select each device you want to use.

*Note:* Devices arranged in a stereo pair are treated as a single audio device.

## Hand off audio from iPhone to HomePod

While playing audio from Music, Podcasts, or another audio app, bring iPhone close to the top of HomePod.

Audio handoff has the following requirements:

- You must be [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- On your iPhone, you've [turned on Wi-Fi](#) and [Handoff](#).
- iPhone and HomePod must be in the same HomeKit home and on the same Wi-Fi network.
- Your devices must have Bluetooth turned on in [Settings](#) ⓘ and be within Bluetooth range of one another (about 33 feet or 10 meters).

To disable Handoff between iPhone and HomePod and other devices, go to [Settings](#) > [General](#) > [AirPlay & Continuity](#).

*Note:* To learn more about using HomePod speakers and Apple TV, see the [HomePod User Guide](#) and [Apple TV User Guide](#).

For a list of AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, see the [Home accessories website](#).

# Magic Keyboard

## Pair Magic Keyboard with iPhone

You can use Magic Keyboard, including Magic Keyboard with Numeric Keypad, to enter text on iPhone. Magic Keyboard connects to iPhone using Bluetooth®.

### Pair Magic Keyboard

1. Make sure the keyboard is turned on and charged.
2. On iPhone, go to [Settings](#) ⓘ > [Bluetooth](#), then turn on Bluetooth.
3. Select the device when it appears in the Other Devices list.

*Note:* If Magic Keyboard is already paired with another device, you must unpair them before you can connect Magic Keyboard to your iPhone. Do one of the following:

- On iPhone or iPad: See [Unpair a Bluetooth accessory](#).<sup>Draft</sup>
- On macOS 13 or later: Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, click Bluetooth in the sidebar, Control-click the device, then choose Forget.
- On macOS 12.5 or earlier: Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, click Bluetooth, Control-click the device name, then click Remove.

## Reconnect Magic Keyboard to iPhone

Magic Keyboard disconnects when you turn its switch to Off or when you move it or iPhone out of Bluetooth range—about 33 feet (10 meters).

To reconnect, turn the keyboard switch to On, or bring the keyboard and iPhone back into range, then tap any key.

# Enter characters with diacritical marks while using Magic Keyboard with iPhone

If your Magic Keyboard doesn't include accents and other diacritical marks for the language you're typing, you can use an Option key modifier or the onscreen keyboard to enter those marks.

## Use the Option key to enter a diacritical mark for a character

To enter a character with a diacritical mark, you can press the Option key on Magic Keyboard to select a mark.

### 1. Do one of the following:

- [Add or remove a keyboard for another language that supports diacritical marks](#), then in an app, [switch to that language keyboard](#).

For example, add the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard, then in an app, press and hold the Control key on Magic Keyboard, then press the Space bar until you select Español (México).

- Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then [choose an alternative keyboard layout](#) that supports diacritical marks.

For example, if you have the English (US) language keyboard, tap English (US), then choose U.S. International — PC or ABC — Extended.

### 2. In an app, press and hold the Option key, then press a key that enters a diacritical mark.

For example, the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard and the U.S. International — PC alternative layout support these diacritical marks:

- *Acute accent* (for example, é): Option-E.
- *Grave accent* (for example, è): Option-`.
- *Tilde* (for example, ñ): Option-N.
- *Diaeresis or umlaut* (for example, ü): Option-U.
- *Circumflex* (for example, ê): Option-I.

### 3. Press the letter.

For example, to enter ñ using the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard or the U.S. International — PC alternative layout, press Option-N, then type an n.

**Draft**  
Note: The ABC - Extended alternative layout also allows you to enter tone marks for typing Mandarin Chinese in Pinyin orthography. For example, to type ū in lǚxíng ("travel"), press Option-V, then type a v. In addition, the ABC - Extended layout allows you to type diacritical marks and letters from several different European languages, such as Czech, French, German, Hungarian, and Polish.

## Use the onscreen keyboard to enter a diacritical mark

1. To show the onscreen keyboard, press  on Magic Keyboard.
2. On the onscreen keyboard, touch and hold the letter, number, or symbol on the keyboard that's related to the character you want.  
For example, to enter é, touch and hold the e key.
3. Slide your finger to choose a variant.
4. To hide the onscreen keyboard when you're finished, press  on Magic Keyboard.

## Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

With Magic Keyboard, you can switch between the language keyboard for your region, an emoji keyboard, other language keyboards that you add, and the onscreen keyboard.

### Switch between language keyboards and the onscreen emoji keyboard

1. On Magic Keyboard, press and hold the Control key.
2. Press the Space bar to cycle between the language keyboard for your region, the emoji keyboard, and [any keyboards you added](#) for typing in different languages.

### Show or hide the onscreen keyboard

To show the onscreen keyboard, press  on Magic Keyboard. To hide the onscreen keyboard, press  again.

## Dictate text while using Magic Keyboard with iPhone

You can dictate text instead of typing it on Magic Keyboard.

**Draft**  
Note: Dictation may not be available in all languages or in all countries or regions, and features may vary. Cellular data charges may apply.

1. Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard, turn on Enable Dictation, then choose a dictation shortcut.
2. To insert text by dictating, tap to place the insertion point, then press the dictation shortcut key twice.
3. To use Magic Keyboard again, quickly press the dictation shortcut key twice.

As you speak to insert text, iPhone automatically inserts punctuation for you. You can insert emoji by saying their names (for example, "mind blown emoji" or "happy emoji").

## Use shortcuts on Magic Keyboard with iPhone

You can perform searches and use text replacements from anywhere on iPhone without taking your hands away from Magic Keyboard.

- *Open Search:* Press Command-Space.

*Note:* You can change the actions that are performed by the Command key (and other modifier keys like Caps Lock). Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, tap Modifier Keys, tap a key, then choose the action you want it to perform.

- *Use text replacements:* You can set up text replacements that enter words or phrases after you type just a few characters. For example, type "omw" to enter "On my way!" See [Use text replacements](#).
- *Choose additional accessibility keyboard shortcuts:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Keyboards > Full Keyboard Access, then turn on Full Keyboard Access. See [Control iPhone with an external keyboard](#).

## Choose an alternative layout for Magic Keyboard with iPhone

With an alternative keyboard layout, you can enter letters and marks that are different from the ones on Magic Keyboard. For example, with the ABC - Extended keyboard layout, you can type letters and [enter diacritical marks](#) for several different European languages and tone marks for Mandarin Chinese in Pinyin.

1. Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard.
2. Tap a language at the top of the screen, then choose an alternative layout from the list.

## Change typing assistance options for Magic Keyboard with iPhone

You can change Magic Keyboard options for autocorrection, autocapitalization, and more.

Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then do any of the following:

- *Turn Auto-Capitalization on or off:* When this option is selected, an app supporting this feature capitalizes proper nouns and the first words in sentences as you type.
- *Turn Auto-Correction on or off:* When this option is selected, an app supporting this feature corrects the spelling as you type.
- *Turn “.” Shortcut on or off:* When this option is selected, double-tapping the space bar inserts a period followed by a space.

- *Change the action performed by the Command key or other modifier key:*  
Tap Modifier Keys, tap a key, then choose the action you want it to perform.

# Connect external storage devices to iPhone

You can use the Files app and other supported apps to access files stored on external devices, such as USB drives and SD cards, connected to your iPhone.

## Connect a USB drive or an SD card reader

1. Attach the USB drive or SD card reader to the charging port on your iPhone using a compatible connector or adapter.

You may need the Lightning to USB Camera Adapter, Lightning to USB 3 Camera Adapter, USB-C to SD Card Camera Reader, or Lightning to SD Card Camera Reader (all sold separately).

*Note:* An external storage device must have only a single data partition, and it must be formatted as APFS, APFS (encrypted), macOS Extended (HFS+), exFAT (FAT64), FAT32, or FAT. To change the formatting of a storage device, use [the Files app](#) or a Mac or PC.

2. Do any of the following:

- *Insert an SD memory card into a card reader:* Don't force the card into the slot on the reader; it fits only one way.

*Note:* You can import photos and videos from the memory card directly to the Photos app. See [Import and export photos and videos](#).

- *View the contents of the drive or memory card:* In a supported app (for example, Files), tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device below Locations. If you don't see Locations, tap Browse again at the bottom of the screen.

- *Disconnect the drive or card reader:* Remove it from the charging port on iPhone.

*Note:* External hard drives often require an external power source when used with iPhone. If an external hard drive doesn't supply its own power, and your iPhone has a USB-C connector, you can use a powered USB hub. If your iPhone has a Lightning connector, you can use the Lightning to USB 3 Camera Adapter connected to a USB power adapter.

# Connect iPhone to Bluetooth accessories

Connect your iPhone to Bluetooth® accessories to stream music and videos, play games, connect to keyboards, and more.

## Pair your iPhone with a Bluetooth accessory

1. Put your Bluetooth accessory in discovery mode. If you aren't sure how to make it discoverable, check the instructions that came with your accessory.
2. On your iPhone, go to [Settings](#) > [Bluetooth](#) and make sure Bluetooth is turned on.

3. Tap the name of the accessory when it appears onscreen, below the devices list.

You might need to enter the accessory PIN or passcode. Check the instructions that came with your accessory.

*Note:* iPhone must be within about 33 feet (10 meters) of the Bluetooth accessory to pair.

If you have trouble pairing your accessory, see the Apple Support article [If you can't connect a Bluetooth accessory to your iPhone or iPad](#).

## Unpair a Bluetooth accessory

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings  > Bluetooth.
2. Tap  next to the accessory you want to unpair, then tap Forget This Device.
3. Tap Forget Device to confirm.

If you don't see the devices list, make sure [Bluetooth is turned on](#).

*Note:* If you unpair AirPods, they're automatically unpaired from other devices where you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#).

## Disconnect from all Bluetooth accessories

If you need to quickly disconnect your iPhone from all Bluetooth accessories and devices without turning Bluetooth off, [open Control Center](#), then tap . Your Bluetooth accessories and devices disconnect from your iPhone until the next day.

*Note:* The use of certain accessories with iPhone may affect wireless performance. Not all iOS or iPadOS accessories are fully compatible with iPhone. Turning on Airplane Mode may eliminate audio interference between iPhone and an accessory. Reorienting or relocating iPhone and the connected accessory may improve wireless performance.

# Play audio from your iPhone on a Bluetooth accessory

After you [connect your iPhone to a Bluetooth accessory](#), you can play and control the audio from your iPhone on the accessory.

## Play audio from your iPhone on a Bluetooth audio accessory

1. Open an audio app such as Music or Podcasts on your iPhone and play an item.
2. Tap , then tap your Bluetooth accessory.

While audio is playing, you can change the playback destination on the Lock Screen or in Control Center.

3. Use the controls on your iPhone to pause or play the audio, adjust volume, skip tracks, and more.

The playback destination returns to your iPhone if you move the Bluetooth accessory out of range.

*Note:* For information about protecting your hearing from loud volume while listening to headphones with iPhone, see [Use hearing health features](#).

## Improve the audio accuracy of third-party Bluetooth accessories

Draft

You can improve the sound of third-party Bluetooth devices by specifying the Bluetooth device type (such as headphone, speaker, or car stereo) on your iPhone.

1. Go to Settings  > Bluetooth, then tap ⓘ next to the name of the accessory or device.
2. Tap Device Type, then choose the type of device.

## Print from iPhone

Use AirPrint to print wirelessly to an AirPrint-enabled printer from apps such as Mail, Photos, and Safari. Many apps available on the App Store also support AirPrint.

*Note:* Your iPhone and the printer must be on the same Wi-Fi network. See the Apple Support article [About AirPrint](#).

### Choose an AirPrint-enabled printer

After confirming that your printer supports AirPrint and that your iPhone and printer are on the same Wi-Fi network, do the following:

1. Open the app you want to print from.
2. Tap , , or  (depending on the app).
3. Tap Print, tap No Printer Selected, then choose an AirPrint-enabled printer.

### Print a document

1. Open the app you want to print from.
2. Tap , , or  (depending on the app).
3. Tap Print. (If you don't see Print, swipe up.)

### See the status of a print job

[Open the App Switcher](#), then tap Print Center.

The badge on the icon shows how many documents are in the queue.

To cancel a print job, select it in Print Center, then tap Cancel Printing.

## Use iPhone with iPad, Mac, and Windows devices

### Use Continuity to work across Apple devices

When you use your iPhone with another Draft Apple device—like your Mac, iPad, or Apple Watch—you can take advantage of special Continuity features that let you use your devices in unique ways. You can seamlessly work across your devices, hand off tasks, share files and photos, stream video and audio, and more. Continuity features are built directly into your devices' operating systems and many of the apps you use every day. There's no additional app you need to install—just [sign in to the same Apple Account](#) on each device to get started.

**Note:** There are minimum system requirements for Continuity features and some features require [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth®](#). See the Apple Support article [Continuity features and requirements for Apple devices](#).

## Quickly share content between devices



Share photos, videos, contacts, and more, with anyone on an Apple device near you. AirDrop makes sharing between iPhone, iPad, and Mac as simple as dragging and dropping.

[Use AirDrop to send items to nearby devices](#)

## Use your iPhone camera with your Mac



You can use your iPhone as your Mac computer's webcam or microphone with a feature called Continuity Camera. You can also use video effects when using your iPhone as a webcam, like Desk View.

[Use iPhone as a webcam](#)

## Control your iPhone from your Mac



Control your iPhone from your Mac and receive iPhone notifications and Live Activities on your Mac, so you never miss a thing.

[Control your iPhone from your Mac](#)

## Even more Continuity features

Copy text, images, photos, and videos from one Apple device and paste them on another device with Universal Clipboard.

[Copy and paste between devices](#)

Start a task—like creating a document, writing an email, or browsing the web—on one device and pick up where you left off on another device with Handoff.

Take a picture or scan a document with your iPhone camera and have it appear instantly on your Mac.

#### [Insert sketches, photos, and scans on Mac](#)

Share videos, music, photos, and more from your iPhone to your Mac, an Apple TV, or an AirPlay 2-enabled TV.

#### [Stream video and audio from your iPhone](#)

Relay calls from your iPhone and send and receive texts on your iPad or Mac.

#### [Allow phone calls and text messages on your iPad and Mac](#)

Connect your Mac to the internet using the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone.

#### [Share your internet connection](#)

Copy and paste	Hand off tasks
<a href="#">Insert sketches, photos, and scans</a>	<a href="#">Stream to a larger screen</a>
<a href="#">Answer calls and send texts from your iPad or Mac</a>	<a href="#">Share your Wi-Fi</a>

## Other ways to use your devices together

Continuity features aren't the only ways you can use your Mac with your other Apple devices. You can also:

- [Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable](#)
- [Keep information up to date across all your devices with iCloud](#)
- [Sync content between your Mac and iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#)

## Use AirDrop to send items to nearby Apple devices

With AirDrop, you can wirelessly send photos, videos, documents, and more to a nearby iPhone, iPad, or Mac. You can use AirDrop to send files to your own devices or to share files with others.

You can use AirDrop with an iPhone, iPad, and Mac.

Transfers are encrypted for security, and the recipient can accept or decline each transfer as it arrives.

*Note:* If you leave Bluetooth or Wi-Fi range after an AirDrop transfer is initiated, the transfer continues over the internet.



## Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have **Wi-Fi** and **Bluetooth®** turned on.
- The devices are within 30 feet (10 meters) of each other.

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration doesn't prevent local networking, as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

If you want to use AirDrop to send items between your Apple devices, [sign in to your Apple Account](#) to automatically accept and save the items.

## Turn on AirDrop

- On an iPhone or iPad: Open Control Center, touch and hold the top-left group of controls, then tap ⓘ. Tap Contacts Only or Everyone for 10 Minutes to choose who you want to receive items from.

**Note:** The Contacts Only and Everyone for 10 Minutes options are available only on devices with [minimum system requirements for AirDrop](#).

- On a Mac: Click  in the menu bar, then click . When it's blue, it's on.

To choose who can send items to you, click the right arrow next to AirDrop, then click Contacts Only or Everyone.

## Send an item using AirDrop

To send an item to someone with AirDrop, both you and your recipient must have turned on AirDrop and chosen to accept items from either Contacts or Everyone. If a recipient chooses to only accept items from a contact, you must be in their contacts list and they need to have your Apple Account email address or phone number included in your contact card.

Then do any of the following:

- *On an iPhone or iPad:* Open the item, then tap  Share,  or another button (depending on the app). Tap , then tap the recipient you want to share with. The recipients you see are those who are nearby, have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on, and are able to accept files from your device.

**Tip:** If you're within close range of someone in your contacts, you can initiate an AirDrop transfer by opening the file you want to share, then moving your iPhone close to your contact's iPhone (on supported models with iOS 17 or later).

- *On a Mac:* Open the item on a Mac, click  in the toolbar, then click AirDrop. Select the recipient you want to share with. The recipients you see are those who are nearby, have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on, and are able to accept files from your device.

**Tip:** You can also share items with AirDrop in the Finder. To open a Finder window, click  in the Dock. Click AirDrop in the sidebar, then drag the item you want to share to the recipient you want to send it to.

To use AirDrop to securely share app and website passwords with someone using an iPhone, iPad, or Mac, see [Share passwords](#).

## Receive items with AirDrop

On your device, tap or click Accept on the AirDrop notification.

**Note:** If you're sending an item between devices where you're signed in with your Apple Account, the item is automatically accepted.

Most items are saved in the app that they're sent from. For example, if someone uses AirDrop to send you a photo from the Photos app, it's saved in the Photos app on your device.

Depending on the device, you might find your files in other places. On an iPhone or iPad, some items may be saved in the Files app. On a Mac, some items are automatically saved in the Downloads folder. You may also have the option to choose where to save items.

**Note:** If you opened AirDrop in the Finder on a Mac, the notification to accept or decline appears here, rather than in Notification Center.

If you send items from one of your Apple devices to another (for example, from your Mac to your iPhone), and you're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices, the item is automatically accepted and saved.

## Turn off cellular data for AirDrop

Cellular data charges may apply when you use AirDrop.

If you don't want to use cellular data when you're out of Bluetooth or Wi-Fi range, go to **Settings**  > **General** > **AirDrop**, then turn off **Use Cellular Data**.

Typically this is a one-time setting, but you might want to change it if, for example, you're traveling and want to avoid roaming charges.

## If AirDrop isn't working

- Make sure that both the sender and recipient have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#) turned on and that you're both using an iPhone, iPad, or Mac.
- Check that the recipient has their AirDrop settings set to [receive from Everyone or Contacts Only](#).
- If you're having difficulty getting AirDrop to work, restart your device and try again.
- For additional support, see the Apple Support articles [How to use AirDrop on your iPhone or iPad](#).

To quickly share your contact information, see [Use NameDrop on iPhone](#).

AirDrop is best for sharing a small selection of files between devices. If you want to share many files between your Mac and other Apple devices, see [Transfer files from iPhone to a storage device, a server, or the cloud](#).

# Hand off tasks between your iPhone and your other devices

With Handoff, you can start a task on one device and complete it on another. For example, you can start an email on your iPhone but then finish it on your Mac computer's bigger screen.

You can use Handoff with many Apple apps—for example, Safari, Mail, FaceTime, and Maps. Some third-party apps also work with Handoff.

You can use Handoff between your iPhone, iPad, and Mac. You can also hand off tasks between your Apple Watch and iPhone.

## Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth®](#) turned on.
- You're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- Both devices meet [minimum system requirements for Handoff](#).

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration doesn't prevent local networking, as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

## Turn on Handoff

Turn on Handoff on both your iPhone and your other Apple device.

- *On your iPhone or iPad:* Go to [Settings](#) > General > AirPlay & Continuity, then turn on Handoff.
- *On your Mac:* Go to Apple menu  > System Settings, click General in the sidebar (you may need to scroll). Click AirDrop & Handoff, then turn "Allow Handoff between this Mac and your iCloud devices" on or off.

*Note:* If your Mac has macOS 12.5 or earlier, choose Apple menu  > System Preferences, click General, then select "Allow Handoff between this Mac and your iCloud devices."

- *On your Apple Watch:* Open the Apple Watch app on iPhone, go to My Watch > General, then turn on Enable Handoff.

## Hand off a task between your iPhone and other devices

When your devices are near each other, an icon appears whenever a task can be handed off. Just tap or click the Handoff icon to continue working on your other device.

The Handoff icon appears in the following locations:

- *On an iPhone:* At the bottom of the [App Switcher](#) screen.
- *On an iPad:* At the right end of the Dock.
- *On a Mac:* Toward the right end of the Dock, if the Dock is at the bottom of the screen. If you set up the Dock to appear on the left or right side of your screen, the Handoff icon appears at the bottom of the Dock.

## Hand off a task from your Apple Watch

If you have an Apple Watch, you can hand off tasks from certain apps on your Apple Watch to your iPhone. To learn more, see [Handoff tasks from Apple Watch](#).

Draft

- Make sure that both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#) turned on, and you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#).
- Check that your app supports Handoff. Calendar, Contacts, FaceTime, Keynote, Mail, Maps, Pages, Numbers, Reminders, and Safari, as well as many third-party apps, allow Handoff.

**Tip:** When Handoff is on, you can use [Universal Clipboard](#) to copy and paste text, images, photos, and videos across devices.

## Control your iPhone from your Mac

You can use iPhone Mirroring to control your iPhone from your nearby Mac. When iPhone Mirroring is turned on, you can also receive iPhone notifications on your Mac and keep track of Live Activities, so you don't miss a thing.



**Note:** Some iPhone features such as the camera and microphone aren't compatible with iPhone Mirroring. Also, some Continuity features, like Continuity Camera and AirPlay, aren't available on your Mac when using iPhone Mirroring.

### Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#)® turned on.
- You're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- Your devices are within 30 feet (10 meters) of each other.
- Your iPhone has iOS 18 or later and your Mac has macOS Sequoia or later.
- Both devices meet [minimum system requirements for iPhone Mirroring](#).

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration doesn't prevent local networking, as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

If iPhone Mirroring isn't available in your country or region, iPhone Mirroring tells you that it's unable to connect to your iPhone for that reason.

### Set up iPhone Mirroring on your Mac

1. Make sure your iPhone is turned on and nearby, with the screen locked.

*Note:* Your iPhone must be nearby to use iPhone Mirroring.

2. Go to the iPhone Mirroring app  on your Mac.
3. Click Connect.

4. Enter your iPhone passcode, then Draft choose one of the following:

- *Ask Every Time:* Receive a prompt for Touch ID, Face ID, or your device passcode each time you use iPhone Mirroring.
- *Authenticate Automatically:* Automatically connect to iPhone Mirroring without needing to authenticate.

*Note:* If you see an alert on your iPhone that says Trust This Computer? tap Trust. You may be asked to enter your device passcode to proceed. If you see an alert on your Mac that says "Allow accessory to connect?" click Allow.

5. Choose whether or not to Allow Notifications from iPhone.

*Note:* You can set up more than one iPhone to use iPhone Mirroring with your Mac, but you can only connect to one iPhone at a time.

## Use iPhone Mirroring on your Mac

1. Make sure your iPhone is turned on and nearby, with the screen locked.
2. Go to the iPhone Mirroring app  on your Mac.
3. Click Continue.
4. Do any of the following:
  - *Tap to click:* Click your Mac computer's mouse or trackpad to tap. You can also swipe and scroll in the iPhone Mirroring app, and use your keyboard to type.
  - *Open the App Switcher:* Move your pointer to the top of the iPhone Mirroring screen until the menu bar appears, then click  to open the App Switcher.
  - *Go to the Home Screen:* If you're in an app and want to return to the Home Screen, move your pointer to the top of the iPhone Mirroring screen until the menu bar appears, then click .
  - *Rearrange your Home Screen and perform quick actions:* On the Home Screen, **Control-click** any app, then click Edit Home Screen. You can also Control-click an app and choose to turn some apps into widgets or to perform quick actions, like creating a new note in Notes or sending your location in Maps.

## Get iPhone notifications on your Mac

When you set up iPhone Mirroring, you can also turn on iPhone notifications. iPhone notifications appear on your Mac with an iPhone badge, so you know which notifications are from your iPhone.

*Note:* Your iPhone doesn't have to be nearby for its notifications to appear on your Mac, but it must be turned on.

If you didn't choose to turn on iPhone notifications when you set up iPhone Mirroring and you want to turn it on, or if you want to choose which apps send notifications to your Mac, do either of the following:

- *On your iPhone:* Go to Settings  > Notifications, choose any app, then turn "Show on Mac" on or off.
- *On your Mac:* Go to Apple menu  > System Settings, click Notifications in the sidebar (you may need to scroll down), then click "Allow notifications from iPhone." Under Mirror iPhone Notifications From, turn the option on or off for any app.

## Use Live Activities from iPhone Draft your Mac

When you set up iPhone Mirroring, Live Activities from your iPhone appear in the menu bar on your Mac.

1. On your Mac, click the Live Activity in the menu bar to view more information.
2. Do either of the following:
  - Click the Live Activity again to open the app in the iPhone Mirroring app on your Mac.
  - Click <the X button> to close the Live Activity. When you close a Live Activity, you continue to see it in your Menu Bar.

## Transfer files using iPhone Mirroring

You can transfer files, photos, videos, and more between your Mac and iPhone in supported apps using iPhone Mirroring. To transfer a file, simply drag and drop it between your Mac and the iPhone Mirroring app window in either direction.

## Turn off iPhone Mirroring

1. On your iPhone, go to **Settings**  > **General**.
2. Tap **AirPlay & Continuity**, then tap **iPhone Mirroring**.
3. Tap **Edit** in the top right, then select a Mac to remove.

## If iPhone Mirroring isn't working

- Make sure that you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- Make sure that your iPhone and Mac have [Wi-Fi](#), [Bluetooth](#), and [Handoff](#) turned on.
- Your devices must be within 30 feet (10 meters) of one another.
- For additional troubleshooting steps, see "If you need help" at the bottom of the Apple support article [iPhone Mirroring](#).

# Copy and paste between your iPhone and other Apple devices

You can use a feature called Universal Clipboard to copy content from one of your Apple devices and paste it on another. For example, you can copy text on your iPad and paste it into a note on your iPhone, or copy an image from a Safari webpage on your iPhone and paste it into an email message on your Mac.

You can use Universal Clipboard with your iPhone, iPad, and Mac.

## Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#), [Bluetooth](#)®, and [Handoff](#) turned on.
- You're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- Both devices meet [minimum system requirements for Universal Clipboard](#).

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration doesn't prevent local networking, as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

## Copy and paste between your iPhone<sup>Draft</sup> and other devices

Universal Clipboard isn't a feature that you see. It behaves just like copy and paste does on your iPhone, except with Universal Clipboard, when you paste, you can do so on one of your other Apple devices, like an iPad or a Mac.

1. Select the text or image on your iPhone, then tap Copy.
2. On your other device, either tap (on another iPhone or an iPad) or click (on a Mac) where you want to paste the text or image, then tap or click Paste. You can also use keyboard shortcuts.

For more information on how to copy or paste on your iPhone, iPad, or Mac, see [How to copy and paste on an iPhone or iPad](#) or [How to copy and paste on a Mac](#).

*Note:* When you copy the content, it's available on your Clipboard for a short amount of time.

### How to copy and paste on an iPhone or iPad

- *Select and copy text:* Double-tap with one finger to select a word or triple-tap with one finger to select a paragraph. (You can also move the grab points to adjust your selection.) Then tap Copy.
- *Select and copy an image:* Touch and hold to select an image, then tap Copy.
- *Paste text or an image:* Tap where you want to paste the text or image, then tap Paste.

To find additional gestures that allow you to copy and paste, see [Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone](#) and [Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPad](#).

### How to copy and paste on a Mac

- *Select text or an image:* With your pointer, select the text or image you want to copy.
- *Copy text or an image:* Press Command-C or choose Edit > Copy from the menu bar.
- *Paste text or an image:* Move your pointer where you want to paste the text or image and click, then press Command-V or choose Edit > Paste from the menu bar.

To find additional gestures that allow you to copy and paste, see [Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone](#) and [Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPad](#).

### If Universal Clipboard isn't working

- Make sure that you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- Make sure that your iPhone and Mac have [Wi-Fi](#), [Bluetooth](#), and [Handoff](#) turned on.
- Your devices must be within 30 feet (10 meters) of one another.
- If you're having difficulty getting Universal Clipboard to work, restart your devices and try again.

Universal Clipboard is best for sharing small selections of text or copied images between devices. If you want to share multiple files between your Mac and other Apple devices, see [Transfer files from iPhone to a storage device, a server, or the cloud](#).

# Stream video and audio from your iPhone with AirPlay Draft

With AirPlay, you can stream video and audio from your iPhone to a nearby Mac or TV. You can also mirror what's on your iPhone screen.

You can use AirPlay with your iPhone and a Mac, an Apple TV, or another TV.

## Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) turned on and are connected to the same network.
- If you're streaming between your own Apple devices, it's useful to [sign in to the same Apple Account](#).
- To use AirPlay to stream content to a Mac, both devices meet [minimum system requirements](#).
- To use AirPlay to stream content to a TV, make sure you're using Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV.

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration doesn't prevent local networking, as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

## Set up a Mac to allow streaming from your iPhone

1. On a Mac, go to the [System Settings](#) app .
2. Click General in the sidebar. (You may need to scroll down.)
3. Click AirDrop & Handoff, then turn on AirPlay Receiver.
4. Click the pop-up menu next to "Allow AirPlay for" and choose the devices that can use AirPlay to stream content to this Mac.
  - *Allow only your devices*: If you only want to allow AirPlay from devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account, select "Current user."
  - *Allow any device*: Select "Anyone on the Same Network" or Everyone.
5. To require a password to use AirPlay with the Mac, select the option, then enter a password.

## Stream photos or videos from your iPhone to your Mac or TV

You can stream photos and videos from your iPhone to a Mac, an Apple TV, or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV.

1. On your iPhone, find the photo or video that you want to stream.
2. Tap .

*Note:* In some apps, you may need to tap a different button first, like .



3. Choose your Mac or TV from the list.
4. Use the playback controls on your iPhone.

5. To stop streaming, on your iPhone,  then tap Turn Off AirPlay.

**Tip:** You can set up your iPhone to discover and automatically connect to any Apple TV or smart TV that you use frequently when you play content from apps that you use regularly with AirPlay. To turn this feature on or off on your iPhone, go to Settings  > General > AirPlay & Continuity, then in the Automatically AirPlay pop-up menu, choose Automatic, Never, or Ask.

## Mirror your iPhone on a Mac or TV

1. [Open Control Center](#) on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then choose your Mac or TV as the playback destination.

To switch back, open Control Center, tap , then tap Stop Mirroring.

## Play audio from your iPhone on a Mac or TV

You can use AirPlay to stream audio from your iPhone to a Mac or TV. If you're streaming to your Mac, make sure you've set up the Mac to allow streaming from another device first. See [Allow streaming from another device](#).

1. Go to an audio app (such as Podcasts or Music) on your iPhone, then choose an item to play.
2. Tap , then choose a playback destination.



You can also use AirPlay to stream audio from your iPhone to a HomePod. To learn more, see [Play audio on HomePod using an iOS or iPadOS device](#).

## Use AirPlay in your hotel room

If you stay in a hotel room with a TV that supports AirPlay, you can use it to play movies, TV shows, music, and more from your iPhone.

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. If it's not already on, turn on the room's TV and locate the AirPlay QR code.
3. [Scan the QR code with your iPhone camera](#), then follow the onscreen instructions to connect to your hotel Wi-Fi (if you're not already connected) and the room's TV.
4. Use your iPhone to display content on the TV screen by [streaming photos or videos](#), [mirroring your screen](#), or [playing audio](#). Choose your hotel TV as the playback destination.
5. To stop streaming or mirroring, tap the AirPlay or Screen Mirroring button  or  on your iPhone, then tap your iPhone in the list or tap Stop Mirroring.

*Note: AirPlay in hotels isn't available in all countries or regions.*

## If AirPlay isn't working

- Make sure that both of your devices are on the same network.
- Check that your Mac is set up to allow streaming from another device.
- See the Apple Support article [If screen mirroring or streaming isn't working on your AirPlay-compatible device](#).

# Use iPhone to allow calls and text messages on your iPad and Mac

You can relay phone calls and text messages through your iPhone to your iPad or Mac, so it's easy to stay in touch no matter which device you're on.

Use your iPhone to make and receive phone calls or messages on your iPad, Mac, or another iPhone.

*Note: Cellular charges may apply. Wi-Fi Calling isn't available from all carriers.*

## Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth®](#) turned on.
- You're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration doesn't prevent local networking, as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

## Set up your iPhone to allow phone calls on your other devices

1. On your iPhone, go to the [Settings](#)  app.
2. Tap [Apps](#), then tap [Phone](#).
3. Tap [Calls on Other Devices](#), turn on [Allow Calls on Other Devices](#), then choose the devices you want to allow to make and receive calls.

The devices you choose can make and receive calls when they're near your iPhone, connected to Wi-Fi, and signed in to the same Apple Account.

## Make or receive phone calls on your iPad or Mac

After you set up your iPhone to allow calls on your other devices, you can make and receive phone calls on your iPad and Mac.

- *Make a call:* On your iPad or Mac, tap or click a phone number in [Contacts](#), [Calendar](#), [FaceTime](#), [Messages](#), [Search](#), or [Safari](#). Or open [Phone](#), tap or click [the keypad button] and type a number, or search for a contact and select [the phone icon].

If you make a call from another device by relaying it through your iPhone with Dual SIM, the call is made using your default voice line.

- *Receive a call:* On your iPad or Mac, swipe, tap, or click the notification to answer or ignore the call.

## Stop receiving phone calls on your iPad

If you no longer want to receive phone calls on your iPad, you can turn off the option on your iPhone. Draft

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > FaceTime on your iPhone.
2. Turn off Allow Calls on Other Devices.

## Send and receive messages on your iPad or Mac

You can send and receive messages—both iMessage and SMS/RCS/MMS messages—on your iPad or Mac. For more information on iMessage and SMS/RCS/MMS messages, see [What is the difference between iMessage, RCS, and SMS/MMS?](#)

To send and receive iMessages on iPad, see [Set up iMessage on iPad](#). To send and receive iMessages on Mac, see [Set up iMessage on Mac](#).

To send and receive SMS/RCS/MMS messages on your iPad and Mac, see [Access your messages on all your Apple devices](#).

## If phone calls and text messages on your iPad and Mac aren't working

- Make sure that you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- Make sure that your iPhone and Mac have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#) turned on.
- Your devices must be within 30 feet (10 meters) of one another.
- If you're having difficulty getting text messages to work, see the Apple Support article [Forward text messages from your iPhone to other devices](#).

In addition to making and receiving phone calls on your iPad or Mac, you can also use Handoff to transfer a FaceTime call from one device to another. See [Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPad to your other Apple devices for iPad](#) and [Move a FaceTime call to another device for Mac](#).

For more information about Wi-Fi calls, see the Apple Support article [Make a call with Wi-Fi Calling](#).

## Share your internet connection from your iPhone

You can share the internet connection from your iPhone with other devices using a feature called Instant Hotspot. Instant Hotspot uses the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone, and is useful when your other device doesn't have internet access from a Wi-Fi network.

There are several ways to connect other devices to your Personal Hotspot:

- Connect your other device to your iPhone through Wi-Fi settings.
- Pair your two devices with Bluetooth®.
- Connect your other device to your iPhone with a cable.

You can share the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone with another iPhone, an iPad, a Mac, a Windows device, and more.

*Note:* Personal Hotspot isn't available with all carriers. Additional fees may apply. The number of devices that can join your Personal Hotspot at one time depends on your carrier and iPhone model. Contact your carrier for more information.

## Before you begin

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#) turned on.
- The devices are within 30 feet (10 meters) of each other.
- Both devices meet [minimum system requirements for Instant Hotspot](#).

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration doesn't prevent local networking, as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

If you're sharing your Personal Hotspot with your Apple devices, it's faster to connect if you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.

**Note:** You can only use Personal Hotspot by sharing the cellular internet connection on your iPhone. You can't connect your iPhone to a Wi-Fi network, and then share that network with another device.

## Set up Personal Hotspot on your iPhone

On your iPhone, go to [Settings](#) > Personal Hotspot, then tap Allow Others to Join.

Optionally, you can change the Wi-Fi Password. Your Wi-Fi network name is your device name, which you can change in [Settings](#) > General > About.

If you set up your iPhone to use two SIMs, Personal Hotspot uses the line you select for cellular data. See [Set up Dual SIM](#).

**Note:** If Cellular Data is turned on in [Settings](#) > Cellular, but you don't see Set Up Personal Hotspot as an option, contact your carrier about adding Personal Hotspot to your plan.

## Turn Personal Hotspot on and off on your iPhone

On your iPhone, [open Control Center](#). Tap  to make your Personal Hotspot discoverable.

You can choose who is allowed to use your Personal Hotspot, set a password, and—if you're in a Family Sharing group—decide if you want to automatically share your Personal Hotspot with specific family members. To set up, go to [Settings](#) > Personal Hotspot.

## Connect to a Personal Hotspot with Wi-Fi

You can connect another device to the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone using Wi-Fi settings. You can connect another iPhone, an iPad, a Mac, a Windows device, and many other devices that are able to connect to a Wi-Fi network.

1. On the device that you want to connect to the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone, do any of the following:
  - *On an iPhone with Touch ID:* Swipe down from the top-right edge to open Control Center. Tap  to turn Wi-Fi on, then choose your iPhone.
  - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe up from the bottom to open Control Center. Tap  to turn Wi-Fi on, then choose your iPhone.
  - *On an iPad:* Swipe down from the top-right edge to open Control Center. Tap  to turn Wi-Fi on, then choose your iPhone.
  - *On a Mac:* Click  in the menu bar, then choose your iPhone.
  - *On a Windows device or other device:* Follow the manufacturer's instructions to connect to a Personal Hotspot.

2. Enter the password you set up for your Personal Hotspot to connect. If you're connecting another Apple device and you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices, you don't need to enter a password.

*Note:* When a Mac is connected to your Personal Hotspot, the Personal Hotspot icon  appears in the status bar of the connected Mac.

When you're not using the hotspot, your devices automatically disconnect to save battery life.

## Connect to a Personal Hotspot with Bluetooth

You can connect a Mac or Windows device to the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone using Bluetooth instead of Wi-Fi. Both devices must have Bluetooth turned on.

1. On your Mac, go to the [System Settings](#) app.

*Note:* If your Mac has macOS 12.5 or earlier, choose Apple menu  > System Preferences.

2. Click Bluetooth  in the sidebar. (You may need to scroll down.)
3. On your iPhone, go to Settings > Bluetooth to make sure it's discoverable.
4. On your Mac, select your iPhone when it appears. (It may take a moment.)

As soon as it's connected by Bluetooth, your Mac is able to use the cellular connection on your iPhone.

To connect your Windows device to your iPhone using Bluetooth, follow the manufacturer's directions to set up a Bluetooth network connection.

## Connect to a Personal Hotspot with a USB cable

You can connect a Mac or Windows device to the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone using the USB cable that came with your iPhone (or another cable that matches the ports on your iPhone and other device).

*Note:* If you see an alert on your iPhone that says Trust This Computer? tap Trust. You may be asked to enter your device passcode to proceed. If you see an alert on your Mac that says "Allow accessory to connect?" click Allow.

As soon as it's connected by a cable, your Mac or Windows device is able to use the cellular connection on your iPhone.

## If your Personal Hotspot isn't working

- Make sure that your devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#) turned on.
- Your devices must be within 30 feet (10 meters) of one another.
- See the Apple Support article [If Personal Hotspot is not working on your iPhone or iPad \(Wi-Fi + Cellular\)](#) for additional troubleshooting steps.
- Maximize compatibility in Settings > Personal Hotspot, then enable Maximize Compatibility. Maximize Compatibility may reduce performance for devices connected to your Personal Hotspot when turned on.

When you share a Personal Hotspot from your iPhone, it uses cellular data for the internet connection. To monitor your cellular data network usage, go to Settings > Cellular. See [View or change cellular data settings](#).

If you use Family Sharing, you can share your Personal Hotspot with any member of your family. See [Set up Family Sharing](#).

# Use your iPhone as a <sup>Draft</sup>webcam on Mac

With Continuity Camera, you can use your iPhone as your Mac webcam or microphone, and take advantage of the powerful iPhone camera and additional video effects. You can connect wirelessly, or with a USB cable for a wired connection.

You can use your iPhone as a webcam with Continuity Camera on an iPhone and Mac.

You can also use your iPhone as a webcam when making a FaceTime call on Apple TV. To learn more, see [Use FaceTime on Apple TV 4K \(2nd generation or later\)](#).

## Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth®](#) turned on.
- You're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- The devices are within 30 feet (10 meters) of each other.
- Both devices meet [minimum system requirements for Continuity Camera](#).

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration doesn't prevent local networking, as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

## Set up your iPhone for Continuity Camera

1. Mount your iPhone using an iPhone-compatible mount or stand in landscape orientation. It must be near your Mac (within 30 feet) in a stable position, with its rear camera facing you.
2. To turn on Continuity Camera on iPhone, go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
3. Tap General, then tap AirPlay & Continuity.
4. Turn on Continuity Camera.

Continuity Camera works wirelessly, though you can also use Continuity Camera by connecting your iPhone to your Mac with a USB cable. You can use the cable that came with your iPhone or another cable that matches the ports on your iPhone and Mac.

*Note:* If you connect your iPhone and Mac with a cable and see an alert on your iPhone that says Trust This Computer? tap Trust. You may be asked to enter your device passcode to proceed. If you see an alert on your Mac that says "Allow accessory to connect?" click Allow.

## Use your iPhone as a webcam for Mac

1. On your Mac, open any app that has access to the camera or microphone, like FaceTime or Photo Booth. You can also use this feature with many third-party apps that access the camera or microphone.

## 2. In the app's menu bar or settings, choose your iPhone as a camera.

*Note:* The location of these settings can vary depending on the app. For instance, in FaceTime, click Video in the menu bar, then choose your iPhone. Or in Magnifier, click Camera in the menu bar, then choose your iPhone. See [Choose an external camera on Mac](#) for guidance on where to find these settings in other apps.

Your iPhone begins streaming audio or video from the rear camera to your Mac.

## 3. To control video or audio, do any of the following:

- *Pause the video or audio:* On your iPhone, tap Pause. You can also unlock your iPhone to pause video or audio by swiping up.
- *Resume the video or audio:* On your iPhone, tap Resume. You can also resume by locking your iPhone.
- *Stop using your iPhone as a webcam or microphone:* On your Mac, quit the app.

*Note:* If you need to charge your iPhone while Continuity Camera is turned on, use a USB cable for best results.

While streaming video or audio, you can move your iPhone and change its orientation. Remember, however, that for best results, keep your iPhone mounted and in landscape orientation.

When using your iPhone as a webcam, you can use video effects like Portrait mode and Center Stage. See [Use video conferencing features on Mac](#).

## Turn on Desk View

You can use Desk View and other video effects when you're using an app that supports video and have set up your iPhone as a webcam.

### 1. On your Mac, do either of the following:

- *FaceTime:* Start your video call, then click the [three ellipsis button] in the bottom of the video window, and choose Desk View.
- *Other apps that support video:* Click ⓘ in the menu bar, then click the Desk View button.

Desk View opens, which mimics an overhead camera and shows a top-down view of your desk.

### 2. Use the Desk View setup window on your Mac to align your desk with the camera. To zoom in or out, drag the onscreen control at the bottom of the window. When you're ready to share your desk view on the video call, click Share Desk View.

*Note:* To share what's on your desk in a third-party app, use the app's screen sharing feature to select the Desk View window for sharing. To find out how, see the developer's instructions or explore the app's menus and settings.

### 3. To turn off Desk View, click [the red X] to close the window.

## Use your iPhone as a microphone for your Mac

You can use your iPhone as a microphone on a Mac that doesn't have a built-in or external microphone.

### 1. On your Mac, go to the [System Settings](#) app ⓘ.

2. Click Sound  in the sidebar. (You Draft may need to scroll down.)

3. Click Input, then select your iPhone in the list of sound input devices.

**Note:** In order to use your iPhone as a microphone on a Mac, the iPhone must be in landscape orientation and stationary, with its screen turned off.

## Remove your iPhone as a webcam or microphone option for your Mac

On your iPhone, tap Disconnect, then confirm that you want to disconnect. iPhone

Your iPhone is removed from the camera and microphone lists in apps, and also from the list of sound input devices in Sound settings.

To reconnect your iPhone as a webcam or microphone, connect it to your Mac with a USB cable, then follow the steps to [use your iPhone as a webcam](#) or [use your iPhone as a microphone](#), above.

## If Continuity Camera isn't working

- Make sure that your iPhone and Mac have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#) turned on.
- Your devices must be within 30 feet (10 meters) of one another and, for best results, your iPhone should be mounted and in landscape orientation.
- Connect your iPhone to your Mac with a USB cable and check again. (If it's already connected with a cable, disconnect and reconnect it.) If your iPhone asks you to trust the computer or your Mac asks you to allow the accessory, be sure to give permission.
- Make sure that you aren't using another Continuity feature, such as [iPhone Mirroring](#).
- Check that your devices meet [minimum system requirements for Continuity Camera](#).
- For additional troubleshooting steps, see "If you need help" at the bottom of the Apple Support article [Continuity Camera](#).

## Insert sketches, photos, and scans from your iPhone on Mac

With the Continuity Sketch and Continuity Camera features, you can draw a sketch, take a photo, or scan a document using your nearby iPhone and have it appear instantly on your Mac, exactly where you want it—for example, in an email, note, or folder. You can also mark up a file on your Mac with your iPhone using Continuity Markup.

You can use Continuity Camera, Continuity Sketch, and Continuity Markup with your iPhone and a Mac.

### Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#)® turned on.
- You're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- Your devices are within 30 feet (10 meters) of each other.

- Both devices [meet minimum system requirements for Continuity Camera, Continuity Sketch, and Continuity Markup](#).  
Draft

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration doesn't prevent local networking, as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

Depending on where the photo or scan is inserted, you can mark it up or adjust other aspects, such as crop it or apply a filter.

## Insert a sketch, photo, or scan from your iPhone

You can draw a sketch on your iPhone and have it appear on your Mac with Continuity Sketch, or take a photo or scan a document on your iPhone and have it appear on your Mac with Continuity Camera.

1. On your Mac, [Control-click](#) where you want to insert the sketch or photo—for example, in an open window, like a note or email message.

You can also Control-click the desktop or a folder in a Finder window.

2. Choose an option from the pop-up menu. You may need to click "Insert from iPhone or iPad" before seeing the options.

3. Do any of the following:

- *Add a sketch:* On your iPhone, draw a sketch using your finger.
- *Take a photo:* On your iPhone, take the photo, then tap Use Photo or Retake.
- *Scan a document:* On your iPhone, take the scan. Your iPhone detects the edges of the document and autocorrects any skewing of the image. If you want to adjust the area included in the scan, drag the frame or its edges. When you're ready, tap Keep Scan or Retake. You can continue to scan documents until you're done, then tap Save.

On your Mac, the sketch, picture, or scan appears in the location you chose in step 1. If you added it from the desktop or a folder, it appears as a file.

Depending on where the photo or scan is inserted, you can mark it up or adjust other aspects, such as crop it or apply a filter.

To use a scanner with your Mac, see [Scan images or documents using a scanner and your Mac](#).

*Note:* Scans you take on your iPhone aren't saved on the device.

## Use your iPhone to mark up a file on your Mac

Use your iPhone to add text, make drawings, rotate, and crop images, PDF documents, and more on your Mac, called Continuity Markup.

1. On your Mac, click the desktop to open the Finder.
2. [Control-click](#) the file you want to mark up, choose Quick Actions, then choose Markup.

The file opens.

3. In the toolbar, click  or click  (the button may have an arrow next to it), then choose your device.
4. Use the [Markup tools](#) to draw, add text or shapes, and more.
5. When you're done, tap Done on your iPhone.

6. To save your changes, click Done Draft on your Mac.

If Continuity Camera, Continuity Sketch, or Continuity Markup aren't working:

- Make sure you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- Make sure that both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#) turned on.
- Make sure that your devices are within 30 feet (10 meters) of one another.
- Make sure your device meets [minimum system requirements for Continuity Camera](#).

## Start SharePlay by holding two iPhone devices close together

With SharePlay, you can instantly stream supported content, listen to music, play games, and more in sync with a friend by holding your iPhone close to your friend's iPhone.

### Start SharePlay

1. On your iPhone, in an app that supports SharePlay, tap the content you want to share.
2. Hold your iPhone next to the iPhone of the person you want to share with.  
If they're not in your contacts (or vice versa), you first need to share your contact information with them. See [Use NameDrop on iPhone](#).
3. Tap SharePlay.

The person you want to share with can accept or decline your SharePlay invitation.

*Note:* iOS 17 or later is required on both iPhone devices. AirDrop must be turned on, and the sender and recipient must be included in each other's contacts. Some apps that support SharePlay require a subscription. To watch a movie or TV show together, each participant must have access to the content on their own device, through either a subscription or purchase, on a device that meets the minimum system requirements. SharePlay might not support sharing some movies or TV shows across different countries or regions.

## Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable

You can use a cable to directly connect your iPhone to a Mac with OS X 10.9 or later, or to a Windows device with Windows 7 or later.

Using the charging cable for your iPhone, connect iPhone to the USB port on your computer. If the cable isn't compatible with the port on your computer, you'll need to use an adapter (sold separately).

*Note:* If an alert appears on your iPhone asking whether to trust this computer, select Trust. See the Apple Support article [About the 'Trust This Computer' alert](#).

After you connect your iPhone to a computer with a cable, you can do any of the following:

- Set up iPhone for the first time. [Draft](#)
- Share your iPhone internet connection with your computer.
- Update iPhone using your computer.
- Sync content or transfer files between between your iPhone and your Mac or Windows device.

The iPhone battery charges when iPhone is connected to your computer and your computer is connected to power.

## Transfer files between your iPhone and other devices

There are multiple ways to transfer photos, videos, and other files between your iPhone and other devices like an iPad, Mac, or Windows device. You can transfer files wirelessly with features like AirDrop or apps like Mail and Messages, or you can connect your iPhone to a computer or an external storage device with a cable, and then transfer or sync files.

You can also use iCloud to store your files, photos, videos, and more, and keep everything up to date on all your devices where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).

**Important:** Transferring, sharing, or syncing may be restricted for some types of data, such as files saved in an app's proprietary format, files saved in older software versions, and files protected by copyrights.

### Transfer files from your iPhone wirelessly

To quickly share a photo, file, or other item from your iPhone to a nearby Apple device, you can use AirDrop. See [Use AirDrop to send items to nearby devices](#).

You can also transfer files from your iPhone to another device by sending the file as an attachment in the Mail or Messages app.

- *Send a file as an email attachment:* See [Add email attachments in Mail](#).
- *Send a file as an attachment in Messages:* See [Share content in Messages](#).

### Transfer files by connecting your iPhone with a cable

You can [connect your iPhone to your Mac or Windows device with a cable](#) to transfer files to your computer, an external storage device, or a file server. When you transfer files to your Mac or Windows device, you can use the Finder, Apple Devices, or iTunes, depending on the model and operating system of your computer.

*Note:* Only files from iPhone apps that support file sharing can be transferred.

- *Transfer files with your Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* Use the Finder. See the Apple Support article [Use the Finder to share files between your Mac and your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#).
- *Transfer files to your Windows device (Windows 10 or later):* Use Apple Devices for Windows. See [Transfer files between your Windows device and iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#) in the Apple Devices User Guide for Windows.
- *Transfer files to your Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier) or Windows device (Windows 7 or earlier):* Use iTunes. See the Apple Support article [Use iTunes to share files between your computer and your iPhone or iPad](#).

- Transfer files to a storage device, a file server, or a service like Box or DropBox: See [Transfer files from iPhone to a storage device, a server, or the cloud](#).

## Sync your iPhone with other devices

You can also connect your iPhone to your Mac or Windows device to sync supported content. For example, when you add a movie to your iPhone, you can sync so that the movie also appears on your computer. You can sync content like music, movies, TV shows, and more.

When you sync files to your Mac or Windows device, you can use the Finder, Apple Devices, or iTunes, depending on the model and operating system of your computer.

- *Sync content with your Mac (macOS 10.15 or later)*: Use the Finder. See [Sync content between your Mac and iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#) in the Mac User Guide.
- *Sync content with your Windows device (Windows 10 or later)*: Use Apple Devices for Windows. See [Sync your Windows device and iPhone, iPad, or iPod](#) in the Apple Devices User Guide for Windows.
- *Sync content with your Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier) or Windows device (Windows 7 or earlier)*: Use iTunes. See the Apple Support article [Use iTunes to sync your iPhone, iPad, or iPod with your computer](#).

## Automatically keep your files in sync with iCloud

You can store your files, photos, videos, and more in iCloud so you can access them and keep them synced on all your devices as well as supported web browsers. Any change you make to a file on a device that's signed in to your Apple Account appears on all devices that are signed in to the same Apple Account. For more information, see [How iCloud keeps information up to date across all your devices](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

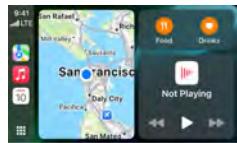
To get started, see [Set up iCloud on all your devices](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

Note: OS X 10.10 (or later) or Windows 7 (or later) are required. You must be signed in to the same Apple Account on both your iPhone and your computer, as well as any supported web browsers you might be using. See the Apple Support article [System requirements for iCloud](#).

# CarPlay

## Intro to CarPlay and iPhone

Connect your iPhone to CarPlay to get turn-by-turn directions, make phone calls, listen to music, check your calendar, and more—all from your vehicle's display.



Note: CarPlay isn't available in all countries or regions (see the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#)).

CarPlay is available on select automobiles (see the [CarPlay Available Models website](#)) and on select aftermarket navigation systems.

**Draft**  
**WARNING:** For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see [Important safety information](#).

## Connect iPhone to CarPlay

Set up CarPlay by connecting your iPhone and your vehicle using your vehicle's USB port or its wireless capability.

1. Start your car, then [make sure Siri is on](#).
2. Connect your iPhone to your car:
  - *If your car supports CarPlay with a USB cable:* Plug your iPhone into the USB port in your car. The USB port might be labeled with a CarPlay icon or a smartphone icon. Be sure to use an Apple USB Cable.
  - *If your car supports CarPlay both wirelessly and with a USB cable:* Plug your iPhone into the USB port in your car. The next time you attempt to connect your iPhone to CarPlay, an alert on your iPhone allows you to connect wirelessly.
  - *If your car supports only wireless CarPlay:* Press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel. Make sure that your stereo is in wireless or Bluetooth mode. Then on your iPhone, go to Settings > Wi-Fi, and make sure that Wi-Fi is also turned on. Tap the CarPlay network, and check that Auto-Join is turned on. Then, go to Settings > General > CarPlay, and select your car. Check your car manual for more information.

*Note:* After connecting to CarPlay on some electric vehicles, use the Maps app to identify the vehicle for EV routing. See [Set up electric vehicle routing](#).

On some vehicle models, CarPlay Home appears automatically when you connect iPhone.

If CarPlay Home doesn't appear, select the CarPlay logo on your vehicle's display.



## Use Siri to Control CarPlay

CarPlay uses Siri voice control, so you can ask for what you want. (You can also [use your car's built-in controls](#) to control CarPlay.)

### Use Siri on CarPlay

1. Do one of the following until Siri beeps:
  - Press and hold the voice command button on the steering wheel.
  - Touch and hold ■ or □ on a touchscreen displaying CarPlay.
  - You can also say "Hey Siri" to activate Siri in supported vehicles.

## 2. Use Siri to ask a question or to do something.

Say something like:

- "Get directions to the nearest coffee shop"
- "Call Eliza Block"
- "Play more songs like this one"
- "Show me the map"
- "What's my next meeting?"
- "What's the weather for today?"
- "Remind me to pack an umbrella when I get home"

**Tip:** Instead of waiting for Siri to notice that you've stopped talking, you can press and continue to hold the voice command button on the steering wheel while you speak, then release it when you finish.

Siri also makes suggestions in CarPlay for what you might want to do next, such as operate the garage door when you arrive home or drive to your next meeting. See [About Siri Suggestions](#).

## Use your vehicle's built-in controls to control CarPlay

CarPlay works with your vehicle's built-in controls—for example, a touchscreen, a rotary knob, or a touchpad. To learn how to operate your display, see the owner's guide that came with your vehicle. (You can also [use Siri](#) to control CarPlay.)

- *Open an app:* Tap the app on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to select the app, then press the knob.
- *Switch between CarPlay Dashboard and CarPlay Home:* CarPlay Dashboard displays several items you likely want to view or control, such as driving directions, audio playback, and suggestions from Siri. CarPlay Home shows all your CarPlay apps organized into pages.

To go to CarPlay Home, tap  on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to select , then press the knob.

To go to CarPlay Dashboard, tap , or turn the rotary knob to select , then press the knob.

- *Return to your vehicle's Home Screen:* Select the icon with your vehicle's logo if it appears on CarPlay Home or, if available, the physical Home button on your radio.
- *Return to a recently used app:* Tap its icon on the edge of the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to the icon, then press the knob.
- *View additional apps:* If you have more than eight apps, some may appear on another page of CarPlay Home. To view them, swipe left on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob. (See [Use other apps with CarPlay](#).)
- *Scroll quickly through a list:* Tap the letters in the list on the right side of the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob.
- *Control audio playback:* Use the audio playback controls on CarPlay Dashboard. Or from CarPlay Home, select Now Playing to view and control the current audio app.

# Get turn-by-turn directions with CarPlay

Use Siri or open Maps to get turn-by-turn directions, traffic conditions, and estimated travel time (not available in all regions).

**Note:** To get directions, iPhone must be connected to the internet, and Location Services must be on. (See [Control the location information you share](#).)



## Find a route

CarPlay generates likely destinations using addresses from your email, text messages, contacts, and calendars—as well as places you frequent. You can also search for a location, use locations you saved as favorites and in collections, and find nearby attractions and services.

Say something like:

- "Find a gas station"
- "Give me directions home"
- "Take me to the Golden Gate Bridge"
- "Find a charging station"
- "Find coffee near me"

### [Learn how to use Siri](#)

Or you can use your vehicle's built-in controls to open Maps in CarPlay and select a route.

**Note:** If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Maps doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Maps.

1. With Maps open in CarPlay, do one of the following:
  - Select a place you saved as a favorite. (See [Add places and notes to your Places](#).)
  - Select Destinations, then select a recent destination or scroll to select a destination you saved in a collection. (See [Organize places with custom guides](#).)
  - Select Search, then select to speak a search phrase, or select to use the onscreen keyboard (if available). You can also select a destination from a category of nearby services, such as Parking or Restaurants.
2. If multiple routes appear, use your vehicle's controls to select the route you prefer.
3. To call your destination before you leave, select .
4. To start turn-by-turn directions, select Go.

Maps shows directions from your current location.

When you arrive at your destination and exit your vehicle, a parked car marker appears in Maps on iPhone so you can easily [find your way](#) back to your vehicle.

As CarPlay follows your progress, it speaks turn-by-turn directions to your destination.

Do any of the following at any time during your trip:

- *Add a stop to your driving directions:* Select the ETA display at the bottom left, select Add Stop, then choose a destination or use Siri to search for one.
- *End directions at any time:* Say something to Siri like "Stop navigating," or select the estimated time of arrival (ETA) display at the bottom left, then choose End Route.
- *Mute turn-by-turn directions:* Tap , then choose  to mute all directions.
- *Mute turn-by-turn directions, except for alerts and hazards:* Tap , then choose .
- *Make a quick detour:* Say something to Siri like "Find a gas station." Or select the ETA display, select Search, select a suggested service, then choose a destination.
- *Share your ETA:* Select the ETA display at the bottom left, select Share ETA, then choose one or more suggested contacts.

People using devices with iOS 13.1, iPadOS 13.1, or later receive a Maps notification with your ETA, and they can track your progress in Maps. People using devices with earlier versions receive the notification through iMessage. People using other mobile devices receive an SMS message. (Standard carrier data and text rates may apply.)

To stop sending ETA information, select Sharing ETA at the bottom of the CarPlay screen, then choose a contact.

**Note:** For navigation apps that support the CarPlay Dashboard, Dashboard shows the last navigation app opened if no apps are navigating, the one that is actively navigating, or the last opened and actively navigating app if multiple apps are navigating.

## Report traffic incidents in CarPlay

In select regions and countries, you can report accidents, hazards, speed checks, and road work (features vary by region and country).

### Report an incident

Say something like:

- "Report an accident"
- "There's something on the road"
- "There's a speed check here"

[Learn how to use Siri](#)

Or with turn-by-turn directions showing, you can select , then choose from one of the available options.

Apple evaluates incoming incident reports. When there's a high level of confidence in the reports, incident markers for Accident, Hazard, and Road Work are displayed in Maps for other users.

Draft  
Note: Speed checks are not displayed with incident markers. Instead, notifications for speed checks appear when you follow turn-by-turn directions.

## Report on the status of a hazard or accident

Incident markers show information about hazards  and accidents 

Say something like: "The hazard is gone" or "Clear the accident." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

Or, you can do the following:

1. Select the incident marker.
2. Select Cleared or Still Here.

Note: You can't clear reports of speed checks.

Apple evaluates incoming incident reports. When there's a high level of confidence in reports that an incident has been cleared, its incident marker is removed from Maps.

Note: Apple is committed to keeping personal information safe and private. To learn more, go to Settings  > Apps > Maps, then tap "See how your data is managed."

## Change the map view in CarPlay

Find your location on a map, zoom in and out, and move the map to see the detail you need.



When you [follow turn-by-turn directions](#), you can tap the touchscreen or turn the rotary knob, then do one of the following:

- *Switch between detailed and high-level views:* To see a detailed 3D map with your heading at the top of the screen, select . To see the route overview in 2D with north at the top of the screen, select .
- *Zoom in or out:* Select  or .
- *Scroll the map:* Select , then select a direction arrow on one of the edges of the screen. To return to turn-by-turn directions, tap Resume.

On some touchscreens, you can also drag the map to scroll it.

You can also change the map view when not following directions. Tap the touchscreen or turn the rotary knob, then do one of the following:

- *Show your current location:* Tap . Your position is marked in the middle of the map.
- *View a 3D map:* Tap 3D. To return to a 2D map, tap 2D.
- *Show your heading at the top of the screen:* Tap . To resume showing north at the top, tap .
- *Zoom in or out:* Select  or .
- *Scroll the map:* Select , then select a direction arrow at the edges of the screen. When finished, tap Done.

Draft

## FPO

You can view app activities on CarPlay Dashboard so you can easily follow their progress. Examples include directions from Maps, live sports updates from the Apple TV app, order updates from food delivery apps, and more. These updates are called Live Activities. CarPlay Dashboard mirrors the Live Activity settings on iPhone.

To change your Live Activity settings, go to Settings  on iPhone, tap Apps, tap the app with the settings you want to change, then tap Live Activities.

## Customize Widgets

View and customize Widgets in CarPlay to allow quick access to your most important information at a glance.

## FPO

### Add Widgets in CarPlay

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings  > CarPlay.
2. Tap [your car], Widgets, then Tap Add Widgets.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions to add a Widget.

### Rearrange or remove Widgets in CarPlay

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings  > CarPlay.
2. Tap [your car], then tap Widgets.
3. Drag  rearrange a Widget, or tap  to remove it.

### Turn on Smart Rotate or Widget Suggestions

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings  > CarPlay.
2. Tap [your car], tap Widgets, then enable Smart Rotate or Widget Suggestions.

## Make and receive phone calls with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to make phone calls and listen to voicemail from your iPhone. Draft

Say something like: "Call Eliza." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

Or you can use your vehicle's built-in controls to help make a call.

Open Phone in CarPlay, then select an option.

**Note:** If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Phone doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap  to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Phone.

## Play music with CarPlay

Use Siri or open Music in CarPlay to play music that's available on your iPhone—including songs, artists, albums, playlists, and Radio.

Say something like:

- "Let's hear the Acoustic playlist"
- "Play 'You Need to Calm Down' by Taylor Swift"
- "Play more songs like this one"
- "Play the rest of this album"
- "Skip this song"
- "Repeat this song"
- "Shuffle this playlist"
- "Tune into ESPN Radio"

[Learn how to use Siri](#)

If Siri doesn't find what you asked for, be more specific. For example, say "Play the radio station 'Pure Pop'" rather than saying "Play 'Pure Pop.'"

You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control music playback.

You can also play music together using SharePlay. See [Play music together in the car](#).

**Note:** If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap  to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Music.

Button	Description
	Pause playback.
	Play the current song.
	Skip to the next song. When pressed and held, fast forward through the current song.
	Return to the song's beginning. When pressed again, return to the previous song. When pressed and held, rewind through the current song.

Button	Draft Description
	Play songs in random order.
	Continually repeat the current song.
•••	Display controls to create a custom station based on the current song and to rate the current song.
Up Next	Display a list of songs queued for playback. (You can select a song from the list to skip the songs that proceed it.)

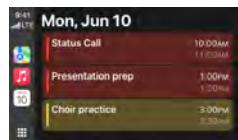
On some systems, Now Playing displays only a partial list of choices while you're driving. To choose among options not in the list, select More at the bottom of the screen, or use Siri by pressing and holding the voice command button on your steering wheel.

## View your calendar with CarPlay

Use Siri or open Calendar in CarPlay to view events, appointments, and meetings.

Say something like: "Do I have a meeting at 10?" or "Where is my 3:30 meeting?" [Learn how to use Siri](#).

Upcoming events appear in CarPlay Dashboard. You can also use your vehicle's built-in controls to open Calendar in CarPlay to view upcoming events.



**Note:** If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap □ to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Calendar.

To see more information about an event, select it. Options may allow you to get directions to the event or phone into it.

## Use the Messages app with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to send, hear, and reply to text messages from your iPhone.

Say something like:

- "Text my wife"
- "Text Eliza Block I'm in traffic and I'll be 15 minutes late to the meeting"
- "Read my text messages"

[Learn how to use Siri](#)

Send and receive text messages

You can use your vehicle's built-in controls to help send and receive messages. Open Messages in CarPlay, then do one of the following:

- *Hear unread messages or respond to a thread:* Select a conversation.
- *Start a new conversation:* Select .
- *Automatically send messages:* Skip the confirmation step when sending messages with Siri to send messages automatically, unless you ask to change or cancel it.

In CarPlay, go to Settings  > Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri), then select Automatically Send Messages.

## React with Tapbacks

Tapbacks give you a quick and easy way to respond to a message, such as a heart or a thumbs-up. When you receive a message in CarPlay, do the following:

### Pin important conversations

You can pin important conversations to keep them prominently featured at the top of Messages in CarPlay. See [Pin a conversation](#).

*Note:* If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Messages doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap  to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including [incoming text messages with CarPlay](#).

## Announce incoming text messages with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to have Siri automatically read your incoming text messages and listen for your response.

- On your iPhone, go to Settings  > Announce Messages, then turn on Announce Notifications.

*Note:* You can also enable or disable Announce Messages directly in CarPlay by tapping Announce when Siri reads an incoming text message. See [Have Siri announce notifications](#).

## Play podcasts with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to play the podcasts that are on your iPhone.

You can use your vehicle's built-in controls to open Podcasts and select a podcast to play.

*Note:* If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap  to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Podcasts.

You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, the buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control podcast playback.

Button	Description
	Play

Button	Draft Description
	Pause
	Jump back 15 seconds
	Jump forward 30 seconds
	Choose a faster or slower playback speed

## Play audiobooks with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to play the audiobooks that are on your iPhone.

Say something like: "Play Pride and Prejudice audiobook" or "Rewind 15 seconds." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

Or you can use your vehicle's built-in controls to open Audiobooks and select a book to play. You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control audiobook playback.

*Note:* If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap □ to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Audiobooks.

## Listen to news stories with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to listen to Apple News Today audio briefings and, if you're an Apple News+ subscriber, audio versions of select news stories. (If you aren't a subscriber, you can listen to story previews.)

You can use your vehicle's built-in controls to open News and select a story to play.

*Note:* If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and News doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap □ to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including News.

You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, the buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control playback.

*Note:* CarPlay isn't available in all countries or regions (see the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#)).

Button	Description
	Pause playback.
	Play the current story.
	Skip to the next story.

Button	Draft Description
	Jump back 15 seconds.
<b>1x</b>	Choose a faster or slower playback speed.

## Control your home from CarPlay

You can use suggestions from Siri that appear on CarPlay Dashboard or use Siri directly to control HomeKit-enabled accessories, such as garage doors, lights, and door locks.

Say something like:

- "Open the garage door"
- "Did I leave the garage door open?"
- "Close the garage door"
- "Lock the front door"
- "Turn on the lights"
- "Turn off the lights"

[Learn how to use Siri](#)

[Use other apps with CarPlay](#)

## Use other apps with CarPlay

You can use Siri with CarPlay to access many of the apps on iPhone, including Reminders, Clock, Weather, and more.

Say something like:

- "Remind me to pack an umbrella when I get home"
- "Add milk to my grocery list"
- "Set my alarm for 6:00 a.m. tomorrow"
- "What's the weather for today?"

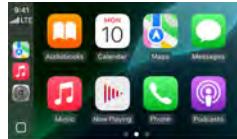
[Learn how to use Siri](#)

CarPlay works with select third-party apps that you download to your iPhone. Compatible apps—including audio, navigation, messaging, and voice-calling apps, and apps made by your vehicle manufacturer—show up automatically on CarPlay Home and can be controlled with Siri. For example, you can use Siri to give you directions from your favorite navigation app. CarPlay also works with additional third-party apps for EV charging, parking, and quick food ordering.

*Note:* Compatible third-party navigation apps appear on CarPlay Dashboard while in use. When you're not actively navigating, or if you're navigating using more than one app, CarPlay Dashboard displays the last compatible navigation app that was used.

# Rearrange the icons on CarPlay Home Draft

1. When you're not operating your vehicle, open Settings on your iPhone, go to General > CarPlay, select your vehicle, then tap Customize.
2. Do one of the following:
  - *Move an icon:* Drag ≡ up or down in the list.
  - *Remove an icon:* Tap ✘ next to the icon, then tap Remove.  
Only icons that have ✘ next to them can be removed.
  - *Add an icon back to CarPlay:* Below More Apps at the bottom of the page, tap ○ next to the icon.



Your icon changes appear on CarPlay Home the next time you connect to CarPlay.

## Change settings in CarPlay

In Settings in CarPlay, you can change the Wallpaper, turn on Driving Focus, change how CarPlay looks on the display, turn suggestions in CarPlay Dashboard on or off, and show or hide album art.

### Use the Driving Focus with CarPlay

The Driving Focus helps you stay focused on the road. While your iPhone is connected to CarPlay and Driving Focus is on, notifications and text messages are silenced or limited.

1. Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls.

*Note:* If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Settings doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap □ to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Settings.

2. Go to Driving Focus, then select Activate With CarPlay.

If you receive a Driving Focus notification when you're not driving (for example, when you're a passenger) you can turn it off—tap the notification, then tap "I'm not driving."

### Switch the appearance of CarPlay

CarPlay is set to dark appearance by default in most vehicles. If you prefer to have CarPlay automatically switch between dark and light appearance, do the following:

1. Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls.
2. Select Appearance.
3. Select Always Dark.

The dark appearance is optimized for viewing in low-light environments, such as at night.

### Change the wallpaper in CarPlay

Draft  
Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, select Wallpaper, then choose one of the available options.

## Hide or show suggestions in CarPlay Dashboard

Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, then turn Suggestions in CarPlay off or on.

## Hide or show album art

Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, then turn Show Album Art off or on.

# Accessibility

## Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

Customize iPhone in ways that work best for you with features for vision, hearing, mobility, speech, and cognitive accessibility—whether you need them temporarily or on an ongoing basis.

You can [turn on accessibility features when you set up your iPhone for the first time](#), or at any time in Settings  > Accessibility.

### Vision



Use the built-in screen reader to hear what's on the screen and navigate iPhone with gestures. Or make text bigger, zoom in on the screen, adjust display colors, and more.

You can even use your iPhone as a magnifying glass, and hold it up to get descriptions of your surroundings if you can't see them.

[Learn more about accessibility features for vision](#)

### Mobility

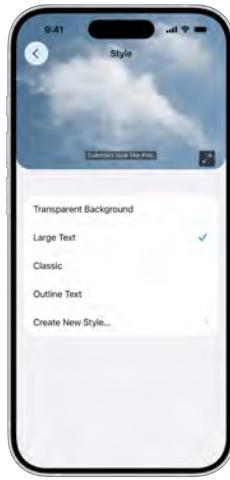


Navigate and perform actions on iPhone using just your eyes or spoken commands. Or connect an assistive device or an external keyboard and use it to control iPhone.

You can also make it easier to use gestures and set other options so iPhone responds best to your touch.

[Learn more about accessibility features for mobility](#)

## Hearing



Get real-time captioning of spoken audio from an app or live conversation, turn on flash notifications, have iPhone recognize sounds, and more.

You can also pair hearing devices with your iPhone, and adjust headphone audio so it's right for you. Or experience songs as taps, refined vibrations, and other haptics that are synced to the rhythm of the music.

[Learn more about accessibility features for hearing](#)

## Speech

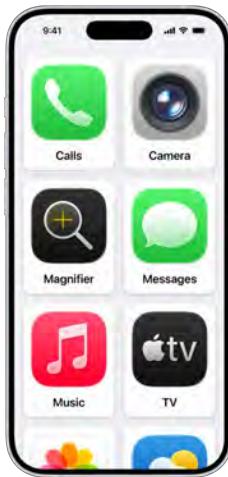


Create a custom voice that sounds like you, or choose one of dozens of system voices, then use it to have what you type spoken out loud.

You can also have Siri recognize a wider range of speech patterns, or teach iPhone to perform an action when you speak a word or sound of your choosing.

[Learn more about accessibility features for speech](#)

## Cognitive



iOS accessibility features can help you—or someone you care for—use iPhone with greater independence. You can set up an iPhone with a simplified interface for someone with a cognitive disability, or temporarily lock iPhone to one app when you let a child use it.

[Learn more about cognitive accessibility features](#)

**Tip:** Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with Siri, the click of a button, or from Control Center. See [Quickly turn accessibility features on or off](#).

# Use accessibility features during iPhone setup

iPhone has accessibility features that you can turn on the first time you turn on your iPhone, to make it easier to set up and personalize other iPhone features.

## Hear what's onscreen with VoiceOver

VoiceOver—a gesture-based screen reader—<sup>Draft</sup>tells you what's happening onscreen.

1. After iPhone is turned on, triple-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or triple-click the Home button (on other iPhone models) to [turn on VoiceOver](#).
2. Do any of the following and more:
  - *Speak the entire screen:* Swipe up with two fingers.
  - *Find out what you're touching:* Touch the screen or drag your finger over it. VoiceOver speaks the name of the item your finger is on, including icons and text. Swipe right to elect the next item. Tap with four fingers near the top to select the first item on the screen.
  - *Select an item:* Tap to select a button or link, and activate it by double-tapping.
  - *Scroll to another page:* Swipe with three fingers.
  - *Open the onscreen rotor:* Turn two fingers on the screen, as if rotating a dial. See [Control VoiceOver using the rotor](#).

**Note:** When VoiceOver is on, basic gestures don't work as usual. See [Use VoiceOver gestures](#) and [Operate iPhone when VoiceOver is on](#).

You can adjust audio options, language, voice, speaking rate, how much detail VoiceOver provides, and more in [VoiceOver settings](#).

## Zoom in on part of the screen

1. Double-tap the screen with three fingers, then use the slider to set a magnification level.
2. Use three fingers to scroll around the zoomed-in screen.

See [Zoom in](#).

## Turn on other features during setup

You can turn on additional accessibility features from the Quick Start screen.

Tap ⓘ to turn on or adjust settings for any of the following:

- [VoiceOver](#)
- [Zoom](#)
- [Display & Text Size](#)
- [Motion](#)
- [Spoken Content](#)
- Touch (such as [AssistiveTouch](#) and [Touch Accommodations](#), [Switch Control](#), or any [external keyboard](#).)

If you've set up accessibility features on an iPhone or iPad that's nearby, you can transfer your settings to your new iPhone with Quick Start—just follow the onscreen instructions. See [Turn on and set up your iPhone](#). (See [Move from an Android device to iPhone](#) if your previous device wasn't made by Apple.)

# Change Siri accessibility settings on iPhone

You can change how quickly or when Siri responds, use text to make requests to Siri, have Siri listen for atypical speech patterns, have Siri audibly share notifications, and announce and end calls.

## Tell Siri when and how to respond to requests

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Set how long Siri waits for you to finish speaking:* Below Siri Pause Time, choose Default, Longer, or Longest.
  - *Change how fast Siri speaks:* Adjust the slider below Speaking Rate.
  - *Decide when Siri responds aloud or in text:* Choose an option below Spoken Responses. You can also [change when Siri responds](#).
  - *Use Siri even when iPhone is covered or facing down:* When you set up Siri, "Hey Siri" activates Siri only when your iPhone faces up. To change this, turn on Always Listen for "Hey Siri." [Learn how to use Siri](#).
  - *Require "Siri" or "Hey Siri" in order to interrupt Siri:* Turn on Require "Siri" for Interruptions. This can be useful if you use VoiceOver or Voice Control and don't want VoiceOver speech or Voice Control commands to interrupt Siri.

To change how you activate Siri, see [Turn on Siri](#) and [Change when Siri responds](#).

## Type instead of speak to Siri

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Type to Siri.
2. To make a request, [activate Siri](#), then interact with Siri using the keyboard and text field.

## Have Siri recognize a wider range of speech patterns

When your [primary language is set](#) to English (U.S.), you can have Siri listen for atypical speech. This may be helpful if you have an acquired or progressive condition that affects speech, such as cerebral palsy, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), or stroke.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Listen for Atypical Speech.

You can also teach iPhone to perform an action when you speak a word or make a sound of your choosing. See [Use Vocal Shortcuts](#).

## Announce calls and notifications for specific apps

You can have Siri [announce notifications](#) and [calls](#) from apps like Messages on your iPhone speaker, [supported headphones](#), when [using CarPlay](#), and on [MFi hearing devices](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Announce Notifications on Speaker.
2. Tap Announce Notifications, then for each app, choose whether to announce all notifications or only time-sensitive notifications.

## End calls with Siri

You can have Siri end phone and FaceTime calls.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility >  Call, tap Call Hangup, then turn on Call Hangup.

*Note:* Available in select languages and on iPhone 11, iPhone SE (2nd generation), and later. Requires download of speech models.

2. To end a call, [ask Siri](#) something like, "Siri, hang up." (Participants on the call will hear you.)

You can also [route and automatically answer calls](#) or have Siri [announce and answer calls](#).

## Quickly turn accessibility features on or off on iPhone

You can quickly turn many accessibility features on or off by clicking or pressing an iPhone button or tapping the back of iPhone. You can also use Control Center, Siri, or Vocal Shortcuts.

### Use the Accessibility Shortcut

Triple-click the side button or Home button to turn the accessibility features of your choice on or off.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then select the features you want.

If you select only one feature, the feature is immediately turned on or off when you click the button shortcut.

2. Triple-click one of the following:

- The side button (on an [iPhone with Face ID](#))
- The Home button (on other iPhone models)

To have iPhone recognize a slower triple-click, see [Adjust settings for the side or Home button](#).

3. Tap the feature you want to turn on or off (if Accessibility Shortcut is set up with more than one feature).

*Note:* To add some features—like [Assistive Access](#) or [Guided Access](#)—to the Accessibility Shortcut, you need to set them up first. You can use the Accessibility Shortcut to enter and exit Assistive Access, but you can't use it to turn on other features while Assistive Access is active. To use the Accessibility Shortcut while Guided Access is on, you must turn on Accessibility Shortcut in [Guided Access settings](#).

### Press the Action button

On [supported iPhone models](#), you can press the Action button to open the [Magnifier app](#) or an accessibility feature of your choice. See [Use and customize the Action button](#).

### Tap the back of iPhone

You can double- or triple-tap the back of iPhone to open an accessibility feature of your choice. See [Back tap](#).

### Use Control Center

You can add accessibility features to Control Center for quick access when you 

swipe from and edge of the screen. Draft

1. To change the features available in Control Center, [open Control Center](#), tap + in the top-left corner, then tap Add a Control.
2. Tap a control to add it to Control Center. Scroll down to see more controls, including categories of controls for accessibility, hearing, mobility, and vision.

You can change which features appear when you tap ⓘ in Control Center. Go to Settings ⓘ > Accessibility > Hearing Control Center, then add or remove features.

## Use Siri

[Ask Siri](#) something like, "Turn on Voice Control." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

## Use a Vocal Shortcut

You can teach iPhone to turn on an accessibility feature when you speak a word or another sound of your choosing. See [Use Vocal Shortcuts](#).

# Share your accessibility settings with another device on iPhone

You can temporarily share your accessibility settings with another iPhone or iPad. For example, if you're borrowing a friend's iPhone or using a public iPad, you can share your accessibility settings with the other device and remove them when you're finished.

## Share your accessibility settings with another device

1. Go to the Settings app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, then tap Share Accessibility Settings. (You may need to scroll down.)
3. Tap Share Accessibility Settings, then tap Continue.
4. Do one of the following:
  - *Use Bluetooth to share your accessibility settings:* Select a device to share your settings with.

*Note:* If you don't see any devices, make sure your device and the other device have [Bluetooth turned on](#).

- *Bring your iPhone to another iPhone:* Tap Search People Nearby, then hold the top of your iPhone near the top of another iPhone.
- *Bring your iPhone or iPad to another iPad:* Tap Search People Nearby, then hold the top of your device near the top of another iPad.

*Note:* To make their device discoverable to you, the other device needs to perform a three finger hold on their screen to create a six digit code. Enter the code on your device, then select the name of the device.

5. Start using the other device with your accessibility settings.

*Note:* The other device needs to accept your request to share your accessibility settings.

6. When you're finished using the device, tap the Accessibility Reader button at the top of the screen, then tap Stop Sharing.

## Turn on or off syncing your accessibility settings to iCloud Draft

You can sync your accessibility settings to iCloud so that your settings appear on other devices signed in to your Apple Account. Your accessibility settings will also be available when you share accessibility settings from those devices.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, then tap Share Accessibility Settings. (You may need to scroll down.)
3. Turn Sync to iCloud on or off.

# Vision

## Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

With built-in accessibility features for vision on iPhone, you can make it easier to see what's on the screen, or you can hear what's on the screen spoken out loud. You can even use your iPhone as a magnifying glass, and hold it up to get descriptions of what's around you if you can't see it.

To explore accessibility features for vision, go to Settings  > Accessibility. Vision features are at the top.

### Hear what's on the screen

Have the built-in screen reader speak what's on the screen. Navigate your iPhone with gestures, or with a connected keyboard or braille display.

#### [Turn on and practice VoiceOver](#)

Even if VoiceOver is off, have iPhone read all text on the screen, what you're typing, and more.

#### [Hear what's on the screen or typed](#)

Get spoken descriptions of visual content in movies, TV shows, and other media, when available.

#### [Hear audio descriptions for video content](#)

	Control iPhone with VoiceOver		Speak onscreen text
	Hear descriptions of video		

You can also [have iPhone play sounds when you turn it on and off](#).

**Tip:** With [Siri](#) and [Dictation](#), you can complete common tasks and enter text using just your voice.

### Get information about your surroundings

Have iPhone read text on household appliances, ATMs, and more.

#### [Read aloud text and labels around you](#)

**Draft**  
Hold up iPhone and get information about what your camera is pointed at, including when people, doors, or text are detected.

[Get live descriptions of visual information around you](#)

Use iPhone as a magnifying glass to zoom in on items around you.

[Magnify and examine objects around you](#)



Point at text and  
hear it spoken



Hear about your  
surroundings



Get a closer look

## Make text and other onscreen content larger

Enlarge what you're viewing—the entire screen or one part of it.

[Zoom in](#)

Adjust the reading size for text across iPhone apps and system features.

[Make text easier to read](#)

Display a separate window with a larger version of the text that you're typing.

[Use Hover Typing](#)



Zoom in



Make text bigger  
and bolder



Enlarge text as you  
type

If you use a mouse or trackpad with iPhone, you can also [show a larger version of text when you hover over it](#) or [make the pointer easier to see](#).

## View what's on the screen more comfortably

Pause animated images, and slow down the motion of user interface elements. Or dim your display when media you're viewing depicts strobe or flashing lights.

[Stop or reduce onscreen motion](#)

Get animated dots on the edges of the screen that may help reduce motion sickness.

[Use iPhone more comfortably while riding as a passenger in a vehicle](#)

If you prefer light text on a dark background, choose a dark color scheme for the iPhone user interface.

[Turn Dark Mode on or off](#)

Differentiate content on the screen more easily by inverting colors, applying a color filter, and more.

[Change display colors](#)



Reduce onscreen  
motion



Use iPhone more  
comfortably in a car

[Use Dark Mode](#)[Adjust the display colors](#)

**Tip:** Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with the click of a button or from Control Center. See [Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut](#).

## Read or listen to text in apps with Accessibility Reader on iPhone

With Accessibility Reader on iPhone, you can read or listen to text in a full-screen view, and customize fonts, layouts, and background colors. Accessibility Reader is built into the Magnifier app , so you can also customize text in your surroundings —like in restaurant menus or books. See [view your captured text in a format for easier reading](#) and [listen to your captured text](#).

### Turn on Accessibility Reader

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, then tap Read & Speak.
3. Tap Accessibility Reader, then turn on Accessibility Reader.

Turn on Autoplay if you want Accessibility Reader to automatically read text aloud.

To start using Accessibility Reader, open an app, triple-click the side button on your iPhone, then tap Accessibility Reader.

### Customize text color, font, and spacing in apps

1. Open any app on your iPhone and turn on Accessibility Reader.

See [Turn on Accessibility Reader](#).

2. Tap , then tap Customize Reader.

You may need to tap the page for  to appear.

3. Select a theme, then tap Edit.

- *Text Color*: Choose a color or tap Custom Color.
- *Background Color*: Choose a color or tap Custom Color.
- *Text Size*: Drag the slider left or right to make the text smaller or larger.
- *Font*: Choose a font.
- *High Legibility Characters*: Turn on High Legibility Characters.
- *Bold Text*: Turn on Bold Text.
- *Line Spacing*: Choose Default, Loose, or Open.
- *Word Spacing*: Choose Default, Loose, or Open.
- *Character Spacing*: Choose Default, Loose, or Open.
- *Readable Content Width*: Choose Default, Loose, or Open.
- *Hyperlinks*: Turn on hyperlinks or choose a color.
- *Playback*: Turn playback highlighting on, choose a style, or choose a color.
- *Rename*: Enter a name for the settings you choose.
- *Reset to Default*: Reset all themes to their default settings.

**Tip:** Rename a theme with your custom settings so you can easily find it and reuse it later.

## Listen to spoken text in apps

1. Open any app on your iPhone and turn on Accessibility Reader.

See [Turn on Accessibility Reader](#).

2. Do any of the following:

- *Listen to the text*: Tap the Play button.
- *Pause the text*: Tap the Pause button.
- *Skip forward or backward*: Tap the rounded arrows next to the Pause or Play button.
- *Increase or decrease the speed*: Tap the 1x button, then select a speed.

*Note:* You can hide or show audio controls in Accessibility Reader: tap ⓘ, then tap Hide Audio Controls or Show Audio Controls. (You may need to tap the page for ⓘ to appear.)

## Zoom in on the iPhone screen

In many apps, you can zoom in or out on specific items. For example, you can double-tap or pinch to look closer in Photos or expand webpage columns in Safari. You can also use the Zoom feature to magnify the screen no matter what you're doing. You can magnify the entire screen (Full Screen Zoom) or magnify only part of the screen with a resizable lens (Window Zoom). And, you can use Zoom together with VoiceOver.



## Set up Zoom

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Zoom, then turn on Zoom.
2. Adjust any of the following:
  - *Follow Focus*: Track your selections, the text insertion point, and your typing.
  - *Smart Typing*: Switch to Window Zoom when a keyboard appears.
  - *Keyboard Shortcuts*: Control Zoom using shortcuts on an external keyboard.
  - *Zoom Controller*: Turn the controller on, set controller actions, and adjust the color and opacity.
  - *Zoom Region*: Choose Full Screen Zoom or Window Zoom.
  - *Zoom Filter*: Choose None, Inverted, Grayscale, Grayscale Inverted, or Low Light.
  - *Maximum Zoom Level*: Drag the slider to adjust the level.
3. If you use iPhone with a pointer device, you can also set the following below Pointer Control:
  - *Zoom Pan*: Choose Continuous, Centered, or Edges to set how the screen image moves with the pointer.
  - *Adjust Size with Zoom*: Allow the pointer to scale with zoom.
4. To add Zoom to Accessibility Shortcut, go to Settings > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then tap Zoom.

## Use Zoom

1. Double-tap the screen with three fingers or use [Accessibility Shortcut](#) to turn on Zoom.
2. To see more of the screen, do any of the following:
  - *Adjust the magnification*: Double-tap the screen with three fingers (without lifting your fingers after the second tap), then drag up or down. Or triple-tap with three fingers, then drag the Zoom Level slider.
  - *Move the Zoom lens*: (Window Zoom) Drag the handle at the bottom of the Zoom lens.
  - *Pan to another area*: (Full Screen Zoom) Drag the screen with three fingers.

3. To adjust the settings with the *Zoom* menu, triple-tap with three fingers, then adjust any of the following:

- *Choose Region*: Choose Full Screen Zoom or Window Zoom.
- *Resize Lens*: (Window Zoom) Tap Resize Lens, then drag any of the round handles that appear.
- *Choose Filter*: Choose Inverted, Grayscale, Grayscale Inverted, or Low Light.
- *Show Controller*: Show the Zoom Controller.

4. To use the Zoom Controller, do any of the following:

- *Show the Zoom menu*: Tap the controller.
- *Zoom in or out*: Double-tap the controller.
- *Pan*: When zoomed in, drag the controller.

While using Zoom with Magic Keyboard, the Zoom region follows the insertion point, keeping it in the center of the screen. See [Pair Magic Keyboard](#).

To turn off Zoom, double-tap the screen with three fingers or [use Accessibility Shortcut](#).

## View a larger version of text you're reading or typing on iPhone

With Hover Text on iPhone, you can move the pointer over text and other items on the screen (such as icons) to view a larger version of them. Or use Hover Typing to display a separate window with a larger version of text that you're typing.

### Before you begin

To use Hover Text, you need to connect a pointing device such as a trackpad or mouse with your iPhone. See the Apple Support article [How to use a pointer device with AssistiveTouch on your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#).

You don't need to connect a pointing device to use Hover Typing.

### Show a larger version of text when you hover over it

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, tap Hover Text, then turn on Hover Text.
3. Move the pointer over text to display a larger version of it.
4. If you have a connected keyboard, you need to press and hold the Control key to show the Hover Text window.

If you use iPhone with a connected keyboard, you can have the Hover Text window automatically displayed when you move the pointer over text, without needing to press and hold a key every time. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Hover Text, then turn on Activation Lock. To use activation lock, quickly press the Control key three times.

You can change the key you press to activate Hover Text and activation lock. Tap Activation Modifier, then choose another key.

### Show a larger version of text you're typing

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, tap Hover Text, tap Hover Typing, then turn on Hover Typing.
3. As you type in a text entry field, a larger version of what you're typing is displayed.

To temporarily hide the Hover Typing window, swipe on it. It reappears when you start typing again.

## Customize Hover Text

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, then tap Hover Text.
3. Customize any of the following:
  - *Display mode*: Choose where to show the Hover Text or Hover Typing window—inline (near the cursor), at the top of the screen, or directly above the onscreen keyboard.
  - *Content*: Choose to show Text, Color, or Text & Color.
  - *Scrolling speed*: Choose a faster or slower speed (for scrolling in the Hover Text window when viewing large blocks of text).
  - *Font*: Choose a custom font.
  - *Size*: Adjust the slider to change your preferred reading size.
  - *Text Color*: Choose a text color by Grid, Spectrum, or Sliders.
  - *Background Color*: Choose a background color by Grid, Spectrum, or Sliders.
  - *Border color*: Choose a border color by Grid, Spectrum, or Sliders.

## Customize Hover Typing

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, tap Hover Text, then tap Hover Typing.

### 3. Customize any of the following: Draft

- *Display mode*: Choose where to show the Hover Text or Hover Typing window—inline (near the cursor), at the top of the screen, or directly above the onscreen keyboard.
- *Font*: Choose a custom font.
- *Size*: Adjust the slider to change your preferred reading size.
- *Text Color*: Choose a text color by Grid, Spectrum, or Sliders.
- *Insertion Point Color*: Choose an insertion point color by Grid, Spectrum, or Sliders.
- *Background Color*: Choose a background color by Grid, Spectrum, or Sliders.
- *Border color*: Choose a border color by Grid, Spectrum, or Sliders.
- *Misspelled Word Color*: Choose a color for misspelled words by Grid, Spectrum, or Sliders.
- *Autocorrected Word Color*: Choose a color for autocorrected words by Grid, Spectrum, or Sliders.

## Change display colors on iPhone to make it easier to see what's onscreen

To make it easier to see what's on your iPhone screen, you can invert display colors, make transparent items solid, and modify how colors appear with color filters.

**Tip:** Quickly set brightness with the slider in [Control Center](#).

### Invert colors

Make the background dark so text and content stand out. This can be especially useful in apps and websites that don't support [Dark Mode](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on one of the following:
  - *Smart Invert*: Reverse colors everywhere except images.
  - *Classic Invert*: Reverse all the colors onscreen.

### Differentiate or tone down colors

You can apply a filter to view the entire screen in grayscale, adjust colors for color vision deficiencies, or tint the screen a color of your choosing.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Tap Color Filters, turn on Color Filters, then tap a color filter to apply it.

You can drag any slider that appears to adjust the intensity or hue. The pencils reflect how the filter affects a range of colors.

*Note:* Color filters can change the look of images and videos.

Turn on Reduce White Point to tone down the intensity of bright colors.

To have screen colors become warmer as it gets dark out, use [Night Shift](#). Night Shift automatically removes inverted colors and color filter effects (except grayscale).

You can also use the Magnifier app to capture an image of nearby text or objects and apply a color filter to it. See [Customize controls in Magnifier](#).

## Make transparent items solid

Some backgrounds appear transparent or blurred by default. You can make these transparent backgrounds opaque by giving them a solid color. In this way you simplify those parts of your screen and make them easier to see.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on Reduce Transparency.

## Differentiate without color

Some screen items rely on color to convey information. You can replace these with alternative ways to tell them apart, like shapes or text.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on Differentiate Without Color.

## Use symbols for on/off switches

Switches turn green when they are on. You can also have switches use a vertical line to indicate when they're on and a circle to indicate when they're off.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on On/Off Labels.

To apply these settings to only the contents of the zoom window, see [Zoom in](#).

# Make text easier to read on iPhone

You can make it easier to read text on iPhone by increasing its size, making it bold, and more.



## Make text bigger and bolder

You can set a single preferred text size for all supported apps (including Calendar, Mail, Messages, Notes, Settings, and more). You can also turn on bold text.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.

Draft

- *Make text bigger:* Tap Larger Text, then drag the slider to adjust the text size.

For additional text sizes, turn on Larger Accessibility Sizes.

- *Make text heavier:* Turn on Bold Text.

**Tip:** Change the size of text while you're in an app. [Open Control Center](#), then adjust the Text Size slider . If you don't see the Text Size slider, tap + in the top-left corner, tap Add a Control, then tap the Text Size control.

You can also [turn on Display Zoom](#) to increase the size of text as well as interface elements like icons and buttons.

## Identify tappable text

You can underline any text that performs an action when you tap it.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on Button Shapes.

You can also [change display colors on iPhone](#) to make it easier to see what's [onscreen](#) or [zoom in on the screen](#).

# Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPhone

If you don't want visual motion on your iPhone screen, you can stop or reduce the movement of some screen elements, such as:

- Parallax effect of wallpaper, apps, and alerts
- Screen transitions
- Siri animations
- Typing autocorrection
- Animated full-screen and bubble effects in the Messages app
- Animated images on the web and in apps

## Stop or reduce onscreen motion

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, then tap Motion.

### 3. These settings stop or reduce motion.<sup>Draft</sup>

- *Reduce Motion*: Turn on. (When off, more items in the user interface animate, such as the parallax effect of icons.)
- *Vehicle Motion Cues*: Turn on, off, or set to automatically turn on when you’re moving in a vehicle. You can also customize the appearance of the cues including the pattern, color, and visibility. (When on, dots appear and move on the screen to reduce or stop onscreen motion.)
- *Dim Flashing Lights*: Turn on. (The display of media automatically dims when flashes or strobe effects are detected.)
- *Auto-Play Animated Images*: Turn off. (When on, rapid animated images and moving elements such as GIFs in Messages and Safari play automatically.)
- *Auto-Play Video Previews*: Turn off. (When on, it allows apps such as the App Store to automatically play video previews.)
- *Auto-Play Message Effects*: Turn off. (When on, the Messages app automatically plays full-screen effects. If you turn this setting off, you can still manually play effects by tapping Replay below the message bubble.)
- *Prefer Non-Blinking Cursor*: Turn on. (Stop the blinking of the vertical bar that appears at the insertion point where you’re typing. If you use a braille display with iPhone, the cursor indicator on the display also stops blinking.)
- *Limit Frame Rate*: Turn on. (On [models with ProMotion display technology](#), this limits the maximum frame rate of the display to 60 frames per second.)

To apply these effects to specific apps, see [Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps](#).

**Important:** Your iPhone uses an on-device algorithm to detect flashing or strobing lights included in supported media and automatically dims them on your iPhone in real time. Motion settings should not be relied upon in high-risk situations, or for the treatment of any medical condition.

## Use iPhone more comfortably while riding in a vehicle

If you experience discomfort when you use iPhone while riding as a passenger in a car or other on-road vehicle, you can turn on Vehicle Motion Cues—onscreen cues that may help reduce motion sickness. Vehicle Motion Cues appear as animated dots on the edges of the screen that represent how the vehicle is moving without interfering with what you’re doing on iPhone.

**Note:** Vehicle Motion Cues should not be used while operating a moving vehicle and in other situations requiring attention to safety. For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see [Important safety information](#). Vehicle Motion Cues work best when you’re seated facing forward in the vehicle.

### Stop or reduce motion while riding in a vehicle

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, then tap Motion.<sup>Draft</sup>

3. Tap Vehicle Motion Cues, then tap <sup>Draft</sup> an option. If you choose Automatic, animated dots appear on the screen when iPhone detects that you're riding in a car or other on-road vehicle; the dots are hidden when the motion stops.
4. To manually show or hide Vehicle Motion Cues, [open Control Center](#), tap , then tap an option.

**Tip:** You can also set up a shortcut to turn Vehicle Motion Cues on or off. See [Quickly turn accessibility features on or off](#).

## Customize vehicle motion cues

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, tap Motion.
3. Tap Vehicle Motion Cues, then tap Customize Appearance.
4. Customize any of the following:
  - *Pattern:* Select Regular for a stable and predictable pattern, or Dynamic for a more engaging visual experience.
  - *Color:* Select a color. Color saturation will automatically adjust to maintain contrast with the content behind each dot.
  - *Visibility:* Select Larger Dots to increase the size of the dots or More Dots to increase the number of dots.

## Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps on iPhone

You can choose different color, text size, and motion settings for certain apps or for the Home Screen and App Library.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Per-App Settings.
2. Tap Add App, then choose an app from the list (or Home Screen & App Library).
3. Tap the name of the app (or Home Screen & App Library) to access its settings.

## Hear iPhone speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback

Even if VoiceOver is turned off, you can have iPhone read text on the screen out loud. Have iPhone read the entire screen or a specific selection. Or hear what you type spoken out loud, character by character or word by word.

### Have iPhone speak onscreen text

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Spoken Content.

2. Turn on any of the following: **Draft**

- *Speak Selection:* Have iPhone speak the text you select.
- *Speak Screen:* Have iPhone read all text on the screen, starting from the top.

Turn on Speech Controller to keep the Speak Screen controls on the screen.

Turn on Highlight Content to have words or sentences highlighted as iPhone reads them out loud.

- *Typing Feedback options:* As you type, have iPhone speak character by character, word by word, and more.

3. Do any of the following:

- *Hear selected text (if you turned on Speak Selection):* Select the text you want spoken, then tap Speak.
- *Hear all text on the screen (if you turned on Speak Screen):* Swipe down with two fingers from the top of the screen.

Use the controls that appear to pause speaking, adjust the rate, navigate forward or back to the content you want to hear, or use Speak on Touch (tap the text you want iPhone to read).

- *Hear what you type (if you turned on Typing Feedback options):* Start typing.

Ask Siri something like, "Speak screen." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

### Change how Spoken Content sounds

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Spoken Content.

2. Adjust any of the following:

- *Voices:* Choose a voice and dialect.
- *Speaking Rate:* Drag the slider.
- *Pronunciations:* Dictate or spell out how you want certain phrases to be spoken.

## Hear audio descriptions for video content on iPhone

If you can't see your screen and your content includes audio descriptions, you can listen to an audio description—a separate audio track that narrates or describes the visual content of a clip, show, or movie.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio Descriptions.

2. Turn on Audio Descriptions.

If you don't see audio descriptions, see the Apple Support article [Turn on audio descriptions on your iPhone or iPad](#).

If you're a content creator and want to add audio descriptions to a file, see [Add descriptive audio tracks](#) in the Compressor User Guide.

## Adjust CarPlay accessibility settings for

## vision

With CarPlay accessibility features for vision, you can make it easier to read text and differentiate colors on the CarPlay touchscreen.

**Note:** CarPlay isn't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

### Filter display colors

To make it easier to differentiate colors on the CarPlay touchscreen, you can apply filters for color vision deficiencies, or view the entire screen in grayscale.

1. In CarPlay, go to the Settings app.
2. Tap Accessibility, then tap Color Filters.
3. Turn on Color Filters.
4. Tap a filter. To change the intensity of the filter, tap Low, Medium, or High.

### Change the text size

Adjust the text size to make it easier to read what's on the CarPlay touchscreen

1. In CarPlay, go to the Settings app.
2. Tap Accessibility, then tap Text Size.
3. Tap a text size. You can see a preview of the text size below each number.

### Make text bold

Turn on bold text to make it easier to read what's on the CarPlay touchscreen.

1. In CarPlay, go to the Settings app.
2. Tap Accessibility, then turn on Bold Text.

### Control CarPlay with voice commands

You can use your iPhone's microphone to control CarPlay with voice commands.

1. In CarPlay, go to the Settings app.
2. Tap Accessibility, then turn on Voice Control.

## VoiceOver

### Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone

With VoiceOver—a gesture-based screen reader—you can use iPhone even if you can't see the screen. VoiceOver gives audible descriptions of what's on your screen—for example, hear the battery level, who's calling, or what item your finger is on. You can also customize the VoiceOver speaking voice to suit your needs.

When you touch the screen or drag your finger over it, VoiceOver speaks the name of the item your finger is on, including icons and text. To interact with the item, such as a button or link, or to navigate to another item, [use VoiceOver gestures](#).

When you go to a new screen, VoiceOver <sup>Draft</sup> plays a sound, then selects and speaks the name of the first item on the screen (typically in the top-left corner). VoiceOver tells you when the screen changes to landscape or portrait orientation, when the screen becomes dimmed or locked, and what's active on the Lock Screen when you wake iPhone.

## Turn VoiceOver on or off

**Important:** VoiceOver changes the gestures you use to control iPhone. When VoiceOver is on, you must use VoiceOver gestures to operate iPhone.

To turn VoiceOver on or off, do any of the following:

- Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then turn VoiceOver on or off.
- Use [Control Center](#) if you've added VoiceOver there.
- Use [the Accessibility Shortcut](#) if you've set it up to turn on VoiceOver.

[Ask Siri](#) something like, "Turn on VoiceOver." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

Siri knows when VoiceOver is on and often reads more information back to you than appears on the screen. You can also use VoiceOver to read what Siri shows on the screen.

## Use an interactive tutorial to learn VoiceOver

You can learn VoiceOver basics and practice essential gestures with the interactive VoiceOver Tutorial.

With VoiceOver turned on, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then tap VoiceOver Tutorial to get started.

## Practice VoiceOver gestures

You can use the VoiceOver Practice area to safely try out VoiceOver gestures and hear what they do—without performing any action or otherwise affecting iPhone.

Try different techniques to discover which works best for you. If a gesture doesn't work, try a quicker movement, especially for a double tap or swipe gesture. To swipe, try brushing the screen quickly with your finger or fingers. For best results using multifinger gestures, touch the screen with some space between your fingers.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Turn on VoiceOver, tap VoiceOver Practice, then double-tap to start.
3. Practice the following gestures with one, two, three, and four fingers:
  - Tap
  - Double tap
  - Triple tap
  - Swipe left, right, up, or down
4. When you finish practicing, tap Done, then double-tap to exit.

# Change your VoiceOver settings on iPhone

You can customize the settings for VoiceOver, such as the audio options, language, voice, speaking rate, and verbosity.

## Adjust the volume of VoiceOver speech and sounds Draft

- To increase or decrease your iPhone's volume, including the volume of VoiceOver speech and sounds, as well as all other iPhone audio, press the volume buttons on iPhone.
- To temporarily reduce the volume of other iPhone audio while VoiceOver is speaking, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Audio, tap Audio Ducking, then select When Speaking. Drag the Ducking Amount slider to set how much the volume decreases for other iPhone audio—like media and calls—when VoiceOver is speaking.
- To set other audio options, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Audio, then set options such as the following:
  - *Sounds & Haptics*: Adjust and preview sound effects and haptics.
  - *Auto-select Speaker in Call*: Automatically switch to the speaker during a call when you're not holding iPhone to your ear.
  - *Send to HDMI*: Route audio to externally connected devices, such as an instrument amplifier or a DJ mixer.

## Set the VoiceOver language

- *Change the primary language*: VoiceOver uses the same language you choose for your iPhone. To choose a different primary language, go to Settings  > General > Language & Region, then tap Add Language.
- *Switch languages using the rotor*: Use the [rotor](#) to switch to a voice for another language.
- *Automatically switch languages*: VoiceOver can detect text in another language and automatically switch to a voice for that language. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Speech, then turn on Detect Languages.

*Note:* VoiceOver isn't available in all languages. See the Apple Support article [Languages supported by VoiceOver](#).

## Change the speaking voice

You can change the VoiceOver speaking voice, or add another voice and [use the rotor](#) to switch between voices as needed.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Tap Speech, then do one of the following:
  - *Change the primary voice*: Tap the name of the current primary voice, then tap Voice.
  - *Add another voice*: Tap Add Rotor Voice.
3. Choose a voice. To choose an enhanced voice, tap  first.

## Adjust the speaking voice

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then do any of the following:

- *Adjust the speaking rate*: Drag the Speaking Rate slider.
- *Adjust the pitch*: Tap Speech, tap a voice, then drag the slider. You can also turn on Pitch Change to have VoiceOver use a higher pitch when speaking the first item of a group (such as a list or table) and a lower pitch when speaking the last item of a group.

- *Specify the pronunciation of certain words:* Tap Speech > Pronunciations, tap +, enter a phrase, then dictate or spell out how you want the phrase to be pronounced.

*Note:* You can dictate only if you turned on Enable Dictation in Settings > General > Keyboards.

## Set how much VoiceOver tells you

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Verbosity, then do any of the following:

- *Change how VoiceOver speaks punctuation:* Tap Punctuation, then choose a group. You can also create new groups—for example, a programming group in which "[" is spoken as "left bracket."
- *Change how VoiceOver reads notifications:* Tap System Notifications. By default, VoiceOver reads notifications, including incoming text messages, as they occur—even if iPhone is locked. Unacknowledged notifications are repeated when you unlock iPhone.
- *Choose additional options:* Have VoiceOver speak hints, uppercase letters, embedded links, and more. VoiceOver can even confirm rotor actions and tell you when the flashlight is turned on.

## Customize VoiceOver settings for an activity

You can customize a group of VoiceOver settings for an activity, such as programming. Then, when you open certain apps or adjust the rotor, the settings for speech, audio, verbosity, typing, navigation, and braille are applied automatically.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Activities.
2. Choose an existing activity or tap Add Activity.
3. Adjust the settings, then below Automatic Switching, do any of the following:
  - *Apply the settings for certain apps:* Tap Apps, then select the ones you want this setting to apply to.
  - *Apply the settings for certain contexts:* Tap Context, then select one or more contexts, such as Word Processing, Messaging, or Console.

## Use flat or grouped navigation

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Navigation Style, then choose one of the following:

- *Flat:* VoiceOver moves sequentially through each item on the screen when you use the move next and previous commands.
- *Grouped:* VoiceOver moves through items and groups of items on the screen. To move into a group, use a two-finger swipe right. To move out of a group, use a two-finger swipe left.

## Set a delay between touching the screen and selecting an item

You can control the amount of time between when you touch the screen and when VoiceOver selects the item you've touched. Increasing this value may help reduce accidental touches.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver, tap Delay before Selection, then tap  or  to increase or decrease the delay.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then turn on any of the following:

- *Large Cursor*: If you have difficulty seeing the outline around the selected item, you can enlarge and thicken the outline.
- *Caption Panel*: The text spoken by VoiceOver is displayed at the bottom of the screen.

## Use Quick Settings to adjust VoiceOver from anywhere on iPhone

When VoiceOver is turned on, you can access Quick Settings by doing a two-finger quadruple tap.

To customize Quick Settings, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Quick Settings.
2. Choose the settings you want, or drag  to reorder settings.

## Reset VoiceOver settings

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, then tap VoiceOver.
3. Tap Reset VoiceOver Settings. (You may need to scroll down.)

## Reset VoiceOver Commands

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, tap VoiceOver, then tap Commands.
3. Tap Reset VoiceOver Commands.

# Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone

When VoiceOver is on, standard touchscreen gestures have different effects, and additional gestures let you move around the screen and control individual items. VoiceOver gestures include two-, three-, and four-finger taps and swipes.

You can use different techniques to perform VoiceOver gestures. For example, you can perform a two-finger tap using two fingers on one hand, one finger on each hand, or your thumbs. Instead of selecting an item and double-tapping, you can use a split-tap gesture—touch and hold an item with one finger, then tap the screen with another finger.

## Explore and speak items on the screen

To explore the screen, drag your finger over it. VoiceOver speaks the name of each item you touch.

You can also use VoiceOver gestures to explore the screen in order, from top to bottom and left to right.

Action	Gesture
Select and speak an item	Tap or touch the item
Select the next item	Swipe right
Select the previous item	Swipe left

	Draft
Move into a group of items	Two-finger swipe right
Move out of a group of items	Two-finger swipe left
Select the first item on the screen	Four-finger tap near the top of the screen
Select the last item on the screen	Four-finger tap near the bottom of the screen
Speak the entire screen from the top	Two-finger swipe up
Speak the entire screen from the selected item	Two-finger swipe down
Pause or continue speaking	Two-finger tap
Speak additional information, such as the position within a list or whether text is selected	Three-finger tap

For more information about navigation styles, see [Use flat or grouped navigation](#).

## Scroll up, down, left, and right

Use VoiceOver gestures to move to another page.

Action	Gesture
Scroll up one page	Three-finger swipe down
Scroll down one page	Three-finger swipe up
Scroll left one page	Three-finger swipe right
Scroll right one page	Three-finger swipe left

## Take action on an item

Use VoiceOver gestures to perform actions on an item.

Action	Gesture
Select an item	Tap
Activate the selected item	Double tap
Touch and hold (long press) the item	Triple tap
Drag a slider	Tap the slider to select it, then swipe up or down with one finger; or double-tap and hold the slider until you hear three rising tones, then drag the slider
Start or stop the current action (for example, play or pause music or a video, take a photo in Camera, start or stop a recording, start or stop the stopwatch)	Two-finger double tap

Dismiss an alert or return to the previous screen	<b>Draft</b> Two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z")
Edit an item's label to make it easier to find	Two-finger double tap and hold
Lower the top half of the screen	Swipe up from the bottom of the screen with one finger, then, without lifting your finger, swipe down

**Tip:** As an alternative to selecting an item and double-tapping to activate it, touch and hold an item with one finger, then tap the screen with another.

## Use gestures to control VoiceOver

Use these gestures to control VoiceOver.

Action	Gesture
Mute or unmute VoiceOver	Three-finger double tap.  If both VoiceOver and Zoom are turned on, use the three-finger triple-tap gesture.
Turn the screen curtain on or off  (When the screen curtain is on, the screen contents are active even though the display is black and appears to be turned off.)	Three-finger triple tap.  If both VoiceOver and Zoom are turned on, use the three-finger quadruple-tap gesture.
Use a standard gesture	Double-tap and hold your finger on the screen until you hear three rising tones, then make the gesture. When you lift your finger, VoiceOver gestures resume.  For example, to drag a volume slider with your finger instead of swiping up and down, select the slider, double-tap and hold, wait for the three tones, then slide left or right.
Open the Item Chooser	Two-finger triple tap.  To move quickly through the list of items, type a name in the search field, swipe right or left to move through the list alphabetically, or tap the table index to the right of the list and swipe up or down. You can also <a href="#">use handwriting</a> to select an item by writing its name. If you use Braille Screen Input to <a href="#">type braille directly on the screen</a> , when you're not entering text, you can type to search for an item.  To dismiss the Item Chooser without making a selection, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").
Open the VoiceOver quick settings	Two-finger quadruple tap.
Start or stop Live Recognition	Four-finger triple tap. See <a href="#">Get live descriptions of your surroundings with VoiceOver</a> .

Draft

You can use the onscreen rotor to change VoiceOver settings, jump from one item to the next on the screen, select special input methods such as Braille Screen Input or Handwriting, and more. See [Control VoiceOver using the rotor](#).

You can use these gestures with the rotor.

Action	Gesture
Choose a rotor setting	Two-finger rotation
Move to the previous item or increase (depending on the rotor setting)	Swipe up
Move to the next item or decrease (depending on the rotor setting)	Swipe down

## Operate iPhone when VoiceOver is on

When VoiceOver is on, you need to use special gestures to unlock iPhone, go to the Home Screen, open Control Center, switch apps, and more.

### Unlock iPhone

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Wake iPhone and glance at it, then drag up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear two rising tones.
- *On an iPhone with Touch ID:* Press the Home button using the finger you registered with Touch ID.

If prompted, enter your passcode. To avoid having your passcode spoken as you enter it, [enter your passcode silently using handwriting mode or type onscreen braille](#).

### Go to the Home Screen

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear two rising tones, then lift your finger.
- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press the Home button.

### Switch to another app

Swipe right or left with four fingers to cycle through the open apps.

Alternatively, you can use the App Switcher.

1. To open the App Switcher, do one of the following:
  - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel the second vibration or hear three tones, then lift your finger.
  - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Double-click the Home button.
2. To browse the open apps, swipe left or right until the app you want is selected.
3. Double-tap to open the app.

### Open Control Center

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger down from the top edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear the second tone.
- *On all iPhone models:* Tap any item in the status bar, then swipe up with three fingers. Or touch and hold the bottom of the screen until you hear a tone, then swipe up.

To dismiss Control Center, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

## View notifications

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger down from the top edge of the screen until you feel the second vibration or hear the third tone.

To dismiss the notifications screen, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

- *On all iPhone models:* Tap any item in the status bar, then swipe down with three fingers. Or touch and hold the top of the screen until you hear a tone, then swipe down.

To dismiss the notifications screen, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

## Speak status bar information

1. Tap the status bar at the top of the screen.
2. Swipe left or right to hear the time, battery state, Wi-Fi signal strength, and more.

## Rearrange apps on your Home Screen

Do one of the following:

- *Drag and drop:* Tap an icon on the Home Screen, then double-tap and hold your finger on the screen until you hear three rising tones. The item's relative location is described as you drag. Lift your finger when the icon is in its new location. Drag an icon to the edge of the screen to move it to another Home Screen.
- *Move actions:* Tap an app, then swipe down to hear available actions. When you hear "Edit Mode," double-tap to start arranging apps. Find the app you want to move, then swipe down to the Move action and double-tap. Move the VoiceOver cursor to the new destination for the app, then choose from the available actions: Cancel Move, Create New Folder, Add to Folder, Move Before, or Move After.

When you're finished, tap Done, then double-tap.

## Search from the Home Screen

1. Tap anywhere on the Home Screen outside the status bar.
2. Swipe down with three fingers.

# Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone

You can use the onscreen VoiceOver rotor to change how VoiceOver works. You can adjust the VoiceOver volume or speaking rate, move from one item to the next on the screen, select special input methods such as Braille Screen Input or Handwriting, and more.



When you [use Magic Keyboard to control VoiceOver](#), use the rotor to adjust settings such as volume, speech rate, use of pitch or phonetics, typing echo, and reading of punctuation.

## Use the VoiceOver rotor

1. When VoiceOver is turned on, rotate two fingers on your screen as if you're turning a dial. If you prefer to use one finger on each hand, simultaneously drag up with one finger and drag down with the other.  
VoiceOver speaks the rotor setting. Keep rotating your fingers to hear more settings. Stop rotating your fingers when you hear the setting you want.
2. Swipe your finger up or down on the screen to use the setting.

The available rotor settings and their effects depend on what you're doing. For example, if you choose Headings when you're browsing a webpage, swipe down or up to move the VoiceOver cursor to the next or previous heading.

## Customize the VoiceOver rotor

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Add or reorder the rotor settings:* Tap Rotor, then choose the settings you want, or drag to reorder settings.
  - *Add another voice to the rotor:* See [Change the speaking voice](#).
  - *Have VoiceOver confirm rotor actions:* Tap Verbosity, then turn on Speak Confirmation.

## Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone

VoiceOver changes how you use the onscreen keyboard when you activate an editable text field. You can enter, select, and delete text; change the keyboard language; and more.

### Enter text with the onscreen keyboard

1. Select a text field, then double-tap.

The insertion point and the onscreen keyboard appear.

## 2. To enter text, do one of the following:

- *Standard typing:* Select a key by swiping left or right on the keyboard, then double-tap to enter the character. Or move your finger around the keyboard to select a key and, while continuing to touch the key with one finger, tap the screen with another finger. VoiceOver speaks the key when it's selected, and again when the character is entered.
- *Touch typing:* Touch a key on the keyboard to select it, then lift your finger to enter the character. If you touch the wrong key, slide your finger to the key you want. VoiceOver speaks the character for each key as you touch it, but doesn't enter a character until you lift your finger.
- *Direct Touch typing:* VoiceOver is disabled for the keyboard only, so you can type just as you do when VoiceOver is off.
- *Dictation:* Use a two-finger double tap on the keyboard to start and stop dictation.

To enter an accented character, do one of the following:

- *Standard typing:* Select the plain character, then double-tap and hold until you hear a tone indicating alternate characters have appeared. Drag left or right to select and hear the choices. Release your finger to enter the current selection.
- *Touch typing:* Touch and hold a character until the alternate characters appear.

## Edit text with the onscreen keyboard

- *Move the insertion point:* Swipe up or down to move the insertion point forward or backward in the text. Use the rotor to choose whether you want to move the insertion point by character, by word, or by line. To jump to the beginning or end, double-tap the text.

VoiceOver makes a sound when the insertion point moves, and speaks the character, word, or line that the insertion point moves across. When moving forward by words, the insertion point is placed at the end of each word, before the space or punctuation that follows. When moving backward, the insertion point is placed at the end of the preceding word, before the space or punctuation that follows it.

- *Move the insertion point past the punctuation at the end of a word or sentence:* Use the rotor to switch back to character mode.

When moving the insertion point by line, VoiceOver speaks each line as you move across it. When moving forward, the insertion point is placed at the beginning of the next line (except when you reach the last line of a paragraph, when the insertion point is moved to the end of the line just spoken). When moving backward, the insertion point is placed at the beginning of the line that's spoken.

- *Delete a character:* Use .

- *Select text:* Do any of the following:
  - Set the rotor to Text Selection, swipe up or down to choose Character, Word, Line, or Sentence, then swipe left or right to move backward or forward. (You may need to enable Text Selection—go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor.)
  - Set the rotor to Edit, swipe up or down to choose Select or Select All, then double-tap. If you choose Select, the word closest to the insertion point is selected when you double-tap. To increase or decrease the selection, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a “z”) to dismiss the pop-up menu, then pinch.
- *Cut, copy, or paste:* Set the rotor to Edit, select the text, swipe up or down to choose Cut, Copy, or Paste, then double-tap.
- *Fix misspelled words:* Set the rotor to Misspelled Words, then swipe up or down to jump to the previous or next misspelled word. Swipe left or right to choose a suggested replacement, then double-tap to use the replacement.
- *Undo:* Shake iPhone, swipe left or right to choose the action to undo, then double-tap.

## Change the keyboard settings

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Tap any of the following:
  - *Typing Style:* You can choose a new style. Or, set the rotor to Typing Mode, then swipe up or down.
  - *Phonetic Feedback:* Speak text character by character. VoiceOver first speaks the character, then its phonetic equivalent—for example, “f” and then “foxtrot.”
  - *Typing Feedback:* Choose to speak characters, words, both, or nothing.
  - *Verbosity:* Tap Deleting Text. To have VoiceOver speak deleted characters in a lower pitch, tap Change Pitch.

## Write with your finger in VoiceOver on iPhone

With handwriting mode in VoiceOver, you can enter text by writing characters on the screen with your finger. In addition to typing or dictation, use handwriting mode to enter your iPhone passcode silently or to open apps from the Home Screen.

### Use handwriting mode

1. Set the rotor to Handwriting.
 

If Handwriting isn’t in the rotor, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor, then add it.
2. To choose a character type (lowercase, numbers, uppercase, or punctuation), swipe up or down with three fingers.

To hear the selected character type, tap with three fingers.

3. Trace a character on the screen with your finger. Draft

You can also do any of the following:

- *Enter an alternate character* (a character with an accent, for example): Write the character, then swipe up or down with two fingers until you hear the character you want.
- *Enter a space*: Swipe right with two fingers.
- *Go to a new line*: Swipe right with three fingers.
- *Delete the previous character*: Swipe left with two fingers.

4. To exit handwriting mode, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z"), or set the rotor to a different setting.

## Enter your passcode silently with handwriting mode

1. On the passcode screen, set the rotor to Handwriting.
2. Write the characters of your passcode with your finger.

## Select an item on the Home Screen

1. On the Home Screen, set the rotor to Handwriting.
2. Start writing the name of the item with your finger.

If there are multiple matches, continue to spell the name until it's unique, or swipe up or down with two fingers to choose from the current matches.

## Quickly navigate a long list

1. Select the index to the right of the list (for example, next to your Contacts list or in the VoiceOver Item Chooser).
2. Set the rotor to Handwriting, then use your finger to write the letter you want to navigate to.

# Keep the screen off when you use VoiceOver on iPhone

If you use VoiceOver on iPhone, and don't need to see what's on the screen, you can turn on the screen curtain to improve battery life and maintain privacy. When the screen curtain is on, your iPhone is active even though the display is off.

With VoiceOver on, triple-tap with three fingers to turn the screen curtain on or off. If both VoiceOver and the Zoom feature are turned on, quadruple-tap with three fingers.

# Use VoiceOver on iPhone with an Apple external keyboard

If you [use Magic Keyboard](#) with iPhone, you can use keyboard shortcuts to activate VoiceOver commands.

Additionally, you can use VoiceOver Help to learn the keyboard layout and the actions associated with various key combinations. VoiceOver Help speaks keys and keyboard commands as you type them, without performing the associated action.

The modifier is a key or set of keys you press with one or more other keys to enter VoiceOver commands. You can set the modifier to be the Caps Lock key or the Control and Option keys pressed at the same time.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Typing > Modifier Keys.
2. Choose the modifier for VoiceOver commands: the Caps Lock key or the Control and Option keys.

This modifier is abbreviated as "VO" below.

## VoiceOver keyboard commands

You can control VoiceOver using key combinations.

(VO = modifier keys)

Action	Shortcut
Turn on VoiceOver Help	VO-K
Turn off VoiceOver Help	Esc (Escape)
Select the next or previous item	VO-Right Arrow or VO-Left Arrow
Activate the selected item	VO-Space bar
Touch and hold the selected item	VO-Shift-M
Read from the current position	VO-A
Read from the top	VO-B
Pause or resume reading	Control
Copy the last spoken text to the clipboard	VO-Shift-C
Search for text	VO-F
Mute or unmute VoiceOver	VO-S
Go to the Home Screen	VO-H
Move to the status bar	VO-M
Open the notifications screen	Move to the status bar (VO-M), then Option-Up Arrow
Open Control Center	Move to the status bar (VO-M), then Option-Down Arrow
Open Search	Option-Up Arrow
Open the App Switcher	VO-H-H
Open the Item Chooser	VO-I
Change the label of the selected item	VO-Slash
Start, stop, or pause an action	VO-Hyphen

	<b>Draft</b>
Swipe up or down	VO-Up Arrow or VO-Down Arrow
Turn the rotor left or right	VO-Command-Left Arrow or VO-Command-Right Arrow
Adjust the setting specified by the rotor	VO-Command-Up Arrow or VO-Command-Down Arrow
Turn the screen curtain on or off	VO-Fn-Hyphen (or VO-Globe key-Hyphen, depending on your keyboard)
Return to the previous screen	Esc

## Quick Nav using the arrow keys

Turn on Quick Nav to control VoiceOver using the arrow keys.

<b>Action</b>	<b>Shortcut</b>
Turn Quick Nav on or off	Left Arrow-Right Arrow
Select the next or previous item	Right Arrow or Left Arrow
Select the next or previous item specified by the rotor	Up Arrow or Down Arrow
Select the first or last item	Control-Up Arrow or Control-Down Arrow
Tap an item	Up Arrow-Down Arrow
Scroll up, down, left, or right	Option-Up Arrow, Option-Down Arrow, Option-Left Arrow, or Option-Right Arrow
Adjust the rotor	Up Arrow-Left Arrow or Up Arrow-Right Arrow

## Single-key Quick Nav for web browsing

To navigate a webpage quickly, turn on Quick Nav (VO-Q), then press keys on the keyboard to navigate to specific item types, such as headings or links. To move to the previous item, hold the Shift key as you press a key for the item type.

<b>Item type</b>	<b>Shortcut</b>
Heading	H
Link	L
Text field	R
Button	B
Form control	C
Image	I
Table	T
Static text	S
ARIA landmark	W

	Draft X
List	
Item of the same type	M
Level 1 heading	1
Level 2 heading	2
Level 3 heading	3
Level 4 heading	4
Level 5 heading	5
Level 6 heading	6

## Text editing

Use these commands (with Quick Nav turned off) to work with text. VoiceOver reads the text as you move the insertion point.

Action	Shortcut
Go forward or back one character	Right Arrow or Left Arrow
Go forward or back one word	Option-Right Arrow or Option-Left Arrow
Go up or down one line	Up Arrow or Down Arrow
Go to the beginning or end of the line	Command-Left Arrow or Command-Down Arrow
Go to the beginning or end of the paragraph	Option-Up Arrow or Option-Down Arrow
Go to the previous or next paragraph	Option-Up Arrow or Option-Down Arrow
Go to the top or bottom of the text field	Command-Up Arrow or Command-Down Arrow
Select text as you move	Shift + any of the insertion point movement commands above
Select all text	Command-A
Copy, cut, or paste the selected text	Command-C, Command-X, or Command-V
Undo or redo last change	Command-Z or Shift-Command-Z

## Use a braille display with VoiceOver on iPhone

With VoiceOver, you can connect a Bluetooth® wireless refreshable braille display and use it to control and navigate iPhone and read what's on the screen. The braille you type on the display is automatically translated into text, and the display shows what you're typing in context. You can read and type using contracted or uncontracted braille, with support for many international braille tables.

For a list of supported braille displays, see the Apple Support article [Braille displays supported by iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

## Connect a braille display and learn <sup>Draft</sup> commands to control iPhone

1. Turn on the braille display.
2. On iPhone, go to Settings  > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, then choose the display.
3. On iPhone, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille, then choose the display.
4. To see the braille commands for controlling iPhone, tap More Info, then tap Braille Commands.

See the Apple Support article [Common braille commands for VoiceOver on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

## Change the braille display settings

1. On iPhone, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille.
2. Set any of the following:

Setting	Description
Match Input and Output Tables	Set the braille display to use the same table for both the input and the output.
Input and Output	Choose the braille table you want to use to type braille input and output. You can choose from tables for additional languages as well as six-dot or eight-dot and contracted or uncontracted braille.
Braille Screen Input	Choose the input method for entering braille using the screen. See <a href="#">Type braille on the screen</a> .
Braille Tables	Add tables to the braille table rotors.
Braille Access	Quickly access braille notes, BRF files, and more using a braille display. See <a href="#">Take notes in braille with Braille Access on iPhone</a> .
Item Overview	Adjust the number of cells displayed per item. Press dots 6, 7, and 8 at the same time to turn Item Overview on or off.
Automatic Translation	Turn this option on to automatically translate the braille you type into text soon after you stop typing.
Status Cells	Turn on the general and text status cells and choose their location.
Equations use Nemeth Code	Turn on Nemeth Code for mathematical equations.
Show On-screen Keyboard	Display the keyboard on the screen.
Turn Pages when Panning	Automatically turn pages when panning.

Word Wrap	Draft Wrap words to the next line.
Braille Alert Messages	When turned on, your braille display shows an alert message for the specified duration.
Ignore Chord Duration	Adjust the amount of time required before subsequent key presses are recognized as braille chords.
Auto Advance Duration	Adjust this setting to your preferred reading speed.
Sound Curtain	When a braille display is connected to iPhone, mute most sounds. Emergency alerts will still play sounds.
Enable Bluetooth on Start	Automatically turn on Bluetooth when you turn on VoiceOver so that braille displays can connect to iPhone.

## Output closed captions in braille during media playback

1. On iPhone, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Verbosity.
2. Choose Braille or Speech and Braille.

## Use a 2D braille display

If you use a supported 2D braille display, you can use the rotor to switch between different output modes, such as the mode for displaying images or the mode for reading text on multiple lines.

1. [Connect your braille display](#) to iPhone.
2. With VoiceOver turned on, use the Braille Text Mode rotor to switch between output modes. See [Control VoiceOver using the rotor](#).

# Type braille directly on the iPhone screen with VoiceOver

When you turn on Braille Screen Input in VoiceOver, you can use your fingers to type braille directly on the iPhone screen, without a physical braille keyboard. You can also use Braille Screen Input to enter braille commands for navigating and controlling your iPhone.

## Enter braille on the screen

1. With VoiceOver turned on, do one of the following to start Braille Screen Input:
  - *Use a gesture:* Place one finger from each hand at the top and bottom edges of the screen and double-tap. If the gesture doesn't work, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille. Tap Braille Screen Input, then turn on Use Activation Gestures.
  - *Use the rotor:* When you're in a text input area, [set the rotor](#) to Braille Screen Input. If Braille Screen Input isn't in the rotor, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor. Tap Rotor Items, then select Braille Screen Input.

2. Place iPhone in one of the following Draft positions:

- *Tabletop mode:* Lay iPhone flat in front of you.
- *Screen away mode:* Hold iPhone in landscape orientation with the screen facing away from you. Your fingers wrap around the sides of iPhone to tap the screen.

3. Enter braille characters by tapping the screen with one or more fingers at the same time.

**Tip:** To hear where each dot is located, touch and hold, then drag your finger around the screen. To move the entry dots to match your natural finger positions, tap and lift your right three fingers all at once to position dots 4, 5, and 6, followed immediately by your left three fingers for dots 1, 2, and 3.

You can also use gestures to perform actions such as the following:

Action	Gesture
Enter a space	Swipe right with one finger; in screen away mode, swipe to your right
Delete the previous character	Swipe left with one finger
Move to a new line	Swipe right with two fingers
Cycle through spelling suggestions	Swipe up or down with one finger
Enter a carriage return, or send a message (in Messages)	Swipe up with three fingers
Cycle through modes (like Braille Entry Mode and Command Mode)	Swipe left or right with three fingers
Translate immediately (if you're typing contracted braille)	Swipe down with two fingers
Switch to the next braille table	Swipe up with two fingers
Select text	Double tap the cursor
Select a line	Triple tap the cursor

4. To exit Braille Screen Input, slide two fingers in opposite directions, or do a two-finger scrub (draw the letter "z" by quickly moving two fingers back and forth three times).

**Tip:** You can view and edit the commands and gestures you can perform when Braille Screen Input is turned on. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Commands > Braille Screen Input.

## Type on the screen to enter braille commands

With Braille Screen Input Command Mode, you can control iPhone by typing braille commands on the screen. You can use the same commands you use with a refreshable braille display.

1. With VoiceOver turned on, place one finger from each hand at the top and bottom edges of the screen and double-tap to start Braille Screen Input.
2. Switch to Command Mode by swiping left or right with three fingers.

3. Type braille commands directly on the screen.

See the Apple Support article [Common braille commands for VoiceOver on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

## Change Braille Screen Input settings

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille > Braille Screen Input.
2. Set any of the following:
  - *Use Activation Gestures*: To start Braille Screen Input, place one finger from each hand at the top and bottom edges of the screen and double-tap. If this option is off, use the rotor to start Braille Screen Input.
  - *Start Automatically when Editing*: Have Braille Screen Input start automatically when you enter a text input area.
  - *Keep Active until Dismissed*: After you launch an app or choose an item in Braille Entry Mode, automatically switch to Command Mode and keep it active.
  - *Customize Commands*: Navigate to the command you want to customize, then tap Assign New Braille Keys.
  - *Learn Dot Positions*: Have Braille Screen Input calibrate the positions of dots as you enter them.
  - *Reverse Dot Positions*: For six-dot braille, swap the positions of dots 1 and 3, and dots 4 and 6.
  - *Visual Text Feedback*: As you type in braille, display a text translation of what you're typing.
  - *Typing Feedback*: Get sound or haptic feedback as you enter text with Braille Screen Input.
  - *Single Hand Mode Style*: Choose one of the following options to type in Portrait orientation:
    - *Input Columns*: Type a column of dots and swipe right to enter an empty column. Double tap to enter one braille cell. (Dots 1 and 4, Dots 2 and 5, and Dots 3 and 6 are oriented from left to right.)
    - *Slate and Stylus*: Your screen acts as a braille cell with 6 dots. (Dots 1, 2, and 3 are on the right side, and dots 4, 5, 6 are on the left side.)
    - *Reversed Slated and Stylus*: Your screen acts as a braille cell with 6 dots. (Dots 1, 2, and 3 are on the left side, and dots 4, 5, 6 are on the right side.)
  - *Mode announcements*: When you switch Braille Screen Input modes, have VoiceOver speak, play sounds, or both.
  - *Braille table*: Set the method for braille screen input.

## Take notes in braille with Braille Access on iPhone

With Braille Access, you can turn your iPhone into a braille note taker that can easily open any app by typing with a connected braille display. You can perform calculations using Nemeth Braille, open Braille Ready Format (BRF) files, transcribe conversations with Live Captions, and more.

## Open Braille Notes, BRF files, Nemeth calculator, and Live Captions with Braille Access

1. Connect your braille display to your iPhone and turn on VoiceOver. See [connect a braille display](#) and [turn VoiceOver on or off](#).
2. Press dots 7 and 8 together or use the Toggle Braille Access command on your braille display.

If you're using an eight-dot table, press dots 7 and 8 and the Space bar together.

To access the Toggle Braille Access command on your iPhone, go to the Settings app  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille > tap ⓘ next to your braille display (you may need to scroll down) > Braille Commands > Braille > Toggle Braille Access.

See [Navigate the Braille Access menu](#).

3. Do any of the following:

- *Launch App*: Choose an app to open—such as Mail, News, or Wallet.
- *Choose Item*: Choose an item to open on the screen—such as dictate, compose, or edit.
- *Braille Notes*: Enter New > New Note or New Folder to create a new note or folder. You can access your notes here after you create them.

*Note*: Your braille notes will sync to iCloud.

- *BRF Files*: Enter New > File name or New folder name to create a new BRF file or folder. You can open your BRF files here after you create them. You can also search for text and add bookmarks.
  - To search for text, use the context menu or Text Search command (dots 1, 2, 4 + Space).
  - After you search for text or move a bookmark, use the Return command (dot 8) to keep searching or moving to other bookmarks.

*Note*: Opening Braille Access creates a BRF Files folder in iCloud Drive.

- *Nemeth Calculator*: Type calculations in Nemeth Braille.

*Note*: A visual representation of the formula appears on the screen if Show Visuals is enabled.

- *Live Captions*: Enter Live Captions and iPhone will listen to your surroundings and translate it in braille on your device.

*Note*: Press any router key to bring the focus to the latest caption line.

- *Close*: Close the Braille Access menu.

*Note*: In most pages of Braille Access, you can select Close or Back at the bottom of the menu. See [Exit Braille Access](#).

## Navigate the Braille Access menu

Do any of the following to navigate the Braille Access menu:

- Use the Next command: dot 4 + Space
- Use the panning button on your braille display

- Use the Previous command: dot 1 + Space
- Use the panning button on your braille display

- Use the First Item command: dots 1, 2, 3 + Space

- Use the Last Item command: dots 4, 5, 6 + Space

- Use the Back command: dots 1, 2, + Space

- Use the Return command: dot 8

- Use the Delete command: dot 7

*Note:* You can start typing right away if the menu item has a cursor at the end.

See the Apple Support article [Common braille commands for VoiceOver on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

## Exit Braille Access

If you have [Braille Access](#) open on your iPhone and you want to exit, use the Home or Back command on your braille display. See the Apple Support article [Common braille commands for VoiceOver on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

*Note:* In most pages of Braille Access, you can also select Close or Back at the bottom of the menu to exit Braille Access.

## Change Braille Access settings

1. Go to the Settings App  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, tap VoiceOver, tap Braille, then tap Braille Access.

- *Main Menu Items*: To customize which menu items appear in Braille Access, tap ⓘ next to each item. To change the order that the items appear in, tap and drag ⓘ to the desired place.
- *Speak List Items*: To have iPhone speak items aloud, turn on Speak List Items.
- *Typing Speech Feedback*: Turn Typing Speech feedback on or off.
- *Show Visuals*: Turn Show Visuals on or off.
- *Braille Notes*: Sort notes by the date edited or created. You can also sort the order of notes by oldest or newest.
- *BRF Files*: Turn Fit BRF Content on or off. Turn Hide BRF Page Indicators on or off.
- *Calculator*: Choose Nemeth or UEB Math as the math code.
- *Live Captions*: Choose Microphone or iPhone Audio as the source for Live Captions.

## Customize VoiceOver gestures and keyboard shortcuts on iPhone

You can customize the gestures and keyboard shortcuts that activate VoiceOver commands.

1. Go to the Settings app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, tap VoiceOver, then tap Commands.
3. Tap any of the following:
  - *All Commands*: Navigate to the command you want to customize, then tap Edit, Add Gesture, or Add Keyboard Shortcut.
  - *Touch Gestures*: List the gestures and the associated commands.
  - *Keyboard Shortcuts*: Navigate to the shortcut you want to customize, then enter the key combination.
  - *Magic Tap*: Turn on Magic Tap to pause or play media when no other action is available.
  - *Handwriting*: List the gestures for handwriting and the associated commands.
  - *Braille Screen Input*: List the gestures for Braille Screen Input and the associated commands.
  - *Braille Screen & Braille Keyboard Input*: Navigate to the command you want to customize, then tap Assign New Braille Keys.

To clear your custom gestures and keyboard shortcuts, tap Reset VoiceOver Commands.

## Use VoiceOver on iPhone with a pointer device

If you use a pointer device with iPhone, Draft you can adjust how it works with VoiceOver.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Below Pointer Control, tap any of the following:
  - *Pointer*: Set the pointer to ignore, follow, or move the VoiceOver cursor.
  - *Speak Under Pointer*: You can adjust the delay to speak the item under the pointer.

## Get live descriptions of your surroundings with VoiceOver on iPhone

If you're blind or have low vision, you can use VoiceOver Recognition on iPhone to scan your surroundings and get live descriptions of the scenes detected in the camera view. You can also get descriptions of onscreen images and user interface elements, even in apps and on webpages that don't provide accessibility information.

**Important:** VoiceOver Recognition should not be relied upon in circumstances where you could be harmed or injured, in high-risk situations, for navigation, or for the diagnosis or treatment of any medical condition.

### Get live descriptions of your surroundings

1. With VoiceOver on, triple-tap the screen with four fingers to start Live Recognition.
2. Choose the kinds of visual information you want VoiceOver to describe, like scenes, people, doors, furniture, or text. At the bottom of the screen, select a category, then double-tap to turn it on or off. If you turn on Point & Speak, you can point your finger at text and have VoiceOver read it aloud.

*Note:* Detection of people, doors, and furniture is available only on [supported iPhone models](#).

3. Position iPhone so the rear camera can detect what's around you. VoiceOver describes what it detects.

To interrupt VoiceOver speech and move to the next detected item, tap the screen with two fingers.

4. To turn off Live Recognition, triple-tap the screen with four fingers. Or if the VoiceOver cursor is focused on an interface element for Live Recognition, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

**Tip:** You can also set up a shortcut to quickly start and stop Live Recognition. See [Set up shortcuts for Live Recognition](#).

You can also use Detection Mode in the Magnifier app to detect and describe scenes, people, and more. See [Get live descriptions of visual information around you with Magnifier](#).

To change Live Recognition settings, go to the Magnifier app , tap , then tap Detect. Tap [Scenes](#), [People](#), [Doors](#), [Furniture](#), [Text](#), or [Point & Speak](#).

### Get descriptions of images in apps and on the web

With VoiceOver Recognition, you can get descriptions of the people, objects, and text in images in apps and on webpages, even if they don't provide accessibility information. You can move your finger over a photo to discover a person's position relative to other objects, or navigate nutrition labels and receipts in the order items are listed.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > VoiceOver Recognition, then turn on Image Descriptions.
2. To get descriptions of text found in images, turn on Text Recognition.
3. Go to an app such as Photos  or Safari , then select an image.
4. Swipe up to hear more options, then double-tap when you hear Explore Image
5. Move your finger around the image to find out the position of each object.

You can [add custom descriptions](#) to your images with Markup.

*Note:* Image descriptions aren't available in all languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS 18 Feature Availability website](#).

## Get descriptions of user interface elements

With VoiceOver Recognition, you can get descriptions of user interface elements in apps and on webpages, even if they don't provide accessibility information.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > VoiceOver Recognition.
2. Turn on Screen Recognition.

# Use VoiceOver in apps on iPhone

You can use VoiceOver in all the built-in apps that come with your iPhone—such as Safari, Maps, and more. With VoiceOver Recognition, you can get descriptions of images and screen elements on webpages and in apps, even if they don't provide accessibility information.

## Browse the web in Safari

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Safari app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Search the web:* Select the address field, double-tap to show the keyboard, then enter a search term, phrase, or URL. Double-tap Go, or select a search suggestion, then double-tap.
  - *Skip to the next element on a webpage:* Set the rotor to the element type—such as headings, links, and form controls—then swipe up or down.
  - *Set the rotor settings for web browsing:* Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor. Select or deselect items, or drag  up or down to reposition an item.
  - *Skip images while navigating:* Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Navigate Images. You can choose to skip all images or only those without descriptions.
  - *Reduce page clutter for easier reading and navigation:* In the Safari address field, select the Format Options button, double-tap, select Show Reader View (not available for all webpages), then double-tap.

**Tip:** If you [use Magic Keyboard with iPhone](#), you can [use single-key Quick Nav for web browsing](#).

## Navigate in Maps

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Control how the map tracks your current location:* Select , then double-tap until you hear the tracking option you want.
    - *Tracking on:* The map automatically centers on your current location.
    - *Tracking on with heading:* The map automatically centers on your current location and rotates so that the heading you're facing is at the top of the screen. In this mode, iPhone speaks street names and points of interest as you approach them.
    - *Tracking off:* The map doesn't automatically center on your current location.
  - *Explore the map:* Drag your finger around the screen, or swipe left or right to move to another item.
  - *Zoom in or out:* Select the map, set the rotor to Zoom, then swipe up or down with one finger.
  - *Pan the map:* Select the map, then swipe with three fingers.
  - *Browse locations and pins on the map:* Select the map, set the rotor to Points of Interest, then swipe up or down with one finger.
  - *Follow a road:* Hold your finger down on the road, wait until you hear "pause to follow," then move your finger along the road.
  - *Get information about a location:* Select the location (for example, a business, landmark, or pin), then double-tap to open the information card. Swipe left or right to hear information such as directions, street address, phone number, business hours, and customer reviews.
  - *Get guidance to the starting point:* When you start walking directions in Maps, iPhone guides you in the direction of the starting point using sound and haptic feedback.
  - *Get a description of the map:* Tap the screen with three fingers to get information about nearby places, including directions and distances.

## Read PDFs

In the Books and Files apps, you can use VoiceOver to read PDFs. VoiceOver even describes detailed information—such as forms, tables, and lists.

## Make and receive phone calls

You can use VoiceOver to make and receive calls.

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Phone app  on your iPhone.

- *Answer or end a call:* Double-tap the screen with two fingers.

When a phone call is established with VoiceOver on, the screen displays the numeric keypad by default, instead of showing call options.

- *Display call options:* Select the Hide button in the lower-right corner, then double-tap.
- *Display the numeric keypad again:* Select the Keypad button near the center of the screen, then double-tap.

## Take photos and videos

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Camera app  on your iPhone. VoiceOver describes objects in the viewfinder.
2. Select Camera Mode, then swipe up or down with one finger to switch between modes, like Photo or Video.
3. To take a photo or start or stop recording a video, double-tap the screen with two fingers.

## Trim voice memo recordings

You can use VoiceOver to edit recordings in the Voice Memos app.

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Voice Memos  app on your iPhone.
2. Select the recording you want to trim, then double-tap.
3. Select , then double-tap.
4. Select Edit Recording, then double-tap.
5. Select , then tap .
6. In the Waveform Overview, select Trim Beginning or Trim End, double-tap and hold, then swipe up or down to adjust the start or end time.
7. Select Trim, then double-tap.
8. Select Save, then double-tap.
9. Select Done, then double-tap.

## Hear visual Weather data as sound

Some maps in the Weather app are encoded to allow you to hear the data as a changing tone or pitch. For example, as intensity of weather condition changes in a visual animation on screen, you can have these described using variations in sound.

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Weather app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a location page with a precipitation, wind, or air quality map.
3. Double-tap and hold the map until you hear a tone or the words "Weather Map Snapshot." If you hear spoken instructions, follow them.

As you run your finger or pointer over a sonified map, the pitch shifts to represent the changing values.

## Read math equations

VoiceOver can read math equations on the web (encoded using MathML) and in supported Apple apps such as Numbers and Keynote.

- *Hear an equation:* Have VoiceOver <sup>Draft</sup>read the text as usual. VoiceOver says "math" before it starts reading an equation.
- *Explore the equation:* Double-tap the selected equation to display it in full screen and move through it one element at a time. Swipe left or right to read elements of the equation. Use the rotor to select Symbols, Small Expressions, Medium Expressions, or Large Expressions, then swipe up or down to hear the next element of that size. To drill down into the selected element, double-tap it, then swipe left or right to read one part of the element at a time.

Equations spoken by VoiceOver can also be output to a braille device using Nemeth Code, as well as the codes used by Unified English Braille, British English, French, and Greek. See [Use a braille display with VoiceOver](#).

## Mobility

### Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

With built-in accessibility features for mobility, you can navigate and interact with iPhone using just your eyes, spoken commands, assistive devices, an external keyboard, and more. You can also set options so it's easier to use gestures and press iPhone buttons.

To explore accessibility features for mobility, go to Settings  > Accessibility, then scroll down to the Physical and Motor section.

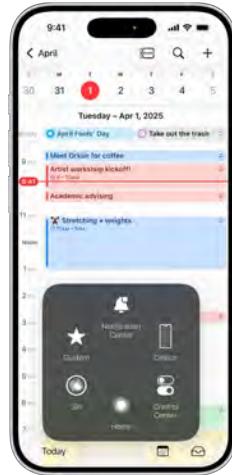
Action	Related features and settings
Navigate your iPhone hands-free	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">Eye Tracking</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Voice Control</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Siri</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Shortcuts</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Call audio routing</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Use simple sounds to perform gestures</a></li></ul>
Let iPhone type for you	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">Dictation</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Predictive text</a></li></ul>
Connect other inputs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">Switch Control</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Keyboards</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Bluetooth accessories</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Head tracking</a></li></ul>
Control other devices	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">Apple Watch Mirroring</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Apple TV remote</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Control nearby devices</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Platform Switching</a></li></ul>

Customize gestures	Draft
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">AssistiveTouch</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Back tap</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Reachability</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">AirPods</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Pointer scrolling speed</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Side or Home button</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Face ID and attention</a></li> </ul>
Adjust the sensitivity of your input	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Slow Keys and Sticky Keys</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Siri Pause Time</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Touch accommodations</a></li> </ul>
Turn off vibration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Vibration</a></li> </ul>

**Tip:** Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with the click of a button or from Control Center. See [Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut](#).

## Use AssistiveTouch on iPhone

With AssistiveTouch on iPhone, you can adapt the touchscreen to fit your needs. If certain gestures don't work for you, replace them with a tap or other gesture, or use a simple sound. You can also use AssistiveTouch when you need to press iPhone buttons. You can use AssistiveTouch without any accessory or with a compatible adaptive accessory (such as a joystick).



You can use AssistiveTouch to perform actions such as the following:

- Go to the Home Screen
- Double-tap
- Perform multifinger gestures
- Perform scroll gestures
- Activate Siri
- Access Control Center, notifications, the Lock Screen, or the App Switcher
- Adjust the volume on iPhone
- Shake iPhone
- Take a screenshot

- Use 3D Touch (on [supported iPhone models](#)  
Draft)
- Use Apple Pay
- Use Emergency SOS
- Speak screen
- Adjust dwell settings
- Restart iPhone

## Set up AssistiveTouch

[Ask Siri](#) something like, "Turn on AssistiveTouch." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

Or do the following:

1. Go to [Settings](#)  > [Accessibility](#) > [Touch](#) > [AssistiveTouch](#).
2. Turn on AssistiveTouch. The AssistiveTouch menu button  appears on the screen.
3. To customize AssistiveTouch, tap any of the following:
  - *Customize Top Level Menu*: Tap an icon to change its action. Tap  or  to change the number of icons in the menu. The menu can have up to eight icons.
  - *Single-Tap, Double-Tap, Long Press, or 3D Touch*: Assign custom actions that run when you interact with the menu button. 3D Touch is available only on [supported iPhone models](#).
  - *Create New Gesture*: Add your favorite gestures.
  - *Idle Opacity*: Adjust the visibility of the menu button when not in use.
  - *Confirm with AssistiveTouch*: On an [iPhone with Face ID](#), confirm payments with Face ID by using AssistiveTouch instead of double-clicking the side button.

**Tip:** To quickly turn AssistiveTouch on or off, you can [set up the Accessibility Shortcut](#), then triple-click the side or Home button.

## Use AssistiveTouch

When AssistiveTouch is on, tap the AssistiveTouch menu button , then choose an action or gesture.

To return to the previous menu, tap the arrow in the center of the menu. To exit the menu without performing a gesture, tap anywhere outside the menu.

To move the AssistiveTouch menu button, drag it to a new location on the screen.

For a multifinger gesture, do the following:

- *Pinch and Rotate*: Tap [Custom](#), then tap [Pinch and Rotate](#). When the two pinch circles appear, touch anywhere on the screen to move the pinch circles, then drag them in or out to perform a pinch or rotate gesture. When you finish, tap the menu button.
- *Multifinger swipe or drag*: Tap [Device](#) > [More](#) > [Gestures](#), then tap the number of digits needed for the gesture. When the circles appear on the screen, swipe or drag in the direction required by the gesture. When you finish, tap the menu button.

## Control iPhone with a pointer device

Draft  
You can connect Bluetooth® and USB assistive pointer devices, such as trackpads, game controllers, and mouse devices.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch.
2. Turn on AssistiveTouch.
3. Below Pointer Devices, tap any of the following:
  - *Devices*: Pair or unpair devices and customize buttons.
  - *Mouse Keys*: Allow the AssistiveTouch pointer to be controlled using the keyboard.
  - *Pointer Style*: Adjust the size, color, and auto-hide settings.
  - *Show Onscreen Keyboard*: Display the onscreen keyboard.
  - *Sound on Click*: Play a sound when the pointer device is clicked.
  - *Always Show Menu*: Show the AssistiveTouch menu when a pointer device is connected.
  - *Tracking Sensitivity*: Adjust how quickly the pointer moves when you drag the mouse or your finger on the trackpad.

You can also [change the appearance of the pointer](#).

## Set up Dwell Control

iPhone performs a selected action when you hold the cursor still on a screen element or an area of the screen.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch, then turn on Dwell Control.
2. Adjust any of the following:
  - *Fallback Action*: Turn on to revert the dwell action to the selected fallback action after performing an operation.
  - *Movement Tolerance*: Adjust the distance the cursor can move while dwelling on an item.
  - *Hot Corners*: Perform a selected action—such as take a screenshot, open Control Center, activate Siri, scroll, or use a shortcut—when the cursor dwells in a corner of the screen.
  - *Time needed to initiate a dwell action*: Tap  or .

## Use simple sounds to perform gestures

With AssistiveTouch, you can have iPhone perform a gesture or other action when you make a simple sound, such as a mouth pop or an S-sound.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch, then turn AssistiveTouch on.
2. Tap Sound Actions, then tap a sound.
3. Select the gesture or other action you want performed when you make the sound.
4. To perform the gesture or action, just make the sound.

## Create custom gestures

Draft  
You can add gestures you use often (such as touch and hold or two-finger rotation) to the AssistiveTouch menu. You can even create several gestures with, for example, different degrees of rotation.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch > Create New Gesture.
2. Perform your gesture on the recording screen. For example:
  - *Touch-and-hold gesture*: Touch and hold your finger in one spot until the recording progress bar reaches halfway, then lift your finger. Be careful not to move your finger while recording, or the gesture will be recorded as a drag.
  - *Two-finger rotation gesture*: Rotate two fingers on the iPhone screen around a point between them. (You can do this with a single finger or stylus—just create each arc separately, one after the other.)

If you record a sequence of taps or drag gestures, they're all played back at the same time. For example, using one finger or a stylus to record four separate, sequential taps at four locations on the screen creates a simultaneous four-finger tap.

3. If your gesture doesn't turn out quite right, tap Cancel, then try again.
4. When you're satisfied with your gesture, tap Save, then name the gesture.

To use your custom gesture, tap the AssistiveTouch menu button , tap Custom, then choose the gesture. When the blue circles representing your gesture appear, drag them to where you want to use the gesture, then release.

## Adjust how iPhone responds to your touch

If you have difficulties with hand tremors, dexterity, or fine motor control, you can adjust how the iPhone touchscreen responds to tap, swipe, and touch-and-hold gestures. You can have iPhone recognize faster or slower touches and ignore multiple touches. You can also prevent iPhone from waking when you touch the screen, or turn off Shake to Undo if you unintentionally shake iPhone.

### Adjust settings for taps, swipes, and multiple touches

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > Touch Accommodations, then turn on Touch Accommodations.

2. You can configure iPhone to do any of the following:

- *Respond to longer or shorter touches:* Turn on Hold Duration, then tap  or  to adjust the duration.
- *Prevent unintended swipe gestures:* If you turn on Hold Duration (above), you can increase the amount of movement required before a swipe gesture begins. Tap Swipe Gestures, turn on Swipe Gestures, then adjust required movement.
- *Treat multiple touches as a single touch:* Turn on Ignore Repeat, then tap  or  to adjust the amount of time allowed between multiple touches.
- *Respond to the first or last place you touch:* Choose Use Initial Touch Location or Use Final Touch Location.

If you choose Use Initial Touch Location, iPhone uses the location of your first tap—when you tap an app on the Home Screen, for example.

If you choose Use Final Touch Location, iPhone registers the tap where you lift your finger. iPhone responds to a tap when you lift your finger within a certain period of time. Tap  or  to adjust the timing. Your iPhone can respond to other gestures, such as a drag gesture, if you wait longer than the gesture delay.

### Adjust settings for touch-and-hold gestures

You use the touch-and-hold gesture to see additional options or actions you can perform, or show a preview of content. If you have trouble performing this gesture, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch, then tap Haptic Touch or 3D & Haptic Touch.
2. Choose the touch duration—Fast or Slow.
3. On an [iPhone with 3D Touch](#), you can also choose the pressure needed—Light, Medium, or Firm.
4. Test your new settings on the image at the bottom of the screen.

### Turn off Tap to Wake

On a [supported iPhone model](#), you can prevent touches on the screen from waking iPhone. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch, then turn off Tap to Wake.

### Turn off Shake to Undo

If you tend to unintentionally shake iPhone, you can turn off Shake to Undo. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch.

**Tip:** To undo text edits, swipe left with three fingers.

## Tap the back of iPhone to perform actions or shortcuts

You can double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone to perform actions such as taking a screenshot, turning on an accessibility feature, running a shortcut, and more.

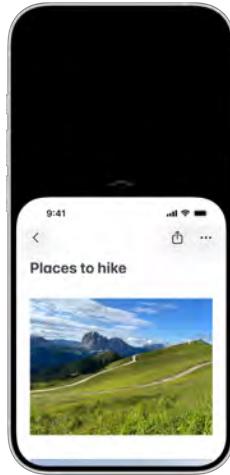
1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > Back Tap.

2. Choose Double Tap or Triple Tap, Draft then choose an action.
3. To perform the action you set, double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone.

To turn off Back tap, go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > Back Tap, choose Double Tap or Triple Tap, then tap None.

## Reach the top of the iPhone screen with one hand

When you use iPhone with one hand in portrait orientation, you can use Reachability to lower the top half of the screen so it's within easy reach of your thumb.



1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch, then turn on Reachability.
2. To lower the top half of the screen, do one of the following:
  - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe down on the bottom edge of the screen.
  - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Lightly double-tap the Home button.
  - *While VoiceOver is on:* Swipe up from the bottom of the screen with one finger, then, without lifting your finger, swipe down.
3. To return to the full screen, tap the upper half of the screen.

## Route and automatically answer calls on iPhone

You can automatically direct the audio of phone or FaceTime calls to the iPhone speaker, a Bluetooth® headset, or your hearing device. iPhone can also automatically answer calls after a length of time you set.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > Call Audio Routing, then choose an audio destination.
2. Tap Auto-Answer Calls, turn on Auto-Answer Calls, then set the duration of time before the call is answered by tapping  or .

During a call, you can switch the audio routing from your hearing aid to the iPhone speaker by removing the hearing aid from your ear.

# Turn off vibration on iPhone Draft

If you don't want your iPhone to vibrate, you can turn vibration off for specific uses or all alerts.

- *Set vibration options for specific alerts:* Go to Settings  > Sounds & Haptics. See [Change sounds and vibrations](#).
- *Turn off all vibrations:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch, then turn off Vibration.

*Note:* This setting turns off vibrations for earthquake, tsunami, and other emergency alerts.

## Change Face ID and attention settings on iPhone

On an [iPhone with Face ID](#), you can adjust Face ID and attention settings if you have physical or vision limitations.

### Set up Face ID with Accessibility Options

Setting up Face ID usually requires you to gently move your head in a circle to show all the angles of your face. If you can't perform the full range of head motion, you can still set up Face ID without moving your head.

1. Go to Settings  > Face ID & Passcode.
2. Tap Set Up Face ID, then tap Get Started.
3. Position your face within the frame, then tap Accessibility Options.

Face ID is still secure but requires more consistency when you unlock iPhone.

### Change attention settings

For additional security, Face ID is *attention-aware*. It unlocks iPhone only when your eyes are open and looking at the screen. iPhone can also reveal notifications and messages, keep the screen lit when you're reading, or lower the volume of alerts.

If you don't want iPhone to check for your attention, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Face ID & Attention.
2. Turn on or off any of the following:
  - *Require Attention for Face ID:* Provide an additional level of security by unlocking iPhone only when you're looking at it.
  - *Attention Aware Features:* iPhone checks for attention before dimming the display, expanding a notification when locked, or lowering the volume of some alerts.
  - *Haptic on Successful Authentication:* Play a haptic when Face ID successfully unlocks iPhone, authorizes Apple Pay, or verifies iTunes and App Store purchases.

These settings are turned off by default if you turn on VoiceOver when you first set up iPhone.

*Note:* Requiring attention makes Face ID more secure.

Draft

# Use Voice Control commands to interact with iPhone

After you turn on Voice Control on your iPhone, you can speak commands to interact with what's on the screen, perform gestures and button presses, dictate and edit text, and more.

**Note:** When Voice Control is on, you use Voice Control to dictate text; standard iOS Dictation isn't available. If you just want to enter text using Dictation, without controlling your iPhone with your voice, see [Dictate text](#). Voice Control isn't available in all languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

## Set up Voice Control

Before you turn on Voice Control for the first time, make sure iPhone is connected to the internet over a Wi-Fi network. After iPhone completes a one-time file download from Apple, you don't need an internet connection to use Voice Control.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Voice Control.
2. Tap Set Up Voice Control, then tap Continue to start the file download.

When the download is complete,  appears in the status bar to indicate that Voice Control is turned on.

3. Set options such as the following:
  - *Language*: Set the language and download languages for offline use.
  - *Customize Commands*: View the available commands and create new commands.
  - *Vocabulary*: Teach Voice Control to recognize new words and phrases. You can enter a word or phrase and teach Voice Control how you pronounce it, or import a vocabulary list.

*Note:* Not all Voice Control languages support a custom vocabulary.

- *Show Confirmation*: When Voice Control recognizes a command, a visual confirmation appears at the top of the screen.
- *Play Sound*: When Voice Control recognizes a command, an audible sound is played.
- *Show Hints*: See command suggestions and hints.
- *Overlay*: Display numbers, names, or a grid over screen elements.
- *Attention Aware*: On an [iPhone with Face ID](#), Voice Control wakes up when you look at your iPhone and goes to sleep when you look away.

## Turn Voice Control on or off

After you set up Voice Control, you can turn it on or off quickly by doing any of the following:

- Use [Control Center](#) if you've added Voice Control there.
- Use [Accessibility Shortcut](#) if you've set it up to turn on Voice Control.

Ask Siri something like, "Turn on Voice Control." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

## Start using commands

To use Voice Control on your iPhone, just say a command.  
Draft

**●Voice Control:** Say, for example, "Open Control Center," "Go home," "Tap item name," or "Turn up volume." Draft

**Tip:** Use the interactive Voice Control Tutorial to get familiar with Voice Control and practice essential commands. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Voice Control, then tap Open Voice Control Tutorial.

## Pause or resume Voice Control

Pause Voice Control when you don't want words you say to be interpreted as commands or dictation. Resume Voice Control when you're ready for it to listen for commands and dictation again.

**●Voice Control:** Say "Stop listening" or "Start listening."

## See what commands you can use

Display a list of the available commands, which vary depending on the app you're working in and what you're doing. For example, you see text formatting commands while writing a document.

**●Voice Control:** Say "Show commands."

To browse the full list of supported commands and see examples of how to use them, go to Settings  > Accessibility > Voice Control > Commands.

## Label onscreen items

When you're not sure what to call something, you can display a name or number next to each item on the screen. You can then use the item's name or number to interact with it.

**●Voice Control:** Say "Show names," "Show numbers," or "Show text numbers."

To interact with an item, say its name or number, or say a command—such as "Long press"—followed by the item's name or number. The item names or numbers disappear after you say the command.

## Show a numbered grid on the screen

You can make it easier to interact with a precise area of the screen by superimposing a grid.

**●Voice Control:** Say "Show grid."

- *Interact with a location on the grid:* If a number is at the location you want to interact with, say any command—such as "Tap"—followed by the grid number. The grid disappears after you say the command.
- *Drill down on an area of the grid:* If you need to further refine the location, say a grid number to show a more detailed grid in that area.

Say "Hide names," "Hide numbers," or "Hide grid" to turn the overlay off.

## Enter text

When working in a text input area, you can dictate word by word (with Dictation mode) or character by character (with Spelling mode). To avoid mistakenly entering a Voice Control command as text, have Voice Control respond only to commands (with Command mode).

When you're in a text input area and **label** **Draft** **Onscreen items with numbers**, numbers are shown next to each line of text. Select a line or another section of the text to display a number for each word in the selection; select a single word to show a number for each character in the word. To interact with a text item (such as a line or a word), say a command followed by the item's name or number. For example, you can say "Delete [item number]" or "Uppercase [item number]."

Command	Description
<b>•Voice Control:</b> Say "Dictation mode."	Dictate word by word. Any words you say that aren't Voice Control commands are entered as text. Dictation mode is on by default. In some Voice Control languages, if several words phonetically match what you say, they appear onscreen. Tap to choose the one you want.
<b>•Voice Control:</b> Say "Spelling mode."	Dictate character by character. Spelling mode is helpful when you need to enter a password, a web address, or another sequence of characters that wouldn't be recognized as a word in Dictation mode. When Spelling mode is on,  appears in the text input area. To increase accuracy when entering letters, you can use the letter's phonetic alphabet code word (for example, say "Alfa Bravo Charlie" to enter "abc"). <i>Note:</i> Spelling mode isn't available in all Voice Control languages.
<b>•Voice Control:</b> Say "Command mode."	Voice Control responds only to commands. Words and characters that aren't commands are ignored and aren't entered as text. Command mode is helpful when you need to say a series of commands and don't want them inadvertently entered in a text input area. When Command mode is on,  appears in the text input area to indicate you can't dictate to enter text.

## Use Voice Control commands to interact with CarPlay

With Voice Control, you can use your voice to navigate CarPlay and apps, and interact with what's on the CarPlay touchscreen.

*Note:* Voice Control is available only in [supported languages](#). CarPlay is available only in [supported countries and regions](#).

### Turn Voice Control on or off

1. In CarPlay, go to **Settings**  > **Accessibility**.